

UNITED  
BY OUR  
DIFFERENCE








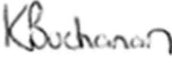



# FINAL SCOPING REPORT: TUMELA CENTRAL SHAFT PROJECT – TUMELA MINE – AMANDELBULT SECTION

Rustenburg Platinum Mines Limited

2013/06/04

Revised:

# Quality Management

Issue/revision	Issue 1	Revision 1	Revision 2	Revision 3
Remarks	DRAFT Scoping Report	FINAL Scoping Report	FINAL Scoping Report (updated based on LEDET response)	
Date	Feb 2013	May 2013	June 2013	
Prepared by	Jared O'Brien	Jared O'Brien	Jared O'Brien	
Signature				
Checked by	Danilla Breedt	Kerry Buchanan	Kerry Buchanan	
Signature				
Authorised by	Danilla Breedt	Kim Allan	Kim Allan	
Signature				
Project number	36015	36015	36015	
Report number	Draft 1	Final 1	Final 2	
File reference	36015- Reports: Final Scoping Report	36015- Reports: Final Scoping Report	36015- Reports: Final Scoping Report (updated)	

---

# FINAL SCOPING REPORT: TUMELA CENTRAL SHAFT PROJECT – TUMELA MINE – AMANDELBULT SECTION

## Rustenburg Platinum Mines Limited

2013/06/04

### Client

Rustenburg Platinum Mines Limited  
Group Environmental Offices  
5<sup>th</sup> Street,  
Waterval Village,  
Rustenburg,  
South Africa,  
Johannesburg,  
2001

#### Contact

Vinesh Dilsook  
Environmental Manager  
Tel: 014 598 2295  
Cel: 073 109 6126

### Consultant

WSP House  
Bryanston Place, 199 Bryanston Drive  
Bryanston  
2191  
South Africa

Tel: +27 11 361 1380  
Fax: +27 11 361 1381

[www.wspenvironmental.co.za](http://www.wspenvironmental.co.za)

### Registered Address

WSP Environmental (Pty) Ltd  
1995/008790/07  
WSP House, Bryanston Place, 199 Bryanston Drive  
Bryanston, 2191, South Africa

---

# Table of Contents

Executive Summary .....	12
Background Information .....	12
Project Description .....	12
Project Alternatives .....	13
Governance Framework .....	13
Scoping Phase .....	14
Public Participation Process .....	15
Potential Environmental Impacts .....	15
Plan of Study for the EIR Phase .....	17
Conclusion .....	18
1 Introduction .....	19
1.1 Purpose of this Report.....	19
1.2 Project Background.....	19
1.3 Terms of Reference .....	19
1.4 Assumptions and Limitations.....	23
1.5 Decision Making Authority .....	23
1.6 Project Proponent .....	23
1.7 Environmental Assessment Practitioner .....	24
1.8 Structure of this Report .....	25
2 Regulatory Context .....	26
2.1 The Constitution of South Africa (No. 108 of 1996).....	26
2.2 Minerals and Petroleum Resources Development Act (No. 28 of 2002).....	26
2.3 National Environmental Management Act (No. 107 of 1998) ..	26
2.4 National Water Act (No. 36 of 1998).....	28
2.5 National Environmental Management Biodiversity Act (No. 10 of 2004).....	30
2.6 National Environmental Management Air Quality Act (No. 39 of 2004).....	30
2.7 National Environmental Management Waste Act (No. 59 of 2008).....	31
2.8 National Heritage Resources Act (No. 25 of 1999) .....	31
3 Process to be Followed .....	33
3.1 Public Participation Initiation Phase.....	33
3.2 Scoping Phase.....	33
3.2.1 Stakeholder review prior to submission .....	34
3.2.2 Submission and decision-making .....	34
3.3 Environmental Impact Reporting Phase .....	34
3.3.1 Specialist Studies.....	35
3.3.2 Environmental Management Programme Report.....	35
3.3.3 Stakeholder Review prior to Submission .....	36
3.3.4 Submission and Decision-making.....	37
3.3.5 Water Use Licence Application Process .....	37
4 Project Description.....	38



4.1	Activity to be undertaken .....	38
4.1.1	Background to the Proposed Project .....	38
4.1.2	Scope of Work for the Proposed Project.....	38
4.2	Alternatives Considered .....	40
4.2.1	Proposed Project: Shaft Location Alternatives .....	40
4.3	No-go Alternative .....	42
5	Motivation for the Proposed Project.....	43
5.1	Benefits of the Project .....	43
5.1.1	Maintain Production Levels .....	43
5.1.2	Maintain Mine Profitability.....	45
5.1.3	The Community and Local Economy .....	45
6	Baseline Environment .....	46
6.1	Geology .....	46
6.1.1	Data Collection.....	46
6.1.2	Regional Description .....	46
6.1.3	Site Description .....	46
6.2	Climate.....	48
6.2.1	Data Collection.....	48
6.2.2	Regional Description .....	49
6.3	Topography.....	52
6.3.1	Data Collection.....	52
6.3.2	Regional Description .....	52
6.3.3	Site Description .....	53
6.4	Soil and Land Capability.....	54
6.4.1	Data Collection.....	54
6.4.2	Regional Description .....	55
6.4.3	Site Description .....	55
6.5	Land Use .....	55
6.5.1	Data Collection.....	55
6.5.2	Regional Description .....	55
6.5.3	Site Description .....	56
6.6	Flora .....	57
6.6.1	Data Collection.....	57
6.6.2	Regional Description .....	57
6.6.3	Site Description .....	58
6.7	Fauna.....	59
6.7.1	Data Collection.....	59
6.7.2	Regional Description .....	60
6.7.3	Site Description .....	60
6.8	Surface Water .....	62
6.8.1	Data Collection.....	62
6.8.2	Regional Description .....	63
6.8.3	Site Description .....	63
6.9	Groundwater .....	65
6.9.1	Data Collection.....	65
6.9.2	Regional Description .....	66
6.9.3	Site Description .....	66

6.10	Air Quality .....	66
6.10.1	Data Collection.....	66
6.10.2	Regional Description .....	66
6.10.3	Site Description .....	67
6.11	Noise.....	67
6.11.1	Data Collection.....	67
6.11.2	Regional Description .....	68
6.11.3	Site Description .....	68
6.12	Archaeology and Cultural Heritage.....	68
6.12.1	Data Collection.....	68
6.12.2	Regional Description .....	68
6.12.3	Site Description .....	69
6.13	Visual Aspects.....	70
6.13.1	Data Collection.....	70
6.13.2	Regional Description .....	71
6.13.3	Site Description .....	71
6.14	Socio-Economic .....	71
6.14.1	Data Collection.....	71
6.14.2	Regional Description .....	71
7	Potential Environmental Impacts .....	74
7.1	Environmental and Socio-economic Impacts .....	74
7.1.1	Potential Environmental Impacts .....	74
7.1.2	Potential Socio-economic Impacts.....	76
7.2	Potential Cumulative Impacts .....	77
8	Public Participation Process .....	78
8.1	The Roles and Responsibilities of the Stakeholder.....	78
8.1.1	Role of Stakeholders .....	78
8.1.2	Responsibility of Stakeholders.....	79
8.1.3	Approach to Public Participation.....	79
8.2	Methodology .....	79
8.2.1	Stakeholder Identification .....	79
8.2.2	Authority Notification .....	80
8.2.3	Stakeholder Notification.....	80
8.2.4	Stakeholder and Public Meetings .....	81
8.2.5	Issues Trail.....	81
8.2.6	Public Review of the Draft Scoping Report .....	82
8.2.7	Final Scoping Report Submission.....	82
8.3	Analysis of Stakeholders .....	82
8.3.1	Breakdown of the Stakeholders.....	82
8.3.2	Stakeholder's Capacity to Participate .....	83
8.4	Key Issues and Concerns .....	83
9	Plan of Study for the Environmental Impact Reporting Phase....	85
9.1	Public Participation during the Environmental Impact Reporting Phase .....	85
9.2	Baseline Studies .....	86
9.2.1	Scope of Investigations .....	86

---

9.2.2	Methodology .....	86
9.2.3	Air Quality Impact Assessment.....	87
9.2.4	Noise Impact Assessment.....	88
9.2.5	Hydrological Assessment .....	89
9.2.6	Heritage Impact Assessment.....	91
9.2.7	Blasting Impact Assessment.....	91
9.2.8	Visual Impact Assessment .....	92
9.2.9	Traffic Impact Assessment .....	94
9.2.10	Social Impact Assessment .....	94
9.3	Environmental Impact Assessment Methodology .....	95
9.3.1	Cumulative Impacts.....	97
10	Way Forward.....	98
11	References.....	99

---

## List of Tables

Table 1: Project Proponent Details .....	24
Table 2: Details of the Responsible Person for the Proposed Project.....	24
Table 3: Environmental Assessment Practitioner Details .....	25
Table 4: Applicable listed activities in terms of Listing Notice 1, 2 and 3.....	28
Table 5: Applicable Water Uses in terms of the section 21 of the NWA.....	29
Table 6: Applicable Activities in terms of section 38 of the NHRA .....	32
Table 7: Projects proposed for Tumela Mine (AAP Draft Prefeasibility Study, 2013) .....	38
Table 8: Temperature Data (W0587477, Northam and W0587725 Thabazimbi and WR 90) (Shippon, J, <i>et al.</i> , 2012).....	49
Table 9: Evaporation data (W0587477, Northam and W0587725 Thabazimbi and WR 90) (Shippon, J, <i>et al.</i> , 2012).....	50
Table 10: Percentage of Land Usage .....	56
Table 11: Vegetation Recordings (Shippon, J, <i>et al.</i> , 2012) .....	58
Table 12: Avifauna Species (Van der Walt, 2012).....	60
Table 13: Air Quality in the Waterberg District Municipality (Waterberg IDP, 2012/13) .....	66
Table 14: Population of Waterberg District .....	72
Table 15: Environmental Impacts Potentially Associated with the Proposed Project.....	74
Table 16: Socio-Economic and Cultural / Heritage Impacts Potentially associated with the Proposed Project .	76
Table 17: Cumulative Impacts Potentially Associated with the Proposed Project .....	77
Table 18: Breakdown of Stakeholders Currently Registered on the Database.....	82
Table 19: Environmental Significance Determination.....	95
Table 20: Interpretation of the Risk Level .....	97

## List of Figures

Figure 1: Location of the Tumela Mine within the Limpopo Province (Google Earth, 2013).....	20
Figure 2: Tumela Mine in relation to surrounding towns (approximate locations) (Google, 2013).....	21
Figure 3: Authorisation Processes.....	22
Figure 4: Decision making authorities for the Proposed Project .....	23
Figure 5: Alternative Shaft Positions (Anglo American Platinum: Shaft Surface Position, 2013) .....	41
Figure 6: Graphical display of the mining blocks constituting the Mine Extraction Strategy (AAP Draft Prefeasibility Study, 2013) .....	44
Figure 7: Current Amandelbult Section production profile (AAP Draft Prefeasibility Study, 2013) .....	44
Figure 8: Proposed Tumela Mine Production Profile (AAP Draft Prefeasibility Study, 2013).....	45
Figure 9: Proposed Project Location in Relation to the Bushveld Igneous Complex .....	47
Figure 10: Geology of Tumela Mine (Shippon, <i>et al.</i> 2012). .....	48
Figure 11: Monthly Temperatures for Thabazimbi for the period 2003 to 2005 (Keiser, 2013) .....	50
Figure 12: Monthly rainfall recorded at the Thabazimbi SAWS station (2003 to 2005) (Keiser. K., 2013).....	51
Figure 13: Surface Wind Rose Plots for the period 2003 to 2005 at the SAWS Thabazimbi station (Keiser. K., 2013).....	52
Figure 14: Tumela Gradient (Google Earth, 2011) .....	54
Figure 15: Division of Land Uses in the Thabazimbi Local Municipality (Thabazimbi Local Municipality, 2012) 56	
Figure 16: Regional vegetation a (Van der Walt, 2012).....	58
Figure 17: Watercourses in proximity to Tumela Mine (Google Earth, 2012) .....	64
Figure 18: Map indicating the Catchment Boundaries relevant to the Study Area (Shippon, <i>et al.</i> 2012) .....	65
Figure 19: Hourly average PM <sub>10</sub> concentrations at Thabazimbi SAWS station.....	67
Figure 20: Heritage Sites (Van Schalkwyk, 2012).....	70
Figure 21: Pie chart showing the Breakdown of the Stakeholders currently Registered on the Database .....	83

# List of Appendices

Appendix A- WSP Capability Statement.....	102
Appendix B- Detailed project drawing.....	103
Appendix C- Stakeholder Engagement.....	104
Appendix D- Authority Correspondence .....	105

# Abbreviations and Acronyms

Abbreviation / Acronyms	Description
AAP	Anglo American Platinum Limited
AEL	Atmospheric Emissions Licence
AQIA	Air Quality Impact Assessment
AQMP	Air Quality Management Plans
BA	Basic Assessment
BBBEE	Broad Based Black Economic Empowerment
BIC	Bushveld Igneous Complex
BID	Background Information Documents
BP	Business Plan
CadnaA	Computer Aided Noise Abatement
CBD	Convention on Biological Diversity
CEF	Community Engagement Department
DEA	Department of Environmental Affairs
DMR	Department of Mineral Resources
DWA	Department of Water Affairs
EA	Environmental Authorisation
EAP	Environmental Assessment Practitioner
EIA	Environmental Impact Assessment
EIAR	Environmental Impact Assessment Report
EIR	Environmental Impact Reporting
EMP	Environmental Management Programme
EMPR	Environmental Management Programme Report
ENPAT	Environmental Potential Atlas
GIS	Geographic Information System
HIA	Heritage Impact Assessment
I&APs	Interested and Affected Parties
IDP	Integrated Development Plan

Abbreviation / Acronyms	Description
IWULA	Integrated Water Use License Application
ktpa	kilo tons per annum
kV	kilovolts
LEDET	Limpopo Economic Development, Environment and Tourism
mamsl	metres above mean sea level
MEC	Member of the Executive Committee
MPRDA	Minerals and Petroleum Resources Development Act (No. 28 of 2002)
MSA	Middle Stone Age
mtpa	million tons per annum
MW	megawatt
NEM:AQA	National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act (No. 39 of 2004)
NEM:BA	The National Environmental Management Biodiversity Act
NEM:WA	National Environmental Management: Waste Act (No. 59 of 2008)
NEMA	National Environmental Management Act (No. 107 of 1998)
NHRA	National Heritage Resources Act (No. 25 of 1999)
NWA	National Water Act (No. 36 of 1998)
PGE	Platinum Group Elements
PGM	Platinum Group Metals
PGM	Platinum Group Metals
PM	Particulate Matter
QDGC	Quarter Degree Grid Cell
RPM	Rustenburg Platinum Mines
S&EIR	Social and Environmental Impact Reporting
SAHRA	South African Heritage Resources Agency
SANBI	South African National Biodiversity Institute
SAWS	South African Weather Services
SWMP	Storm Water Management Plan
TIA	Traffic Impact Assessment
tpm	tons per month
UG2	Upper Group 2
UNESCO	United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation
WRD	Waste Rock Dump
WSP	WSP Environmental (Pty) Ltd
WSP Group	WSP Group Limited
WULA	Water Use License Application

---

Abbreviation / Acronyms	Description
S&EIR	Social and Environmental Impact Reporting
SAHRA	South African Heritage Resources Agency
SANBI	South African National Biodiversity Institute



---

# Executive Summary

## Background Information

The Rustenburg Platinum Mines Limited (RPM) – Amandelbult Section comprises two mines, namely the Tumela Mine and the Dishaba Mine (the Mines).

The Mines are situated in the Limpopo Province, South Africa, between the towns of Northam and Thabazimbi, and form part of the North-western Limb of the Bushveld Igneous Complex (BIC) (refer to **Figure 1** and **Figure 2** in Section 1 of the report). The Mines operate under a mining right covering a total area of 110 square kilometres (km<sup>2</sup>).

The current Tumela Mine infrastructure consists of a vertical shaft and a number of raise-bore and decline shaft systems. Mining occurs of both the Merensky and Upper Group 2 (UG2) reef horizons (ore bodies). Tumela currently delivers approximately 380,000 tons per month (tpm) of ore to the Concentrator; this comprises a mix of the ore bodies (Anglo American Platinum Limited, <http://www.angloplatinum.com/default.asp>, date accessed: 22 May 2013).

## Project Description

The Tumela Mine comprises; 1 Shaft and includes a series of small inclined and shallow raise bored shafts. Mining of the ore bodies on the shallower infrastructure will be depleted within the next five years. As such additional hoisting capacity from depths exceeding 800m below surface is required. A number of projects have been proposed in order to supplement the depleting available ore resource at Tumela Mine. The various projects are potential projects which may be implemented at a later stage in the life of mine however are not confirmed at this stage. The Tumela Central Shaft Project (this project) is in a pre-feasibility design phase and is currently under internal review and approval by AAP management.

The Proposed Project involves the sinking, installation and construction of an additional vertical shaft and associated infrastructure. The infrastructure will be designed for a capacity of 250ktpm however only 125ktpm will be handled during the first eight years of operation. The surface infrastructure of the Central Shaft will consist of an individual vertical shaft infrastructure, comprising the following:

- Main Shaft Headgear;
- Downcast Shaft;
- Ventilation Shaft;
- Ore Stockpiles;
- Supporting Infrastructure;
- Services (i.e. water, sewage, electricity, waste management, storm water management);
- Servitudes; and
- Security.

It has been estimated that currently accessible ore bodies at the Tumela Mine will be depleted within the next five years (Pre-feasibility Study, 2013). In response to the unsustainable production profile, team members from Anglo American Platinum Limited (AAP) and the Anglo American Technical Business Coordination Group (TBCG) developed a Mine Extraction Strategy, which is illustrated in **Figure 6**, for the RPM – Amandelbult Section to optimise the concentrating capacity in the medium to long term.

The current tonnage profile is represented in **Figure 7** in **Section 5** and indicates a depletion rate in production. The objective of the Proposed Project is to replace the tonnages in order to maintain the current level of production at above 4Mta at the Tumela Mine (Pre-feasibility Study, 2013). The potential of the Proposed Project to supplement the production profile is represented in **Figure 8** in Section 5.

---

The proposed mine design changes are expected to result in an increase in half level volumes, improved margins and a reduction in capital and operational expenditure. Currently, only the Proposed Project configuration meets the criteria required to ensure continued profitability at the RPM – Amandelbult Section (Final Mine Extraction Strategy, 2013).

## Project Alternatives

During the Pre-feasibility Phase of the proposed project, options relating to various aspects of the proposed project were considered and assessed in terms of their feasibility (including financial, social and environmental aspects) and the most suitable options selected. The main alternatives considered as part of the study relate to the shaft location alternatives and the no-go alternative.

The above-mentioned alternatives are described in order to provide an understanding of how the most feasible (preferred) alternatives were determined prior to initiating the scoping and Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) process. Any additional alternatives identified as part of the Feasibility Phase will be included and assessed in the Environmental Impact Report (EIR).

## Governance Framework

### ■ Minerals and Petroleum Resources Development Act (No. 28 of 2002) (MPRDA)

Although RPM has a mining right under the MPRDA and an approved Environmental Management Programme Report (EMPR), the activities associated with the Proposed Project, are not included therein. In accordance with section 102 (amendment of rights, permits, programmes and plans) of the MPRDA, the mine is required to undertake an EMPR amendment via the DMR, in accordance with the MPRDA Regulations, in order to ensure that the proposed activities are planned for and subsequently managed according to an updated and approved EMPR.

### ■ National Environmental Management Act (No. 107 of 1998) (NEMA)

The NEMA activities, from Government Notice (GN) 544, potentially applicable to the proposed project are listed below:

- Activity 12: The construction of facilities or infrastructure for the off-stream storage of water, including dams and reservoirs, with a combined capacity of 50 000 m<sup>3</sup> or more; and
- Activity 23: The transformation of undeveloped, vacant or derelict land to commercial or industrial use, outside an urban area and where the total area to be transformed is bigger than 1 hectare but less than 20 hectares.

The activities listed in GN 545 potentially associated with the proposed project include:

- Activity 5: The construction of facilities or infrastructure for any process or activity which requires a permit or license in terms of national or provincial legislation governing the generation or release of emissions, pollution or effluent and which is not identified in Notice No. 544 of 2010 or included in the list of waste management activities published in terms of section 19 of the NEM: WA in which case that Act will apply.

### ■ National Water Act (No. 36 of 1998) (NWA)

The following activities are considered relevant to the proposed project:

- Section 21(a): Taking water from a water resource.
- Section 21(c): Impeding or diverting the flow of water in a watercourse.
- Section 21(g): The disposal / handling of waste or water containing waste that may potentially impact on a water resource.

- 
- Section 21(i): Altering the bed, banks, course or characteristics of a watercourse.
  - Section 21(j): Removing, discharging or disposing of water found underground if it is necessary for the efficient continuation of an activity or for the safety of people.

## Scoping Phase

Scoping is the process for determining issues and concerns related to the project and involves consultation with the stakeholders and authorities. In addition, the Scoping Phase includes the identification of required specialist studies and potential environmental aspects for further investigation. The Scoping Phase outlines the plan for EIR Phase and facilitates the input from stakeholders and authorities to inform the EIR process. In addition, the Scoping Report will:

- Include details of the Environmental Assessment Practitioner (EAP) responsible for preparing the report and the expertise of the EAP to carry out the scoping procedures;
- Identify all legislation and guidelines that have been considered in the preparation of the Scoping Report;
- Describe the existing and proposed activities and reasonable alternatives, including the advantages and disadvantages of the alternatives;
- Describe the property on which the activities are to take place;
- Describe the need and desirability of the activities;
- Describe the environment (at a screening level) that may be affected by the activities and the manner in which the physical, biological, social, economic and cultural aspects of the environment may be affected by the activities;
- Describe the environmental issues and potential impacts, including cumulative impacts that have been identified;
- Indicate the methodology that will be adopted in assessing the potential impacts that have been identified, including any specialist studies or specialised processes that will be undertaken;
- Detail the public participation initiation phase for the S&EIR process; and
- Include a plan of study for the EIR which sets out the proposed approach to the EIR Phase.

An important part of any scoping phase is the stakeholder engagement process. Effective public participation requires the prior disclosure of relevant and adequate project information to enable stakeholders to understand the risks, impacts, and opportunities of the Proposed Project.

The objectives of the public participation process can be summarised as follows:

- Identify relevant individuals, organisations and communities who may be interested in or affected by the Proposed Project;
- Clearly outline the scope of the Proposed Project, including the scale and nature of the existing and proposed activities;
- Identify viable project alternatives that will assist the relevant authorities in making an informed decision;
- Identify shortcomings and gaps in existing information;
- Identify key concerns, raised by I&APs that should be addressed in the subsequent specialist studies;
- Highlight the potential for environmental impacts, whether positive or negative; and
- To inform and provide the public with information and an understanding of the Proposed Project, issues and solutions.

## Public Participation Process

In meeting the above requirements, the following activities were undertaken as part of the stakeholder engagement:

- Newspaper advertisements in the Rustenburg Herald and Platinum Weekly on 22 February 2013 and 10 May 2013;
- Site notices in and around the Proposed Project area on 23 February 2013 and 09 May 2013; and
- Distribution of the BID to stakeholders 22-23 February 2013.

WSP took part in three separate stakeholder meetings during the project Scoping Phase. The meetings include a Community Engagement Forum (CEF) meeting on 08 May 2013, a public notification meeting on 11 March 2013, and a public meeting on 14 May 2013. Copies of the Scoping Report were made available for public review. All concerns, comments, viewpoints and questions (collectively referred to as 'issues') have been documented to date and responses issued from RPM Management Team and the Project Management Team. The Issues Trail is provided in **Appendix B**.

## Potential Environmental Impacts

The over-arching objective of the Scoping Phase is to identify record and describe the potential environmental impacts that maybe associated with the Proposed Project. This enables the specialist studies to be clearly focused on aspects of significant concern. It also provides a framework for the assessment of the impacts that the Proposed Project will have on the environment, and of the impacts the environment will have on the Proposed Project. Based on inputs from the Project Team, stakeholders, I&APs and specialists, the potential environmental (biophysical and social-economic) impacts have been identified in the table below and will be investigated further during the EIR Phase of the process.

**Table: Environmental Impacts Potentially Associated with the Proposed Project**

Environmental Aspects	Proposed method of investigation
<b>Geology</b>	Assessment of significance in the EIR Phase and the undertaking of a Blasting Impact Assessment.
<b>Soils, Land Use and Land Capability</b>	Assessment of significance in the EIR Phase
<b>Biodiversity</b>	Assessment of significance in the EIR Phase.
<b>Surface and Groundwater</b>	Assessment of significance in the EIR Phase and the undertaking of a Hydrological Impact Assessment.
<b>Air Quality</b>	Assessment of significance in the EIR Phase and the undertaking of an Air Quality Impact Assessment.
<b>Noise</b>	Assessment of significance in the EIR Phase and the undertaking of a Noise Impact Assessment.
<b>Visual</b>	Assessment of significance in the EIR Phase and the undertaking of a Visual Impact Assessment..
<b>Traffic</b>	Assessment of significance in the EIR Phase and the undertaking of a Traffic Impact Assessment.
<b>Culture and Heritage</b>	Assessment of significance in the EIR Phase and the undertaking of a Heritage Impact Assessment.
<b>Waste</b>	Assessment of significance in the EIR Phase.

<b>Incidents</b>	Assessment of significance in the EIR Phase.
<b>Environmental Aspects</b>	Proposed method of investigation

**Table: Social Impacts Potentially Associated with the Proposed Project**

<b>Environmental Aspects</b>	<b>Proposed method of investigation</b>
<b>Socio-Economic</b>	Assessment of significance in the EIR Phase and the undertaking of a Social Impact Assessment (specialist study will be part of the EIR).
<b>Safety</b>	Assessment of significance in the EIR Phase.

Cumulative impacts are regarded as the incremental and combined effects of human activity that pose a significant threat to the environment. Cumulative impacts accrue over time, from one or more sources, and can result in the degradation of valuable resources. Potential cumulative impacts have been identified and are presented in Section 7 of the report. The table below indicates the various aspects which will be investigated in the EIR phase.

**Cumulative Impacts Potential Associated with the Proposed Project**

<b>Environmental Aspects</b>	<b>Proposed method of investigation</b>	
<b>Climate</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Increased greenhouse gas emissions.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Increased electricity use;</li> <li>■ Increased vehicle usage; and</li> <li>■ Increased use of the Concentrator.</li> </ul>
<b>Air quality</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Degradation of air quality.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The operation of existing and future infrastructure at Dishaba Mine, Tumela Mine and the Concentrator,</li> </ul>
<b>Hydrology</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Surface water pollution; and</li> <li>■ Aquatic systems (ecosystem functioning).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Soil erosion; and</li> <li>■ Soil contamination by chemicals and hydrocarbons.</li> </ul>
<b>Geohydrology</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Groundwater pollution and depletion.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Groundwater contamination from existing tailings storage facility;</li> <li>■ Groundwater contamination due to the underground mining activities; and</li> <li>■ Groundwater depletion due to shaft dewatering pumping.</li> </ul>
<b>Noise</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Increased noise production.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The operation of existing and future infrastructure at Dishaba, Tumela and the</li> </ul>

		Concentrator.
<b>Socio-Economic</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Safety;</li> <li>■ Aesthetics;</li> <li>■ Regional economic benefit; and</li> <li>■ Traffic.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Increase to existing activities in the area;</li> <li>■ Cumulative impact of the proposed shaft infrastructure and existing infrastructure on the visual aesthetics of the area;</li> <li>■ Generation of possible employment opportunities; and</li> <li>■ The increase in traffic could have an impact on the surrounding public roads in the area.</li> </ul>

## Plan of Study for the EIR Phase

The EIR Phase will aim to:

- Address any issues that have been highlighted during the Scoping phase;
- Evaluate the alternatives for the existing and proposed activities;
- Assess all identified impacts to determine the potential significance of the impact; and
- Recommend mitigation measures for minimising the significance of each impact.

The EIR Phase will comprise of the following activities:

- **Public participation process** - The process was initiated during the Scoping Phase, but will continue through the EIR Phase to keep stakeholders informed of Proposed Project developments, and to maintain liaison with authorities.
- **Assessment of alternatives.**
- **Baseline and Specialist studies** - The primary objective of this phase is to collect adequate baseline information to accurately describe the receiving environment. The level of detail for each aspect of the baseline studies will be determined by the level of confidence required for decision-making. The following aspects of the biophysical and socio-economic environments will be considered in the baseline studies:
  - Climate;
  - Geology;
  - Topography;
  - Soil and land capability;
  - Land use;
  - Flora and fauna;
  - Surface-and-groundwater;
  - Air quality;

- 
- Visual aspects;
  - Cultural heritage; and
  - Socio-economic environment.
- **Impact Assessment** – The environmental impact rating will be undertaken according to the AAP's 5x5 Impact Rating Matrix utilised to determine the significance of the potential impact as a result of the Proposed Project. This will entail:
- The identification of different environmental aspects, impacts, receptors and resources for construction and operational phases and, where relevant, for decommissioning;
  - The identification of receptors and resources will provide an indication of the areas sensitivity to impact; and
  - The identification of the significance of impacts, including the probability of occurrence; the intensity or severity of the change to the environment; the timing of the impact; duration over which an impact will be experienced; and the spatial extent of the impact.
- **Identification and description of mitigation measures.**
- **Reporting and decision-making** - an EIR/EMPR will be compiled in accordance with the NEMA EIA Regulations and the MPRDA. The EIR and EMPR reports have been combined into one report in order to prevent the duplication of information. The report will provide the actions for the management of identified environmental impacts emanating from the proposed project and a detailed outline of the implementation programme to minimise and / or eliminate the anticipated negative environmental impacts and promote the anticipated positive environmental impacts.

## Conclusion

The Draft Scoping Report was placed on public review for the legislated time period in accordance with the NEMA. Furthermore, the Draft Scoping Report was submitted to the LEDET and the DMR for comment. The LEDET issued a formal response requesting a limited number of amendments to the Draft Scoping Report prior to the Scoping Report being considered final (formal response contained in **Appendix D**). All issues raised during the Scoping Phase of this project have been incorporated into the Final Scoping Report (this document) and will be addressed during the EIR Phase of the project. Once a decision has been reached, the stakeholders will be informed of the next phase of the public participation process.

The Final Scoping Report has been submitted to the delegated lead authorities responsible for authorising this project, in this case the Limpopo DMR and the LEDET, who are considering the findings in consultation with various other authorities and will issue a decision to proceed onto the next phase, that being the EIR phase.



---

# 1 Introduction

## 1.1 Purpose of this Report

The Scoping Phase is the first of two phases associated with a Scoping and Environmental Impact Reporting (S&EIR) process (also known as an Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) process). The purpose of this Final Scoping Report is to provide stakeholders with an overview of the Tumela Central Shaft Project (Proposed Project), characterise the environmental and social context, identify potential environmental, social and health aspects and impacts associated with the project and invite early input from stakeholders in the identification of key issues and areas of concern in order to inform the S&EIR process.

The main objectives of the Scoping Phase are to:

- Describe the methodology applied to conduct Scoping;
- Provide a description of the Proposed Project;
- Identify and describe reasonable land use or development alternatives to the Proposed Project;
- Describe the existing status of the environment;
- Identify and describe the anticipate environmental, social and cultural impacts, including cumulative impacts, associated with the Proposed Project and outline supporting studies included within the S&EIR process to address these issues further;
- Describe the process of engagement with identified stakeholders, including their views and concerns; and
- Describe the nature and extent of further investigations required in the Environmental Impact Reporting (EIR) Phase.

## 1.2 Project Background

The Rustenburg Platinum Mines Limited (RPM) – Amandelbult Section comprises two mines and a concentrator, namely the Tumela Mine, the Dishaba Mine (the Mines) and the Amandelbult Concentrator. The Mines are situated in the Limpopo Province, South Africa, between the towns of Northam and Thabazimbi, and form part of the North-western Limb of the Bushveld Igneous Complex (BIC) (**Figure 1** and **Figure 2**). Amandelbult Section operates under a mining right covering a total area of 110 square kilometres (km<sup>2</sup>).

The current Tumela Mine infrastructure consists of a vertical shaft and a number of raise-bore and decline shaft systems. Mining occurs of both the Merensky and Upper Group 2 (UG2) reef horizons (ore bodies). Tumela currently delivers approximately 380,000 tons per month (tpm) of ore to the Concentrator; this comprises a mix of the ore bodies (Merensky and UG2 reef) (Anglo American Platinum Limited, <http://www.angloplatinum.com/default.asp>, date accessed: 22 May 2013).

## 1.3 Terms of Reference

Prior to the commencement of the Proposed Project, environmental authorisation (EA) will need to be obtained in accordance with the National Environmental Management Act (No. 107 of 1998) as amended (NEMA), the Minerals and Petroleum Resources Development Act (No. 28 of 2002) (MPRDA), and the National Water Act (No. 36 of 1998) (NWA). RPM - Amandelbult Section is required to undertake an Environmental Management Programme (EMPR) amendment process, a S&EIR process, as well as a Water Use License Application (WULA) process, respectively (**Figure 3**). A S&EIR process will therefore need to be completed in order to meet the abovementioned legal requirements and assess the potential risks associated with the Proposed Project.

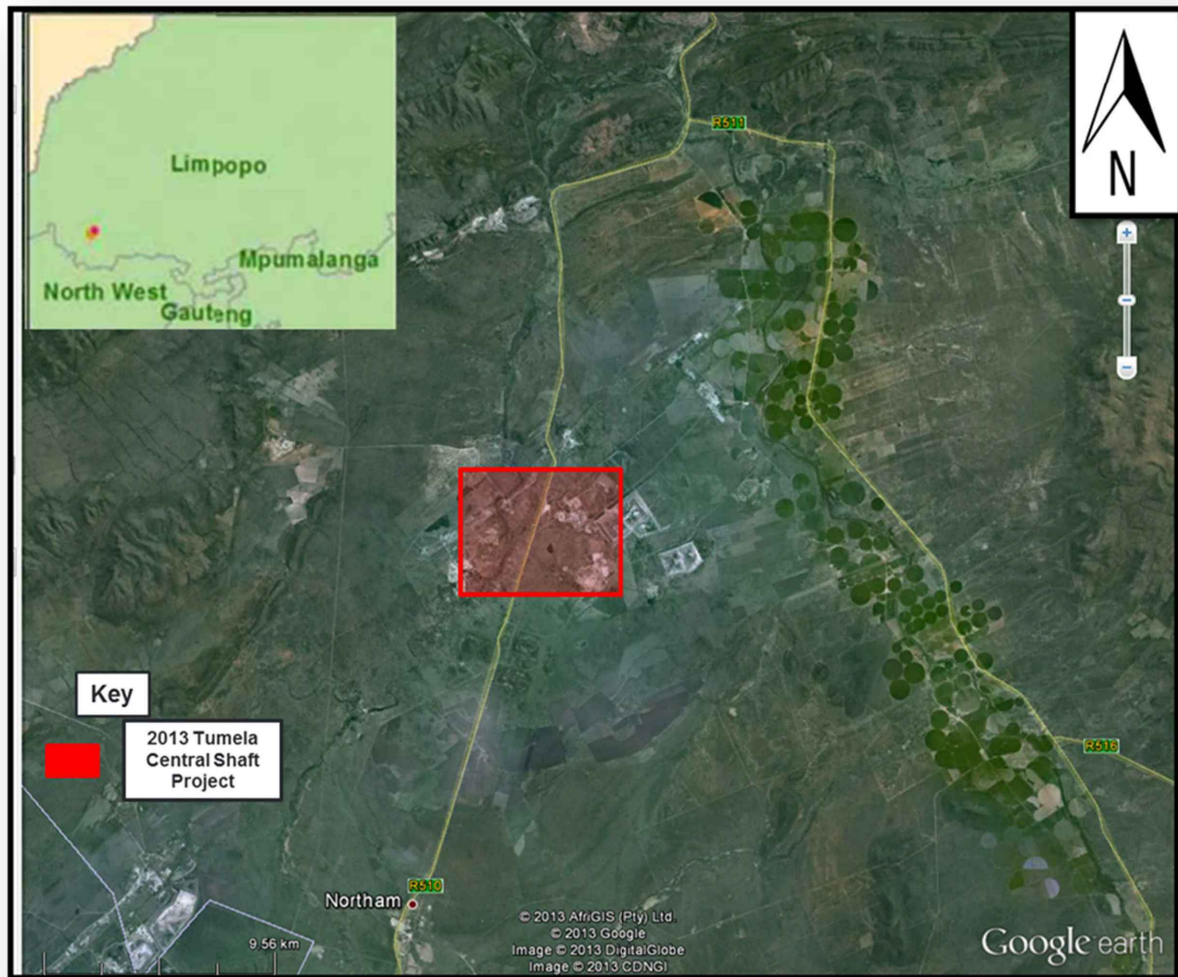


Figure 1: Location of the Tumela Mine within the Limpopo Province (Google Earth, 2013)

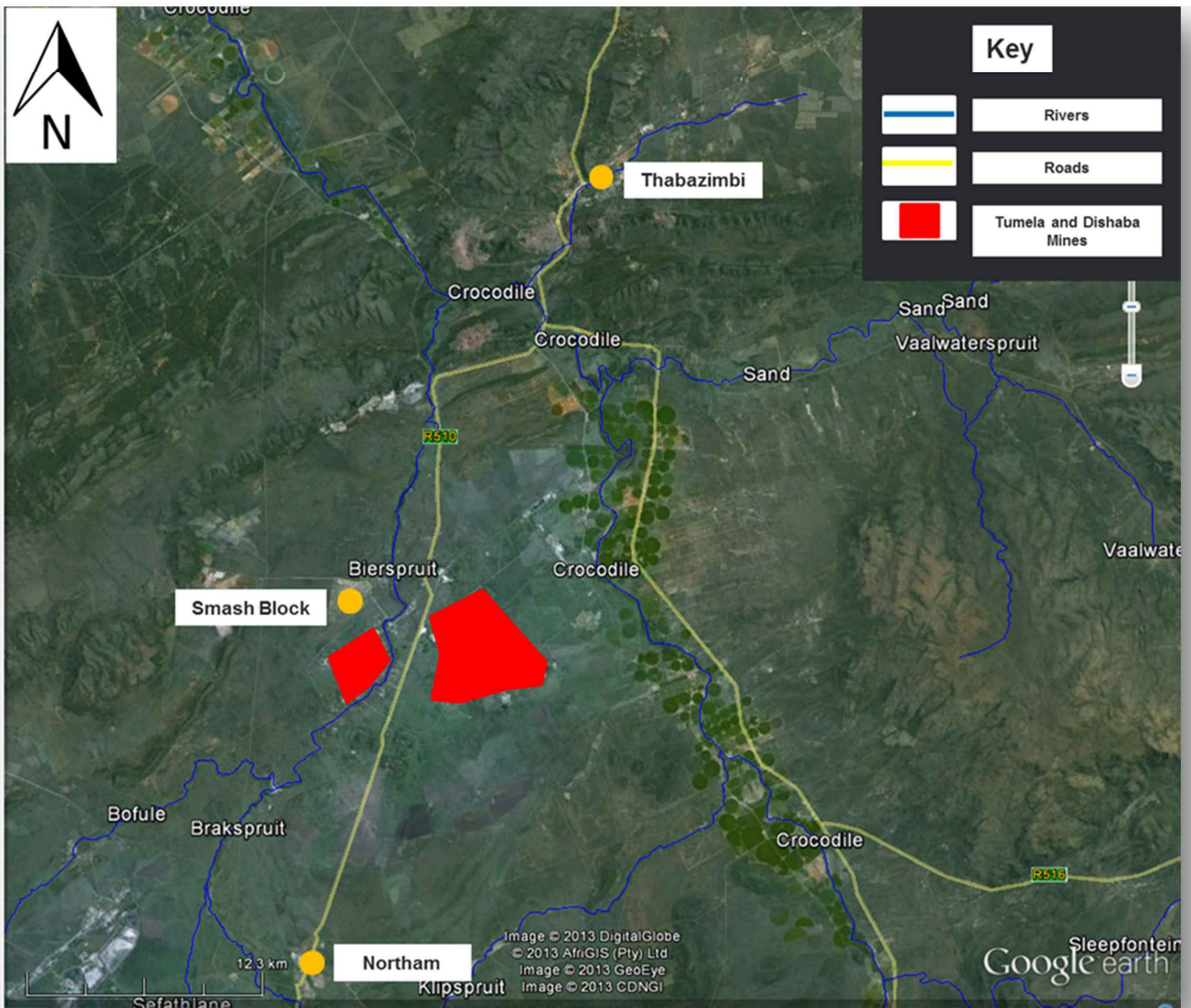
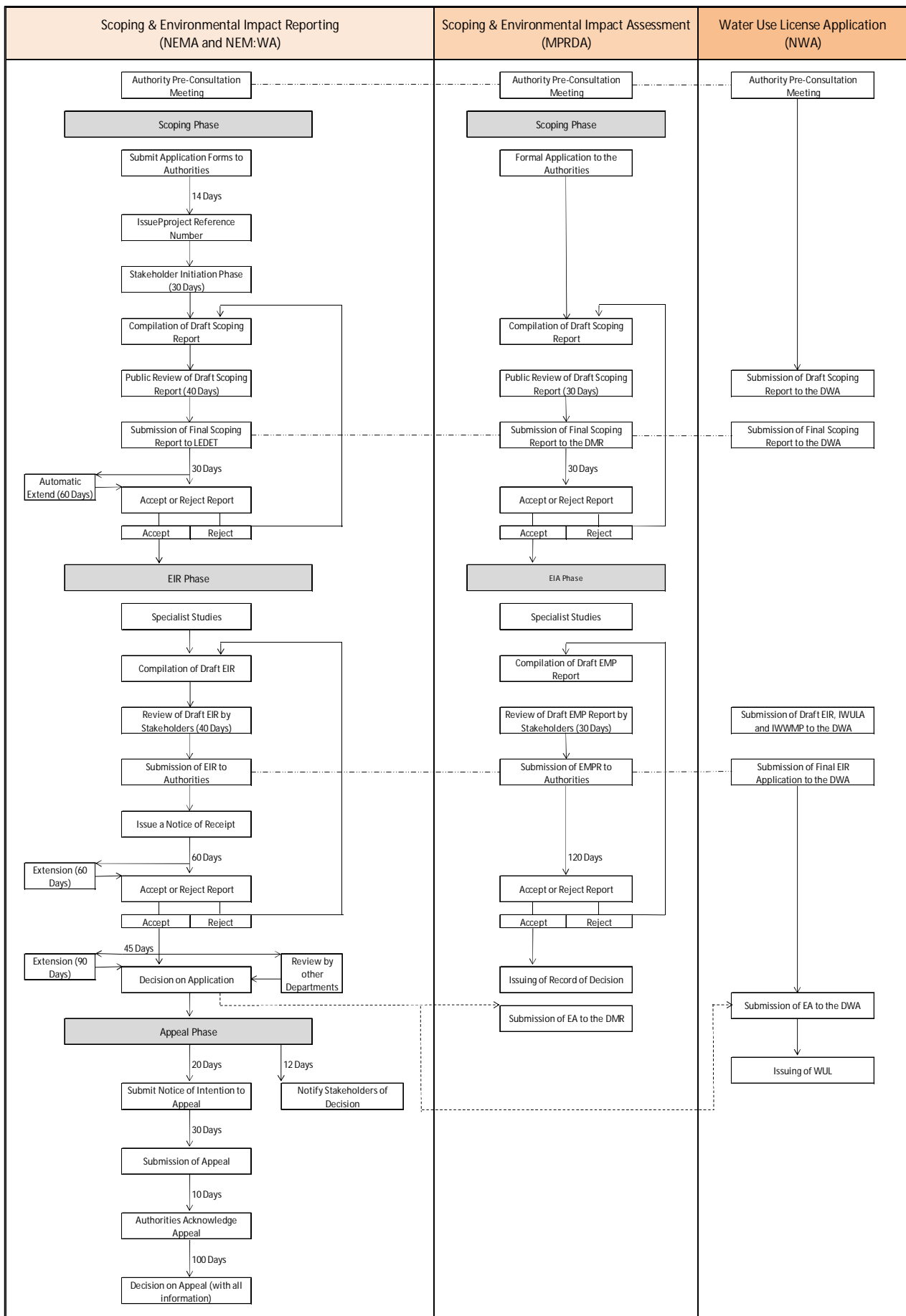


Figure 2: Tumela Mine in relation to surrounding towns (approximate locations) (Google, 2013)



**Figure 3: Authorisation Processes**

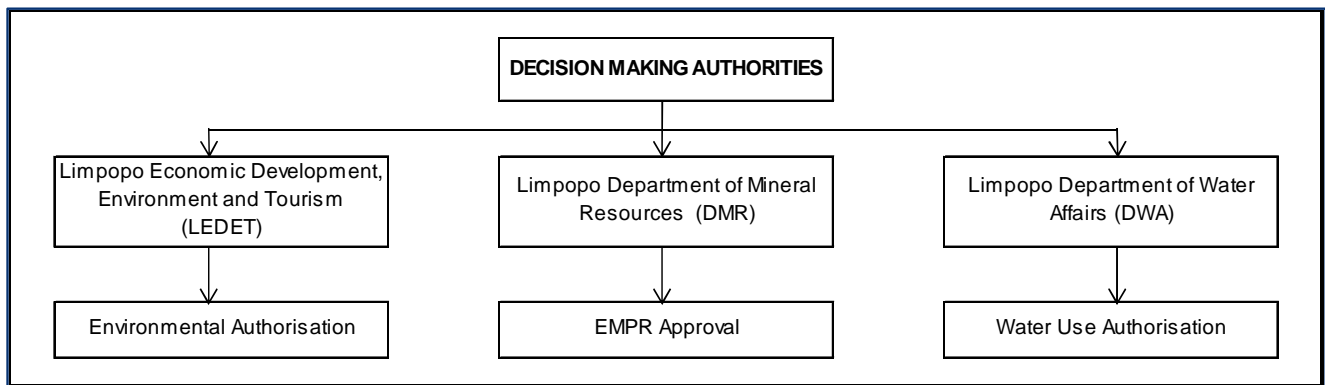


## 1.4 Assumptions and Limitations

- This Final Scoping Report has been prepared for the purposes outlined in the initial proposal prepared by WSP Environmental (Pty) Ltd (WSP) for the scope and the period of work described in WSP's proposal;
- All information regarding the Proposed Project infrastructure and the mining operations at the Tumela Mine was provided by the Project Proponent. This includes the project description, conceptual drawing of surface infrastructure, motivation and alternatives considered including the current operations associated with the mine;
- Where data supplied by RPM or other specialist consultants, including previous site investigation data, have been used, it has been assumed that the information is correct unless otherwise stated. No responsibility is accepted by WSP for incomplete or inaccurate data supplied by external parties;
- It is WSP's professional opinion that the adopted predictive methods are sufficient and adequate for rating the significance of the impacts during the EIR Phase; and
- The information and data included in the Final Scoping Report is based upon information that existed at the time of the compilation of the report.

## 1.5 Decision Making Authority

The Limpopo Department of Mineral Resources (DMR) will be the delegated lead authority responsible for the decision making process in accordance with the MPRDA. The Limpopo Economic Development, Environment and Tourism (LEDET) will be the delegated lead authority responsible for the decision making process in accordance with the NEMA, and the Department of Water Affairs (DWA) will be the delegated lead authority responsible for the decision making process in accordance with the NWA (**Figure 4**).



**Figure 4: Decision making authorities for the Proposed Project**

## 1.6 Project Proponent

The Proponent, RPM, is owned by Anglo American Platinum Limited (AAP). AAP is the world's leading primary producer of platinum group metals (PGMs) and accounts for approximately 40% of the world's newly mined platinum. The Company is listed on the Johannesburg Stock Exchange and has its headquarters in Johannesburg, South Africa. One of Amplats' main operating mines includes the RPM - Amandelbult Section (AAP, <http://www.angloplatinum.com/default.asp>, date accessed: 22 May 2013).

Relevant contact details of the Project Proponent are included in **table 1** below.

**Table 1: Project Proponent Details**

Detail	Rustenburg Platinum Mines Limited
<b>DMR Reference Number:</b>	RNW(KL) 6/2/2/3164
<b>Contact Person:</b>	Mr Tom van den Berg
<b>Postal Address:</b>	Amandelbult Mine, P O Box 2, Chromite, 0362, South Africa, 0362.
<b>Telephone:</b>	+27 (0) 14 784 7100
<b>Fax:</b>	+27 (0) 14 784 1720
<b>E-mail:</b>	tom.vandenberg@angloamerican.com
<b>Mine Owner:</b>	Rustenburg Platinum Mines Limited

The responsible person contact details, for the Proposed Project from RPM, are provided below:

**Table 2: Details of the Responsible Person for the Proposed Project**

Detail	Rustenburg Platinum Mines Limited
<b>Responsible Person:</b>	Mr Vinesh Dilsook
<b>Physical Address:</b>	Group Environmental Offices, 5th Street, Waterval Village, Rustenburg, South Africa
<b>Telephone:</b>	+27 (0) 14 598 2295
<b>Fax:</b>	None
<b>E-mail:</b>	vinesh.dilsook@angloamerican.com

## 1.7 Environmental Assessment Practitioner

Together WSP Group Limited (WSP Group) and Genivar represent one of the worlds' leading professional services firms. We work throughout the public and private sectors globally providing integrated and innovative solutions across a broad range of disciplines to ensure the sustainable transformation of built and natural environment. Our expertise ranges from environmental remediation to urban planning, from engineering iconic infrastructure to advising cities on climate adaptation, and from developing the energy sources of the future to enabling new ways of extracting natural resources. We have 14,500 employees, including engineers, scientists, planners, project managers, technicians, environmental experts, and other specialists, based in more than 300 offices, across 35 countries.

WSP is a leading South African environmental consultancy with a broad range of expertise and over 20 years' experience in the regional environmental market. While we form part of WSP Group, a global engineering and environmental multi-consultancy, we are also committed to transformation in our operational region, with 26% Broad Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) ownership and having achieved Level 3 BBBEE in South Africa. As part of a global business we provide the regional marketplace with a dynamic blend of local and global expertise.

We pride ourselves on our reputation for delivery and technical excellence and provide a broad range of environmental and energy related services across a range of economic areas including the industrial, mining, financial, tourism and public sectors. Refer to **Appendix A** for a copy of WSP's Capability Statement. **Table 3** provides the details of the Environmental Assessment Practitioner (EAP).

**Table 3: Environmental Assessment Practitioner Details**

<b>Environmental Assessment Practitioner</b>	<b>WSP Environmental (Pty ) Ltd</b>
<b>Contact person:</b>	Kerry Buchanan
<b>Physical address:</b>	199 Bryanston Drive, Bryanston, 2021
<b>Postal address:</b>	PO Box 5384, Rivonia, 2128
<b>Telephone:</b>	+ 27 (0) 11 361 1395
<b>Fax:</b>	+ 27 (0) 86 505 3939
<b>E-mail:</b>	Kerry.Buchanan@WSPGroup.co.za

## 1.8 Structure of this Report

As authorisation is required in accordance with the NEMA, the MPRDA and the NWA, WSP compiled a Final Scoping Report in accordance with the NEMA EIA Regulations (Government Notice Regulation (GNR) 543 of 2010) and the MPRDA Regulations (GNR 527 of 2004).

The Final Scoping Report has been compiled in a diligent and independent manner, and includes the following:

- An introduction to the Proposed Project, the Project Proponent, and the EAP (**Section 1**);
- Description of the relevant government legislation applicable to the Proposed Project (**Section 2**);
- Methodology applied during the Scoping phase (**Section 8.2**);
- Detailed Proposed Project description and motivation (**Section 4.1.2 and Section 5**);
- Assessment of Proposed Project alternatives including 'no-go' alternatives (**Section 4.2**);
- Description of the baseline biophysical and socio-economic conditions of the Proposed Project area (**Section 6**);
- Potential environmental and socio-economic impacts, including cumulative impacts (**Section 7**);
- Detailed stakeholder engagement process undertaken for the Proposed Project (**Section 8**);
- Plan of study for the EIR Phase of the Proposed Project (**Section 9**); and
- The Way Forward (**Section 10**).



---

## 2 Regulatory Context

### 2.1 The Constitution of South Africa (No. 108 of 1996)

Since 1994 South African legislation, including environmental legislation, has undergone a large transformation and various laws and policies were promulgated with a strong emphasis on environmental concerns and the need for sustainable development. The Constitution of South Africa (No. 108 of 1996) (The Constitution) provides environmental rights (contained in the Bill of Rights, Chapter 2 (section 24)) and includes implications for environmental management. The environmental rights are guaranteed in section 24 of the Constitution, and states that:

*“Everyone has the right –*

- *To an environment that is not harmful to their health or well-being; and*
- *To have the environment protected, for the benefit of present and future generations, through reasonable legislative and other measures that:*
  - i. Prevent pollution and ecological degradation;*
  - ii. Promote conservation; and*
  - iii. Secure ecologically sustainable development and use of natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development.”*

The Constitution cannot manage environmental resources as a stand-alone piece of legislation hence additional legislation has been promulgated in order to manage the various spheres of both the social and natural environment. Each promulgated act and associated regulations are designed to focus on various industries or components of the environment to ensure that the objectives of the Constitution are effectively implemented and upheld on an on-going basis throughout the country. In terms of section 7, a positive obligation is placed on the State to give effect to the environmental rights.

### 2.2 Minerals and Petroleum Resources Development Act (No. 28 of 2002)

The main objective of the MPRDA is to recognise the sovereignty of the State over all the mineral and petroleum resources in South Africa and to promote equitable access to the country's resources. The MPRDA allows for previously disadvantaged persons to enter the minerals and petroleum industry and benefit from the exploitation of the country's minerals.

Although RPM has a mining right under the MPRDA and an approved Environmental Management Programme Report (EMPR), the activities associated with the Proposed Project, are not included therein. In accordance with section 102 (amendment of rights, permits, programmes and plans) of the MPRDA, the mine is required to undertake an EMPR amendment via the DMR, in accordance with the MPRDA Regulations, in order to ensure that the proposed activities are planned for and subsequently managed according to an updated and approved EMPR.

### 2.3 National Environmental Management Act (No. 107 of 1998)

The NEMA is South Africa's overarching environmental legislation and has, as its primary objective, to provide for co-operative governance by establishing principles for decision making on matters affecting the environment, institutions that will promote co-operative governance and procedures for co-ordinating environmental functions exercised by organs of state and to provide for matters connected therewith.

---

The NEMA provides for the Constitutional right to an environment that is not harmful to the health and well-being of South African citizens, the equitable distribution of natural resources, sustainable development, environmental protection and the formulation of environmental management frameworks.

In terms of the NEMA the Minister of the Department of Environmental Affairs (DEA) may identify activities which may not commence without prior authorisation from the Minister or member of the Executive Committee (MEC) and may also identify geographical areas in which specified activities may not commence without prior authorisation from the Minister or MEC. The Minister of the DEA thus published GNR 544 (Listing Notice 1), 545 (Listing Notice 2) and 546 (Listing Notice 3) (18 June 2010) listing activities that may not commence prior to authorisation from the Minister or MEC. Listing Notice 1 identifies activities that require a Basic Assessment (BA) process to be undertaken, in terms of the EIA Regulations, prior to commencement of that activity. Listing Notice 2 identifies activities that require a S&EIR process to be undertaken, in terms of the EIA Regulations, prior to commencement of that activity. Listing Notice 3 identifies activities within specific areas that require a BA process to be undertaken, in terms of the EIA Regulations, prior to commencement of that activity.

WSP undertook a detailed analysis of the listed activities contained in Listing Notice 1, 2 and 3 in order to ascertain which of the Proposed Project activities trigger any listed activities. The activities, potentially applicable to the Proposed Project are listed below in **Table 4**. The result of the analysis indicated that S&EIR process is required.

Table 4: Applicable listed activities in terms of Listing Notice 1, 2 and 3

Listed Activity	Activity Description	Relevance to the Project
<b>Listing Notice 1 (triggers a BA process)</b>		
<b>Activity 12</b>	The construction of facilities or infrastructure for the off-stream storage of water, including dams and reservoirs, with a combined capacity of 50 000m <sup>3</sup> or more.	The combined capacities of all water storage facilities will trigger this activity. However, it should be noted that the capacities of the retention dam and the settling dam is not yet finalised. The final capacities will be included in the draft EIAR.
<b>Activity 23</b>	The transformation of undeveloped, vacant or derelict land to commercial or industrial use, outside an urban area and where the total area to be transformed is bigger than 1 hectare but less than 20 hectares.	The total area of the Proposed Project infrastructure will exceed 1 hectare.
<b>Listing Notice 2 (triggers a S&amp;EIR process)</b>		
<b>GNR 545 Activity 5</b>	The construction of facilities or infrastructure for any process or activity which requires a permit or license in terms of national or provincial legislation governing the generation or release of emissions, pollution or effluent and which is not identified in Notice No. 544 of 2010 or included in the list of waste management activities published in terms of section 19 of the NEM:WA in which case that Act will apply.	The Proposed Project does not require authorisation in terms of the National Environmental Management: Waste Act (No. 59 of 2008 (NEM:WA) however, the Proposed Project does require authorisation in terms of the NWA due to the construction and subsequent storage of process or underground water in dams / ponds. The activity in terms of the National Water Act (No. 36 of 1998) (NWA), is categorised as the “disposing of waste in a manner which may detrimentally impact on a water course” (NWA, 1998). Furthermore, the ponds / dams will lie within 100 meters of a wetland. This activity in terms of the NWA, is categorised as the “impeding or diverting the flow of water in a watercourse” and “altering the bed, banks, course or characteristics of a watercourse” (NWA, 1998). In order to obtain authorisation in terms of NWA, WSP will follow the prescribed legal process prior to the water related activities becoming operational.

## 2.4 National Water Act (No. 36 of 1998)

The NWA provides for fundamental reformation of legislation relating to water resources and use. The preamble to the NWA recognises that the ultimate aim of water resource management is to achieve sustainable use of water for the benefit of all users and that the protection of the quality of water resources is necessary to ensure sustainability of the nation’s water resources in the interests of all water users.

In terms of the NWA, the national government, acting through the Minister of the DEA, is the public trustee of South Africa’s water resources, and must ensure that water is protected, used, developed, conserved, managed and controlled in a sustainable and equitable manner for the benefit of all persons. The Minister of the DEA is responsible to ensure that water is allocated equitably and used beneficially in the public interest,

while promoting environmental values. The national government, acting through the Minister of the DEA, has the power to regulate the use, flow and control of all water in South Africa.

The majority of the provisions of the NWA came into effect on 1 October 1998 and at the same time various provisions of the Water Act (No. 54 of 1956) (WA) were repealed. The remaining provisions of the NWA commenced on 1st January 1999 and 1 October 1999 (and the remaining provisions of the WA were repealed).

The most fundamental departure from the WA is the removal of the concept of water as private property. Instead, water will be made available through user licences, which may be issued for a maximum period of forty years, subject to renewal. A priority of users has been established for the allocation of licences, with the environment near the top of the list of priorities.

Section 21 of the NWA indicates that “water use includes”:

- Taking water from a water resource;
- Storing water;
- Impeding or diverting the flow of water in a water course;
- Engaging in a stream flow reduction activity contemplated in section 36;
- Engaging in a controlled activity which has either been declared as such or is identified in section 37(1);
- Discharging waste or water containing waste into a water resource through a pipe, canal, sewer, sea outfall or other conduit;
- Disposing of waste in a manner which may detrimentally impact a water resource;
- Disposing in any manner of water which contains waste from, or which has been heated in, any industrial or power generation process;
- Altering the bed, banks, course or characteristics of a water course;
- Removing, discharging or disposing of water found underground if it is necessary for the efficient continuation of an activity or for the safety of people; and
- Using water for recreational purposes.

Specified water uses, in section 21 of the NWA, must be licensed unless listed in Schedule 1; the continuation of an existing lawful water use; is permissible under a general authorisation issued under section 39 of the NWA, or if a responsible authority waives the need for a license.

WSP undertook a detailed analysis of the possible water uses the Proposed Project activities would trigger and such are noted in **Table 5**, thus a WUL is required.

**Table 5: Applicable Water Uses in terms of the section 21 of the NWA**

Legislation and Notice Number	Activity description	Relevance to the Project
<b>NWA, Chapter 4: 21 (a)</b>	Taking water from a water resources.	Underground water will be pumped from the shaft to allow for safe working conditions.
<b>NWA, Chapter 4: 21 (c)</b>	Impeding or diverting the flow of water in a watercourse.	The waste rock dump and retention pond associated with the plant area is expected to lie within 100m of a watercourse; hence, appropriate authorisation will need to be sought.
<b>NWA, Chapter 4: 21 (g)</b>	Disposing of waste in a manner which may detrimentally impact on a water resource.	The construction of runoff water dam(s), retention dam(s), WRDs, and additional water and waste management

		infrastructure.
<b>NWA, Chapter 4: 21 (i)</b>	Altering the bed, banks, course or characteristics of a watercourse.	The waste rock dump and retention pond associated with the plant area is expected to lie within 100m of a watercourse; hence, appropriate authorisation will need to be sought.
<b>NWA, Chapter 4: 21 (j)</b>	Removing, discharging or disposing of water found underground if it is necessary for the efficient continuation of an activity or for the safety of people.	Pumping of water from the shaft for the safe continuation of the mining activity.

## 2.5 National Environmental Management Biodiversity Act (No. 10 of 2004)

The National Environmental Management Biodiversity Act (No. 10 of 2004) (NEM:BA), in line with the Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD), aims to legally provide for biodiversity conservation, sustainable use and equitable access and benefit sharing. The NEM:BA creates a basic legal framework for the formation of a national biodiversity strategy and action plan and the identification of biodiversity hotspots and bio-regions which will then be given legal recognition. The NEM:BA imposes obligations on landowners (state or private) governing alien invasive species as well as regulating the introduction of genetically modified organisms.

The NEM:BA ensures that provision is made by the Mine to remove any aliens which have been introduced to the site or are present on the site. Furthermore, the NEM:BA serves to regulate bio-prospecting, making provision for communities to share the profits of any exploitation of natural materials involving indigenous knowledge. The South African National Biodiversity Institute (SANBI) was established to enforce the objectives as set out in the NEM:BA. The Proposed Project will need to consider the NEM:BA.

## 2.6 National Environmental Management Air Quality Act (No. 39 of 2004)

The National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act (No. 39 of 2004) (NEM:AQA) allows for national, provincial and local air quality standards to be established as well as the declaration of priority areas. In addition the NEM:AQA requires that Air Quality Management Plans (AQMP) form part of the environmental implementation plan or environmental management plans to be prepared by national departments or the province as required by Chapter 3 of the NEMA. Furthermore the NEM:AQA requires municipalities to include an AQMP into its integrated development plan (IDP).

Key features of the NEM:AQA include:

- A decentralisation of air quality management responsibilities;
- The identification and quantification of significant emission sources that then need to be addressed;
- The development of ambient air quality targets as goals for driving emission reductions;
- The use of source-based (command-and-control) measures in addition to alternative measures, including market incentives and disincentives, voluntary programmes, and education and awareness;
- The promotion of cost-optimised mitigation and management measures;
- Air quality management planning by authorities, and emission reduction and management planning by sources; and

- Access to information and public consultation.
- The overall objectives of the NEM: AQA include the following:
- The protection of the environment by providing reasonable measures for the protection of the quality of the air in the country;
- Protection of the environment by the prevention of air pollution and ecological degradation;
- Protecting the environment by securing ecologically sustainable development while promoting justifiable economic and social development; and
- To give effect to the constitution in order to enhance the quality of ambient air in order to secure an environment that is not harmful to the health and well-being of the people of South Africa.

The NEM:AQA requires the Minister of the DEA to publish a list of activities which results in atmospheric emissions which may have a detrimental effect on the environment, including health, social conditions, economic conditions, ecological conditions, ecological conditions or cultural heritage. The NEM:AQA requires that an Atmospheric Emissions Licence (AEL) be obtained for such listed activities. Such a list of activities was published in GNR 248 (31 March 2010). Following a detailed analysis of the Proposed Project, WSP concluded that no activities contained in GNR 248 will be triggered.

## 2.7 National Environmental Management Waste Act (No. 59 of 2008)

The National Environmental Management: Waste Act (No. 59 of 2008 (NEM:WA) serves to reform the law regulating waste management in order to protect human health and the environment. This is managed by providing reasonable measures for the prevention of pollution and ecological degradation. The NEM:WA aims to secure ecologically sustainable development while promoting justifiable economic and social development. The NEM:WA provides national norms and standards for regulating the management of waste by all spheres of government, for specific waste management measures and for matters incidental thereto.

In terms of the NEM:WA the Minister of the DEA may publish a list of waste management activities that have, or are likely to have, a detrimental effect on the environment. Furthermore, the NEM:WA prohibits any person to commence, undertake or conduct a waste management activity except in accordance with the requirements or standards determined in terms of the NEM:WA for that activity or where a waste management licence (WML) has been issued in respect of that activity.

A list of waste management activities that require a WML was published in GNR 718 (3 July 2009). GNR 718 provide Category A activities, which require a BA process in terms of the EIA Regulations to be undertaken, and Category B activities, which require a S&EIR process in terms of the EIA Regulations to be undertaken.

Following a detailed analysis of the Proposed Project, WSP concluded that no Proposed Project activities will trigger listed activities contained in GNR 718.

## 2.8 National Heritage Resources Act (No. 25 of 1999)

The National Heritage Resources Act (No. 25 of 1999) (NHRA) aims to protect heritage resources of national significance. The South African Heritage Resources Agency (SAHRA) was thus established in 1999 to fulfil the objectives of the NHRA. In terms of section 38 of the NHRA a heritage impact assessment (HIA) is required for any development or other activity which will change the character of the site:

- Exceeding 5 000m<sup>2</sup> in extent;
- Involving three or more existing erven or subdivisions thereof;
- Involving three or more erven or divisions thereof which have been consolidated within the past five years;
- The costs of which will exceed a sum set in terms of regulations by the SAHRA or a provincial heritage resource authority;
- The re-zoning of a site exceeding 10 000m<sup>2</sup> in extent; or

- Any other category of development provided for in regulations by the SAHRA is a provincial heritage resource agency, must at the very earliest stages of initiating such a development, notify the responsible heritage resources authority and furnish it with details regarding the location, nature and extent of the proposed development.

WSP identified the activities contained in **Table 6** as potential activities that may trigger, thus HIA is required.

**Table 6: Applicable Activities in terms of section 38 of the NHRA**

Section of the NHRA	Activity	Relevance	Applicable
<b>Section 34 (1)</b>	States that no person may demolish any structure or part thereof which is older than 60 years without a permit issued by the relevant provincial heritage resources authority.	WSP does not foresee the discovery of any buildings within the Proposed Project area as the site was inspected by the project team prior to the selection of the site for the purpose of a shaft.	The potential applicability of this activity is to be verified by the heritage impact consultant.
<b>Section 35 (4)</b>	The act states that no person may, without a permit issued by the responsible heritage resources authority (national or provincial) destroy, damage, excavate, alter, deface or otherwise disturb any archaeological or paleontological site or any meteorite.	WSP does not foresee the discovery or disturbance of any archaeological, paleontological site or any meteorite within the Proposed Project area as the site was inspected by the project team prior to the selection of the site for the purpose of a shaft	The potential applicability of this activity is to be verified by the heritage impact consultant.
<b>Section 36 (1a)</b>	Where it is not the responsibility of any other authority, SAHRA must conserve and generally care for burial grounds and graves protected in terms of this section, and it may make such arrangements for their conservation as it sees fit.	WSP does not foresee the discovery of any Graves or middens on the proposed construction site.	The potential applicability of this activity is to be verified by the heritage impact consultant.
<b>Section 38 (1a)</b>	The construction of a bridge or similar structure exceeding 50 m in length	The proposed Project includes the construction of a conveyor belt over a road, rail, and a power line. The conveyor belt will exceed the stipulated 50m threshold thus triggering the NHRA activity.	The potential applicability of this activity is to be verified by the heritage impact consultant.



---

## 3 Process to be Followed

The S&EIR process will be undertaken in accordance with the EIA Regulations and MPRDA Regulations. The process can be summarised as follows:

- A comprehensive public participation process is to be undertaken;
- A Scoping report is to be compiled including all relevant information according to NEMA Regulations and the MPRDA Regulations;
- An Environmental Impact Assessment Report (EIAR) is to be compiled detailing the impacts associated with the Proposed Project;
- Specialist studies are undertaken using the agreed upon impacts rating methodology. The studies are to focus on spheres of the environment which have been noted as vulnerable during the Scoping phase; and
- An EMPR is compiled in response to the impacts identified and rated within the EIAR.

### 3.1 Public Participation Initiation Phase

During this phase public participation activities commence. This includes the compilation of necessary background information documents (BIDs), advertisements, site notices, and notification letters. During this phase the registered interested and affected parties' (I&APs) (stakeholders) details will be captured into a stakeholder database and the comments raised captured in a issues trail document.

### 3.2 Scoping Phase

Scoping is the process for determining issues and concerns related to the Proposed project and involves consultation with the stakeholders and authorities. In addition, the Scoping Phase includes the identification of required specialist studies and potential environmental aspects for further investigation. The Scoping Phase outlines the plan for the EIR Phase and facilitates the input from stakeholders and authorities to inform the EIR process. In addition, the Scoping Report will:

- Include details of the EAP responsible for preparing the report and the expertise of the EAP to carry out the Scoping procedures.
- Identify all legislation and guidelines that have been considered in the preparation of the Scoping Report.
- Describe the existing and proposed activities and reasonable alternatives, including the advantages and disadvantages of the alternatives.
- Describe the property on which the activities are to take place.
- Describe the need and desirability of the activities.
- Describe the environment (at a screening level) that may be affected by the activities and the manner in which the physical, biological, social, economic and cultural aspects of the environment may be affected by the activities.
- Describe the environmental issues and potential impacts, including cumulative impacts that have been identified.
- Indicate the methodology that will be adopted in assessing the potential impacts that have been identified, including any specialist studies or specialised processes that will be undertaken.
- Detail the public participation initiation phase for the S&EIR process.
- Include a plan of study for the EIR which sets out the proposed approach to the EIR Phase.

---

### 3.2.1 Stakeholder review prior to submission

The Draft Scoping Report was made available to stakeholders and authorities for review, prior to finalisation and submission of the final report for review by the delegated lead authorities. All stakeholders and authorities were allocated over 40 days to review the Draft Scoping Report before the Final Scoping Report (incorporating comments received during the review period) is submitted to the delegated lead authorities for review.

### 3.2.2 Submission and decision-making

The delegated lead authorities will be allocated 30 days to review the Final Scoping Report. If the delegated lead authorities within 30 days do not accept or reject the report, they will receive an additional 60 days to evaluate the Scoping Report and issue a decision to proceed onto the next phase, that being the EIR phase.

## 3.3 Environmental Impact Reporting Phase

The EIAR will include:

- Details of the EAP who prepared the report and the expertise of the EAP to carry out the S&EIR process.
- A detailed description of the existing and proposed activities.
- A description and a map of the property on which the activities are undertaken and the location of the activities on the property.
- A description of the environment that may be affected by the activities and the manner in which the geographical, physical, biological, social, economic and cultural aspects of the environment may be affected by such.
- Details of the public participation process conducted, including:
  - Steps undertaken in accordance with the plan of study;
  - Lists of persons, organisations and organs of state that were registered as I&APs (stakeholders);
  - A summary of comments received, issues raised by stakeholders, the date of receipt of these comments and the response of the EAP to those comments; and
  - Copies of any representation and comments received from stakeholders.
- A description of the need and desirability of the activities.
- A description of any identified alternatives that are feasible and reasonable, including the advantages and disadvantages that the activities or alternatives will have on the environment and on the community that may be affected by the activities.
- A summary of the methodology used in determining the significance of potential impacts.
- A description and comparative assessment of all alternatives identified during the S&EIR process.
- A summary of the findings of the specialist studies.
- A description of all environmental issues that were identified during the S&EIR process, and assessment of significance of each issue and an indication of the extent to which the issue could be addressed by the adoption of mitigation measures.
- A description and assessment of the significance of any environmental impacts, including:
  - Cumulative impacts that may occur as a result of the undertaking of the activities or identified alternatives or as a result of any construction, erection or decommissioning associated with the undertaking of the activities;
  - The nature of the impact;
  - The extent and duration of the impact;
  - The probability of the impact occurring;

- The degree to which the impact can be reversed;
  - The degree to which the impact may cause irreplaceable loss of resources; and
  - The degree to which the impact can be mitigated.
- A description of any assumptions, uncertainties and gaps in knowledge.
  - A reasoned opinion as to whether the activities should or should not be authorised, and if the opinion is that it should be authorised, any conditions that should be made in respect of that authorisation.
  - An environmental impact statement containing the key findings and a comparative assessment of the positive and negative implications of the activities.
  - A Draft EMPR as detailed in **Section 3.3.2**.
  - Copies of all specialist reports.
  - Any specific information required by the competent authority and any other matters required in terms of section 24(4)(a) and (b) of the NEMA.

### 3.3.1 Specialist Studies

The following specialist studies have been identified for the Proposed Project, for details refer to **Section 9.2.2.3**:

- Air Quality Impact Assessment;
- Noise Impact Assessment;
- Hydrological Assessment;
- Heritage Impact Assessment;
- Blasting Impact Assessment;
- Visual Impact Assessment;
- Traffic Impact Assessment; and
- Social Impact Assessment.

All specialist study reports will be included into the Draft EIR/EMPR report and signed to authenticate the information contained therein.

### 3.3.2 Environmental Management Programme Report

The EMPR will incorporate the requirements of the MPRDA and NEMA, as detailed below.

#### 3.3.2.1 Minerals and Petroleum Resources Development Act (No. 28 of 2002)

Section 52 of the MPRDA Regulations sets out the content requirements for an EMPR as follows:

Description of the environment likely to be affected by the proposed exploration operation;

- Assessment of the potential impacts of the proposed exploration operation on the environment, socio-economic conditions and cultural heritage, if any;
- Summary of the assessment of the significance of the potential impacts and the proposed mitigation and management measures to minimise adverse impacts and benefits;
- Financial provision which must include the determination of the quantum of the financial provision contemplated in regulation 54 and details of the method providing for the financial provision contemplated in regulation 53;
- Planned monitoring and performance assessment of the EMPR;

- 
- Closure and environmental objectives;
  - Record of the public participation undertaken and the results thereof; and
  - Undertaking by the applicant regarding the execution of the EMPr.

### **3.3.2.2 National Environmental Management Act (No. 107 of 1998)**

The Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) contemplated in regulation 33 of the EIA Regulations will contain the following information:

- Information on any proposed management or mitigation measures that will be taken to address the environmental impacts that have been identified in a report contemplated by the EIA Regulations, including environmental impacts or objectives in respect of:
  - Planning and design;
  - Pre-construction and construction activities;
  - Operation or undertaking of the activities;
  - Rehabilitation of the environment; and
  - Closure, where relevant.
- A detailed description of the aspects of the activities that are covered by the Draft EMPr.
- An identification of the persons who will be responsible for the implementation of the measures.
- Proposed mechanisms for monitoring compliance with and performance assessment against the EMPr and reporting thereon.
- As far as is reasonably practicable, measures to rehabilitate the environment affected by the undertaking of any listed activity or specified activity to its natural or predetermined state or to a land use which conforms to the generally accepted principle of sustainable development, including, where appropriate, concurrent or progressive rehabilitation measures.
- A description of the manner in which it intends to:
  - Modify, remedy, control or stop any action, activity or process which causes pollution or environmental degradation;
  - Remedy the cause of pollution or degradation and migration of pollutants;
  - Comply with any applicable provisions of the NEMA regarding closure, where applicable; and
  - Comply with any provisions of the NEMA regarding financial provisions for rehabilitation, where applicable.
- Time periods within which the measures contemplated in the EMPr must be implemented.
- The process for managing any environmental damage, pollution, pumping and treatment of extraneous water or ecological degradation as a result of undertaking a listed activity.
- An environmental awareness plan describing the manner in which:
  - The Proponent intends to inform his or her employees of any environmental risk which may result from their work; and
  - Risks must be dealt with in order to avoid pollution or the degradation of the environment.
- Where appropriate, closure plans, including closure objectives.

### **3.3.3 Stakeholder Review prior to Submission**

The Draft EIAR will be made available to stakeholders and authorities for review, prior to finalisation and submission of the report to authorities for review by the delegated lead authorities. All stakeholders and

---

authorities will be allocated 40 days to review the Draft EIAR before the Final Report is submitted to the delegated lead authorities for review.

### 3.3.4 Submission and Decision-making

#### 3.3.4.1 Minerals and Petroleum Resources Development Act (No. 28 of 2002)

The Limpopo DMR are to respond to the applicant with a decision on the Final EIAR within 120 days of the submission date.

#### 3.3.4.2 National Environmental Management Act (No. 107 of 1998)

Once the Final EIAR (including comments received by stakeholders) has been submitted the LEDET are allocated 60 days to review the report in which time they may:

- Accept the EIAR;
- Notify the Proponent that the EIAR has been referred for specialist review;
- Request the Proponent to make such amendments to the EIAR as the delegated authority may require for acceptance thereof; or
- Reject the EIAR if it does not comply with the content requirements.

Within 45 days of accepting the EIAR, or within 45 days of receipt of the specialist review, or within 30 days of the lapsing of the 60 days extension, that may be requested by the delegated lead authorities, the delegated lead authorities must:

- Grant authorisation in respect of all or part of the activities; or
- Refuse the authorisation in respect of all or part of the activities.

Once the EA has been received, typically within two days of the authorisation being granted or refused, the stakeholders will be notified and the appeal process followed.

### 3.3.5 Water Use Licence Application Process

Following the approval of the Final Scoping Report, the Draft EIAR and the Draft WULA will be submitted for comment to the I&APs. Such comments will be included in the Final EIAR and Final WULA, which will be submitted to the delegated lead authorities for decision making.

## 4 Project Description

### 4.1 Activity to be undertaken

#### 4.1.1 Background to the Proposed Project

The Tumela Mine comprises; 1 Shaft and includes a series of small inclined and shallow raise bored shafts. Mining of the ore bodies on the shallower infrastructure will be depleted within the next five years. As such additional hoisting capacity from depths exceeding 800m below surface is required. A number of projects have been proposed in order to supplement the depleting available ore resource at Tumela Mine. The various projects are potential projects which may be implemented at a later stage in the life of mine however are not confirmed at this stage. The Tumela Central Shaft Project (this project) is in a pre-feasibility design phase and is currently under internal review and approval by AAP management. The Tumela Central Shaft Project is detailed in **Table 7** (AAP Draft Prefeasibility Study, 2013).

**Table 7: Projects proposed for Tumela Mine (AAP Draft Prefeasibility Study, 2013)**

Project	Study Phase	Anticipated Construction	Anticipated Production
Central Shaft – new surface shaft infrastructure	Prefeasibility Study	2014	2019

#### 4.1.2 Scope of Work for the Proposed Project

The Proposed Project involves the sinking, installation and construction of an additional vertical shaft and associated infrastructure. The infrastructure will be designed for a capacity of 250ktpm however only 125ktpm will be handled during the first eight years of operation. The surface infrastructure of the Central Shaft will consist of an individual vertical shaft infrastructure, comprising the following:

##### 4.1.2.1 Main Shaft Headgear

The shaft headgear will be constructed from steel and raise approximately 52m from the surface. The headgear will be developed according to the A-frame box type construction design.

##### 4.1.2.2 Downcast Shaft

- A single downcast shaft with a diameter of 7.5m to 8.5m to house the following conveyances:
  - Double drum rock hoist (5.5m drum diameter winder, 5 megawatt (MW) alternating current winder) with 60mm rope and 20t skips;
  - Double drum personnel/material and counterweight cage (4.88m drum diameter, 3MW winder);
  - Service/Mary-Anne cage (3.66m diameter, 2MW alternating current (AC) winder);
  - Pumped pipeline columns for water (3 x 300 nominal bore (NB) and compressed air (500NB);
  - Shaft cables (6 x 185mm high tensile (HT) cables); and
  - Backfill columns (30 x 60NB ranges).
- Single-sided stations from 11 to 16 level, excluding 12 and 13 level;
- Pump chamber at 15 level, loading area at 16 level and shaft bottom at 17 level or at a suitable distance from the loading area;

- 
- Adequate room for spillage at the shaft bottom for both water and rock handling;
  - Water and mud handling facilities to suit the production; and
  - Three ore passes from 11 to 16 level required, each to handle ore as well as waste generated underground (sufficient size to accommodate 70% of a levels expected daily production).

#### **4.1.2.3 Ventilation Shaft**

A single up-cast 2MW ventilation shaft with a diameter of 5m will be provided.

#### **4.1.2.4 Ore Stockpiles**

Two ore stockpiles are envisaged namely: Ore stockpile and Waste Rock Stockpile.

#### **4.1.2.5 Supporting Infrastructure**

The construction of supporting infrastructure is envisaged, not limited to but including: explosives shed; timber yard; winder house; change house, lamp house; salvage yard; workshops and offices.

#### **4.1.2.6 Services**

##### Water

Water will be sourced from existing Tumela Mine water reticulation network.

##### Sewerage

Effluent that is generated from the ablution facilities will be fed into the existing Tumela Mine sewage reticulation network.

##### Electricity

A formal request has been made to Eskom for the construction of a new substation, feeding from the existing 132 kilovolts (kV) overhead power lines. Investigations are being undertaken to identify if existing infrastructure can be utilised to supply the Proposed Project's demand.

In the event of a failure of the main power distribution network, emergency power will be derived from two 4.6MW, 11kV diesel generators. The diesel generators will be linked to the main 11kV backbone at the Main Consumer Substation through suitable mechanically and electrically interlocked circuit breakers (via the Tumela Mine network).

##### Waste Management

The existing contracting company (WasteTech) will manage, transport and discard all domestic and industrial waste that is generated.

##### Storm Water Management

Water dams will cater for the storage of storm water runoff emanating from the Proposed Project mining area. The water collected in the dams will be reused where practical and feasible.

#### **4.1.2.7 Servitudes**

With Shaft Position 2 being selected (section 4.2.1) existing servitudes will be utilised and integrated.

#### **4.1.2.8 Security**

Security fencing, 1.8m high, will be erected around the Proposed Project shaft area. Access to this area will be through a single access control point situated near the offices. This will comprise of a double gate (for large



---

vehicles entering the mine) and a security complex (for all personnel entering through turnstiles). The security building will include a private search room.

Please see **Appendix B** for the draft project infrastructure layout.

## 4.2 Alternatives Considered

The EIA Regulations state that information on reasonable alternatives should be given during the Scoping Phase. The following alternatives have been considered and are discussed in more detail below:

- Shaft location alternatives; and
- No-go alternative.

### 4.2.1 Proposed Project: Shaft Location Alternatives

#### 4.2.1.1 Shaft Position Considerations

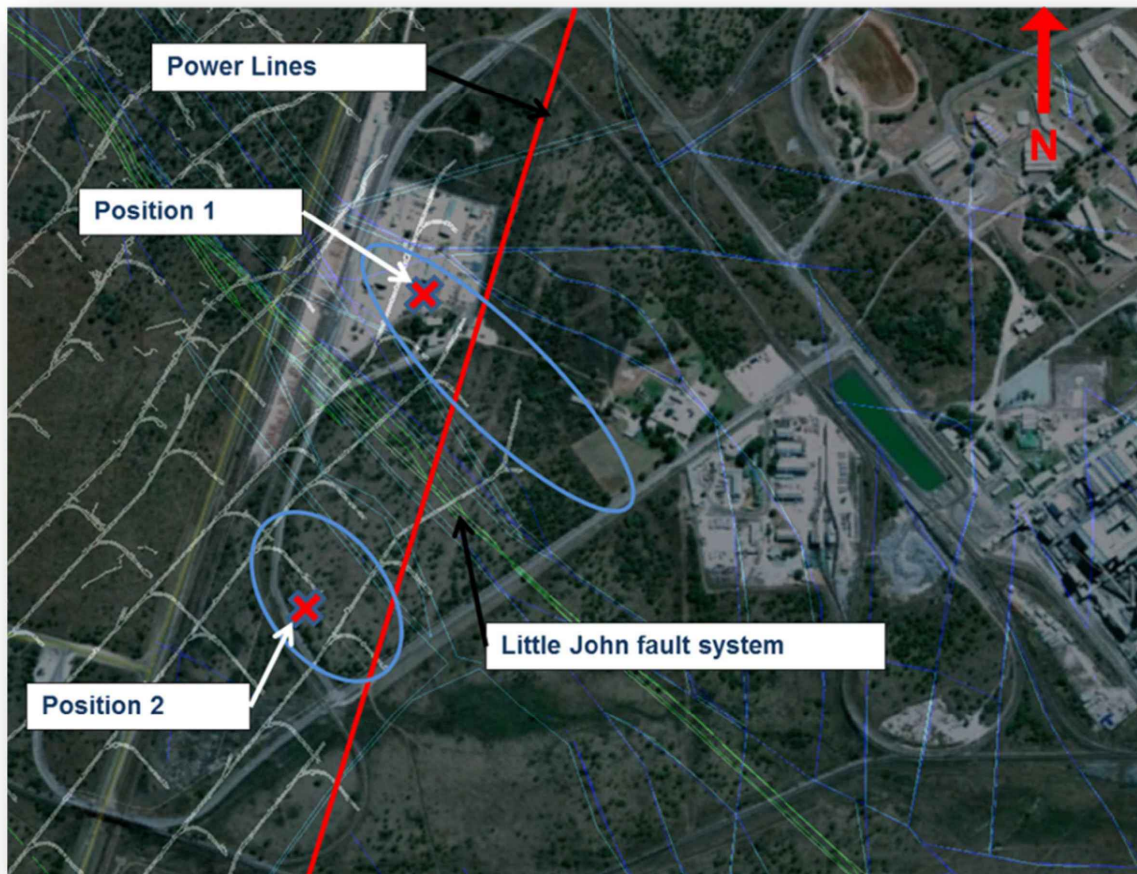
The following key considerations that influenced the positioning of the shaft were:

1. Access for under stoping the shaft pillar.
  - Two geotechnical design options existed for protection and stability of the vertical shaft:
    - Leaving a shaft pillar; and
    - Undermining the shaft and placing backfill with satellite pillars in place.

The Technical Project Team opted for the latter option comprising undermining and backfilling in order to minimise losses due to the shaft pillar requirements.
2. Distance from existing excavations to the shaft position to establish timely bottom access for raise boring.
  - The further the shaft is placed from existing infrastructure, the longer it will take to establish bottom access. This could potentially delay the extraction of ore and impact on the timing of production.
3. Geological Structures.
  - The shaft should be placed in a geotechnical stable zone to ensure the long term stability of the shaft and infrastructure.
4. Surface infrastructure and environmental considerations.
  - The shaft should be placed close to existing surface infrastructure to minimise capital expenditure to establish surface infrastructure, without requiring alterations to current surface infrastructure; and
  - The shaft should be outside wetlands, flood lines and other environmentally sensitive areas.
5. The Proposed Project should be in operation by 2019.
  - In order to maintain the required production profile the Proposed Project must be in operation by 2019. (Anglo American Platinum: Project Charter, 2012).

#### 4.2.1.2 Alternative Shaft Positions

Plans for the surface infrastructure, geology and existing underground excavations were overlain to take the first four of the factors listed above into consideration. Two possible positions for the shaft were identified as indicated in **Figure 5** (Anglo American Platinum: Shaft Surface Position, 2013).



**Figure 5: Alternative Shaft Positions (Anglo American Platinum: Shaft Surface Position, 2013)**

Position 1: East of Little John Fault System

At this position both 11 level and 12 level would be developed through the Little John fault and dyke and the shaft pillar could be removed. This option requires 1 641m of development to reach the shaft position on 15 level and would have the added difficulty of traversing the Little John fault and dyke system. The area at Position 1 underground has less available geotechnical information than for Position 2, increasing the geotechnical risk for this option. The surface position of this shaft option would be within the existing timber and store yard. This would necessitate the construction of a new timber and store yard and the demolishing of the current resulting in additional capital cost. A high level project schedule for this option indicated that the Proposed Project would be delayed by a year. It is a critical project requirement to start production during 2019 therefore this option is flawed (Anglo American Platinum: Shaft Surface Position, 2013).

Position 2: West of Little John Fault and Dyke System

At this position both 12 level and 13 level has been developed and is in place to extract the shaft pillar. The raise line has also been developed and holed between the two levels. Therefore the shaft pillar extraction could start immediately, if required. This option requires 800m of development to reach the shaft position on 15 level. The underground access haulage on 15 level also does not require the traversing of the Little John fault and dyke system. Additional geotechnical information is available for the area Position 2, however a geotechnical hole to confirm the ground conditions at this position is planned. The surface position of this shaft is close to the rail loop that leads to the Concentrator and an access road, but outside the power line servitude. A high level project schedule for this option indicated that the Proposed Project would add to production during November 2019. This position meets all the requirements as set out in the considerations section (Anglo American Platinum: Shaft Surface Position, 2013).

---

### 4.3 No-go Alternative

Should the Proposed Project not proceed the current declining production profile will lead to a reduction in cash margins in the medium to long term making it unsustainable to maintain the current level of operation, the result of which includes the potential loss in employment and a decrease in the overall contribution to the local economy.

---

## 5 Motivation for the Proposed Project

### 5.1 Benefits of the Project

The objectives of RPM – Amandelbult Section are to:

- Create a sustainable mine, maintaining and subsequently increasing production levels;
- Apply an improved mine design criteria in order to realise the benefit of closely spaced ore bodies;
- Rationalise shaft infrastructures and half levels whilst increasing production;
- Create short term projects which will ensure long term sustainability;
- Implement a holistic mine extraction strategy approach, inclusive of both Tumela and Dishaba Mines, ensuring optimal extraction of the resource; and
- Ensuring the Concentrator runs at full capacity in the medium to long term. (Final Mine Extraction Strategy, 2013).

#### 5.1.1 Maintain Production Levels

It has been estimated that currently accessible ore bodies at the Tumela Mine will be depleted within the next five years (AAP Draft Prefeasibility Study, 2013). In response to the unsustainable production profile, team members from AAP and the Technical Business Coordination Group (TBCG) developed a Mine Extraction Strategy, which is illustrated in **Figure 6**, for the RPM – Amandelbult Section to optimise the concentrating capacity in the medium to long term.

The current tonnage profile is represented in **Figure 7** and indicates a depletion rate in production. The objective of the Proposed Project is to replace the tonnages in order to maintain the current level of production at above 4Mta at the Tumela Mine (AAP Draft Prefeasibility Study, 2013). The potential of the Proposed Project to supplement the production profile is represented in **Figure 8**.

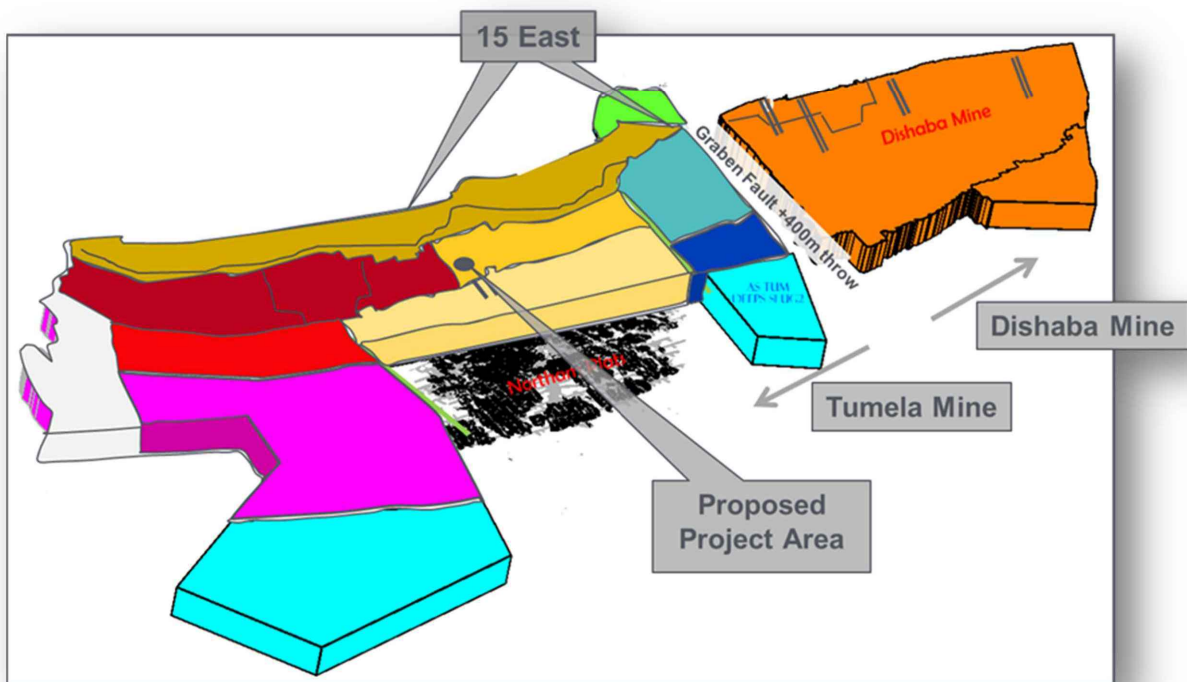


Figure 6: Graphical display of the mining blocks constituting the Mine Extraction Strategy (AAP Draft Prefeasibility Study, 2013)

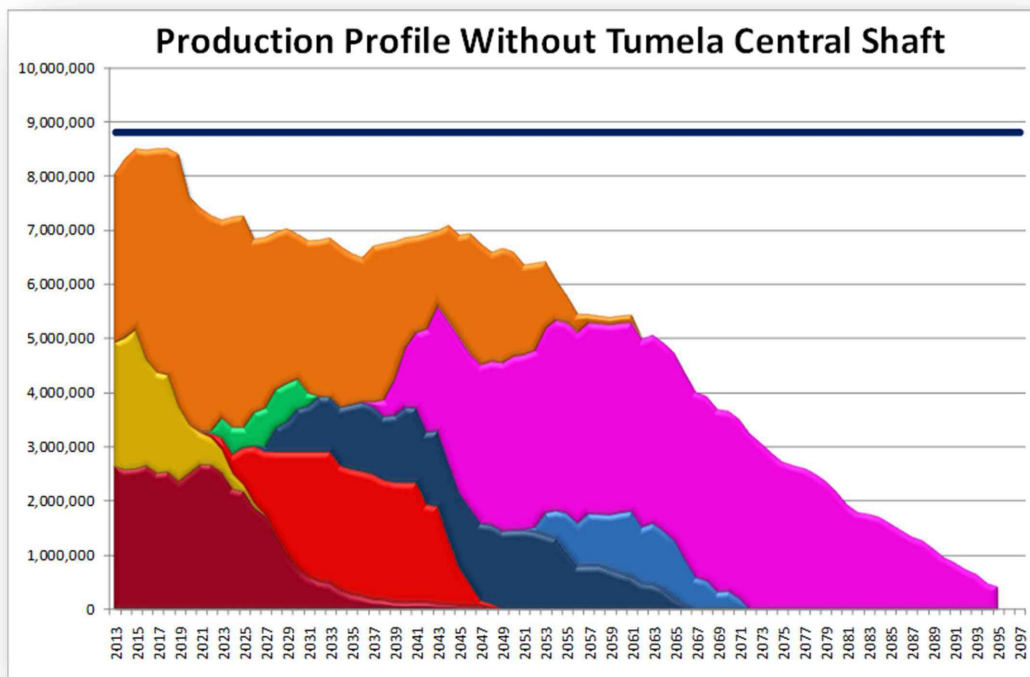
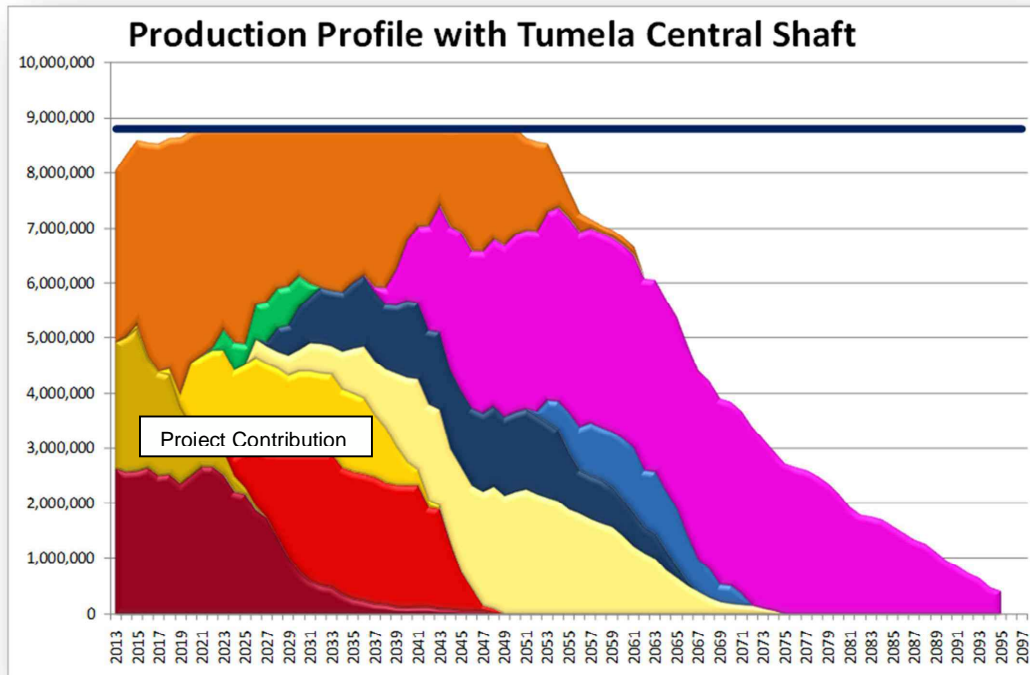


Figure 7: Current Amandelbult Section production profile (AAP Draft Prefeasibility Study, 2013)



**Figure 8: Proposed Tumela Mine Production Profile (AAP Draft Prefeasibility Study, 2013)**

### 5.1.2 Maintain Mine Profitability

The proposed mine design changes are expected to result in an increase in half level volumes, improved margins and a reduction in capital and operational expenditure. Currently, only the Proposed Project configuration meets the criteria required to ensure continued profitability at the RPM – Amandelbult Section (AAP Draft Prefeasibility Study, 2013).

### 5.1.3 The Community and Local Economy

The Proposed Project, if approved, will provide:

- Surety in terms of existing employment opportunities;
- Potential employment and procurement opportunities (for individuals as well as small businesses, predominantly during the construction phase); and
- Access to previously unreachable resources that would ultimately increase the life of the RPM – Amandelbult Section operations.



---

## 6 Baseline Environment

### 6.1 Geology

#### 6.1.1 Data Collection

Information contained within this section was obtained from the following information sources:

- Anglo Platinum Limited - Amandelbult Section - Merensky Project - Volume 1: Draft Environmental Impact Assessment (12 February 2007) (Bekker, T., 2007);
- Limpopo State of the Environment Report (Phase 1) (Africon & Environomics Joint Venture, 2004);
- Waterberg District Municipality: 2011/12 Integrated Development Plan (Waterberg District Municipality, 2011);
- Dishaba Mine Backfill Project: Draft Integrated Waste and Water Management Plan Amendment (Shippon, J, *et al.*, 2012); and
- Dishaba Mine Backfill Project: Draft Environmental Impact Assessment and Environmental Management Programme (Shippon, J, *et al.*, 2012).

#### 6.1.2 Regional Description

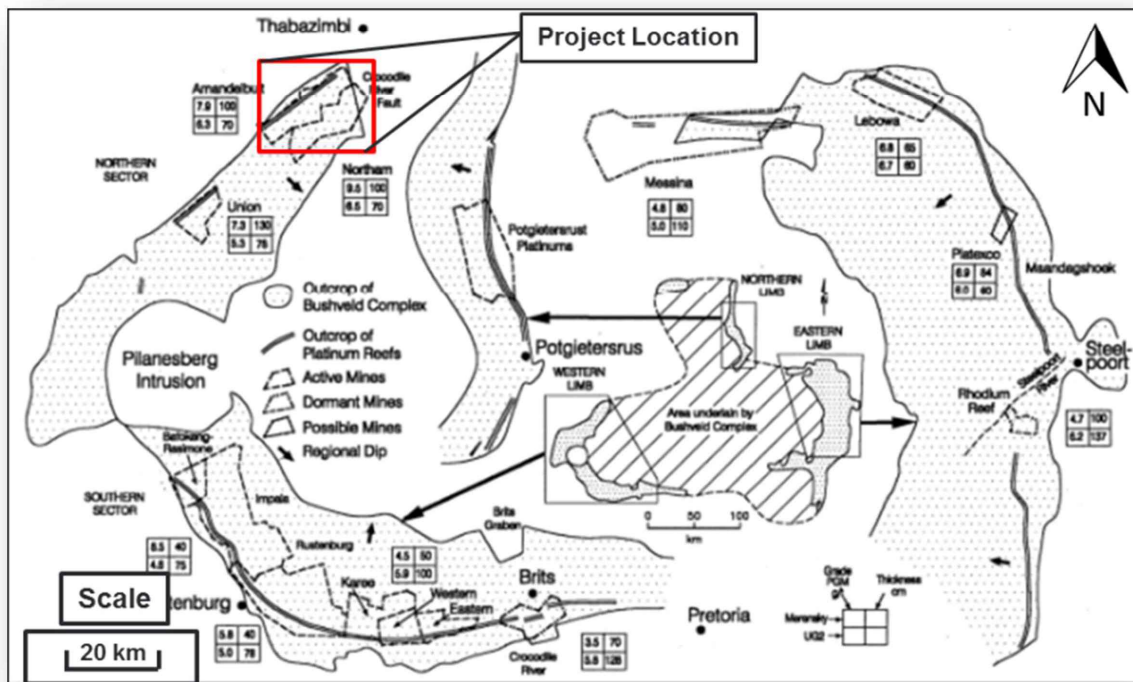
The simplified geology of the Waterberg District can be classified into five distinct geology types, namely the Transvaal Super Group, Karoo Super Group, Waterberg Group, BIC, and the Archaean Granite/Gneiss and Swazian Complex. The Karoo Super Group contains coal deposits while BIC harbours important sources of platinum and chromium. The Waterberg Group contains no minerals of economic value. The Transvaal Super Group has iron ore deposits. The lithology of the area shows that there are 26 dominant rock types occurring in the Waterberg District.

#### 6.1.3 Site Description

The Tumela Mine is situated in the north-western sector of the BIC (**Figure 9**). The BIC is a world-class repository for a number of ore bodies yielding a range of mineral commodities that include chrome, vanadium, titaniferous magnetite and Platinum Group Elements (PGE). The BIC is extensive in size, stretching approximately 350km east to west and 250km north to south. It is roughly saucer-shaped with the edges dipping inwards towards the centre. At the rim of the 'saucer', pyroxenites, norites, gabbros and chromitites are found inter-layered in a variety of combinations. Unique to the BIC is the presence of two stratiform deposits, known as the Merensky Reef and the UG2 Reef, that can be traced for hundreds of kilometres along the rim that contain economically exploitable quantities of PGMs.

The geology of the project study area is mainly made up of gabbro, norite and pyroxenite rocks of the BIC. The two platinum bearing ore bodies currently being exploited by Tumela Mine are the Merensky Reef and the UG2 Chromitite. The majority of the surface exposures are covered by either weathered norites or black turf. The ore bodies dip towards the south-east. The dip of the ore bodies varies between 18° towards the south-west of the property to 22° towards the north-east.





**Figure 9: Proposed Project Location in Relation to the Bushveld Igneous Complex**

Tumela Mine is situated in the north-western sector of the BIC (**Figure 9**). Faults of various sizes occur throughout the mine lease area, and include major north-west trending faults with associated throws of up to 500m. The oldest faults are commonly low angle reverse faults with fault planes dipping at between 15° and 30°. Generally the majority of faults are normal and steep with dips of between 70° and vertical. Strike set faults appear to be the youngest and have throws of up to 30m which hamper mining operations. Major and minor dykes are found throughout the mine lease area and are well delineated by airborne and ground magnetics and have been confirmed in underground excavations. The dykes have a north-west to south-east orientation and their thickness varies from centimetres up to approximately 50m. The depth of weathering is approximately 30m with the majority of the area covered by a black turf soil.

Regolith grades rapidly into fresh gabbro and norite of the BIC with weathering limited to fracture surface (**Figure 10**). Across the site and regional diabase intrusions strike in a predominantly north-westerly direction with several north-south trending shear and/or fault zones crossing the study area.

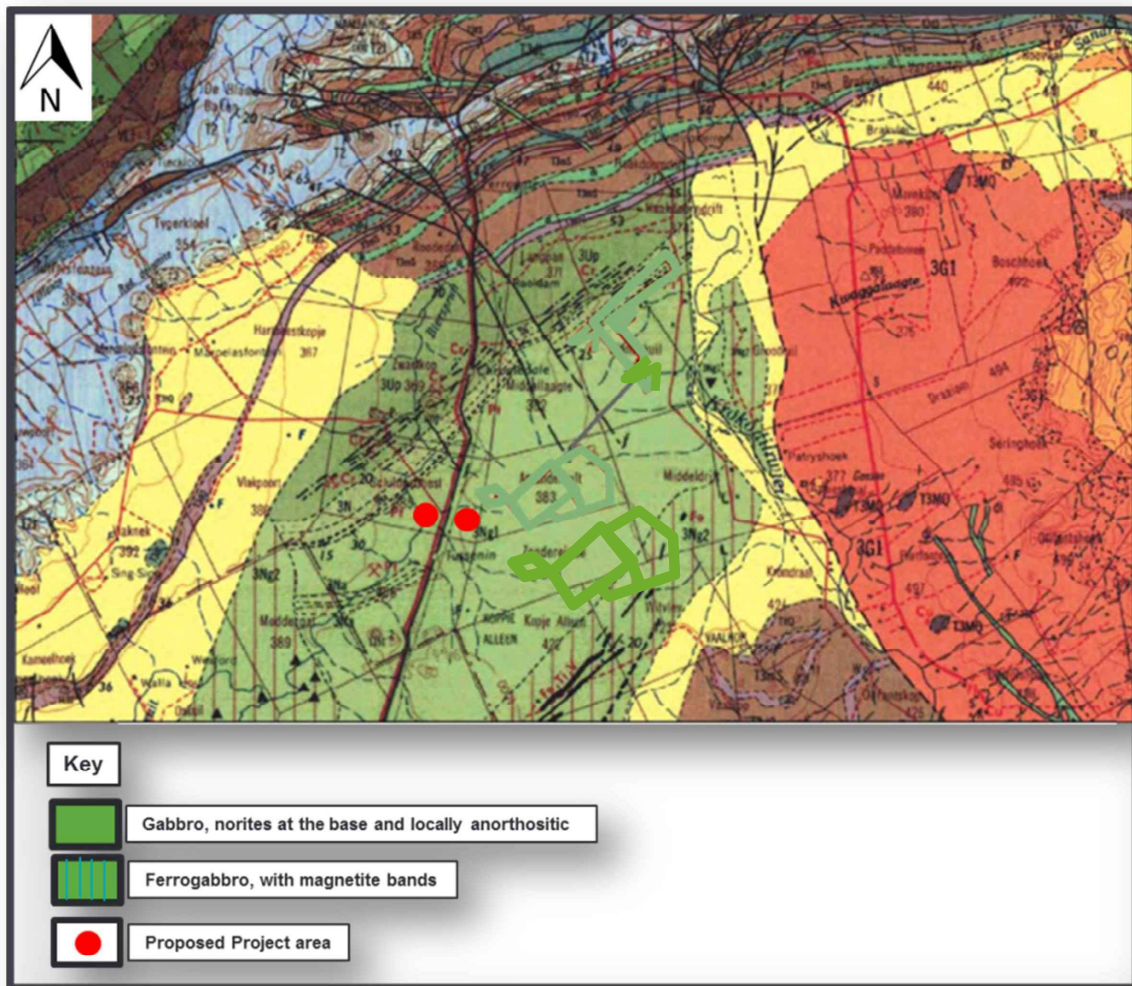


Figure 10: Geology of Tumela Mine (Shippon, *et al.* 2012).

## 6.2 Climate

### 6.2.1 Data Collection

Information contained within this section was obtained from the following information sources:

- Anglo Platinum Limited - Amandelbult Section - Merensky Project - Volume 1: Draft Environmental Impact Assessment (12 February 2007) (Bekker, T., 2007);
- Limpopo State of the Environment Report (Phase 1) (Africon & Environomics Joint Venture, 2004);
- Waterberg District Municipality: 2011/12 Integrated Development Plan (Waterberg District Municipality, 2011);
- The Rustenburg Platinum Mines: Amandelbult Section - Integrated Waste Water Management Plan (August 2011) (Postma, B., 2011); and
- Dishaba Mine Backfill Project: Draft Integrated Waste and Water Management Plan Amendment (Shippon, J, *et al.*, 2012).

## 6.2.2 Regional Description

The northern and western regions of the Waterberg District experience a hot and semi-arid climate. The southern and eastern regions are more humid and slightly cooler. The climate is semi-arid and hot in the Limpopo and Olifants River basins, but more humid and cooler on the Waterberg plateau and Soutpansberg.

### 6.2.2.1 Temperature

Temperatures in the Thabazimbi region are generally high in the summer months, while winter months are characterised by lower temperatures. The highest recorded temperature at Thabazimbi between 1983 and 2003 was 37.6°C in January and the lowest minimum recorded temperature was -0.1°C in July. Highest temperatures are experienced between October and March and the coolest temperatures are experienced during June and July. The average monthly minimum and maximum temperatures are depicted in **Table 8**. The average monthly temperatures for Thabazimni for the period 2003 to 2005 is depicted in **Figure 11**.

**Table 8: Temperature Data (W0587477, Northam and W0587725 Thabazimbi and WR 90) (Shippon, J, et al., 2012)**

Month	Mean Daily Temperature (°C)	Average Maximum Temperature (°C)	Average Minimum Temperature (°C)
January	25.2	31.8	18.6
February	24.3	30.7	17.9
March	23.1	30.0	16.2
April	19.5	27.3	11.6
May	15.4	25.3	5.5
June	12.0	22.1	1.9
July	12.5	22.5	2.4
August	15.7	25.4	6.0
September	20.0	28.4	11.6
October	22.7	29.8	15.7
November	23.9	30.6	17.1
December	24.3	30.5	18.2
<b>Total (Mean Annual)</b>	<b>19.9</b>	<b>27.9</b>	<b>11.9</b>

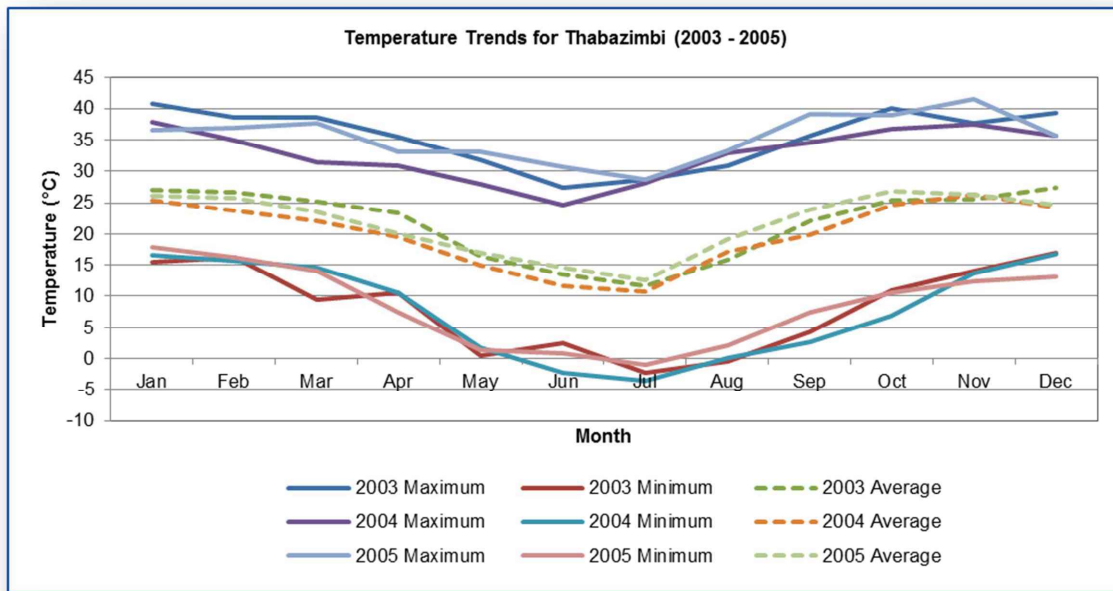


Figure 11: Monthly Temperatures for Thabazimbi for the period 2003 to 2005 (Keiser, 2013)

### 6.2.2.2 Evaporation

The mean S-pan evaporation at the RPM - Amandelbult Section is 1,800mm. The mean monthly S-pan values are shown in **Table 9**. Evaporation varies between:

- 204mm/month and 118mm/month between October and April when evaporation approximates 1,239mm; and
- 82mm/month and 200mm/month between April and October when evaporation approximates 880mm.

From the rainfall and evaporation data, it can be seen that the RPM - Amandelbult Section occurs within a water deficit climate where evaporation markedly exceeds rainfall.

Table 9: Evaporation data (W0587477, Northam and W0587725 Thabazimbi and WR 90) (Shippon, J, et al., 2012)

Month	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sep	Oct	Nov	Dec
S-Pan Evaporation (mm)	199.8	162.5	155	118.3	97.9	82.1	90.9	124.7	165.6	200.7	198.2	204.3

### 6.2.2.3 Rainfall

Rainfall in the region varies from 217mm to 570mm per annum. The months of November to March are characterised by the highest rainfall. Between the months of May and September, rainfall volume is generally low. Rain occurs mainly as thunderstorms and heavy showers. The mean annual evaporation at Thabazimbi is 2017mm, which exceeds the mean annual rainfall. Monthly rainfall recorded at the South African Weather Services (SAWS) Thabazimbi station from 2003 to 2005 is illustrated in **Figure 12**. It is important to note that the rainfall sensor at the SAWS Thabazimbi station was faulty from approximately August 2004, with very little rainfall being recorded from this date onwards.

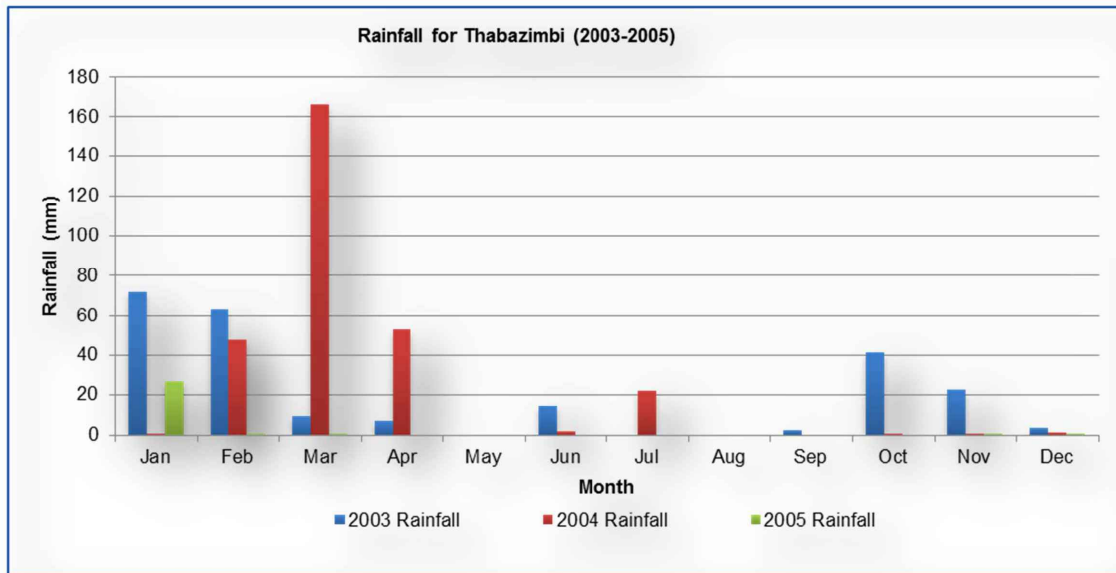


Figure 12: Monthly rainfall recorded at the Thabazimbi SAWS station (2003 to 2005) (Keiser. K., 2013)

#### 6.2.2.4 Wind

In the Thabazimbi area, winds predominantly originate from the north (13% of the time), south (11% of the time) and north-east (10% of the time), with smaller components experienced from the north-north-east and east-north-east (**Figure 13**). Wind speeds are slow to moderate with the strongest winds (up to 8m/s) experienced from a northerly, southerly and north-north-easterly direction. In **Figure 13**, the colour of the bar indicates the wind speed while the length of the bar represents the frequency of winds blowing from a certain direction (as a percentage).



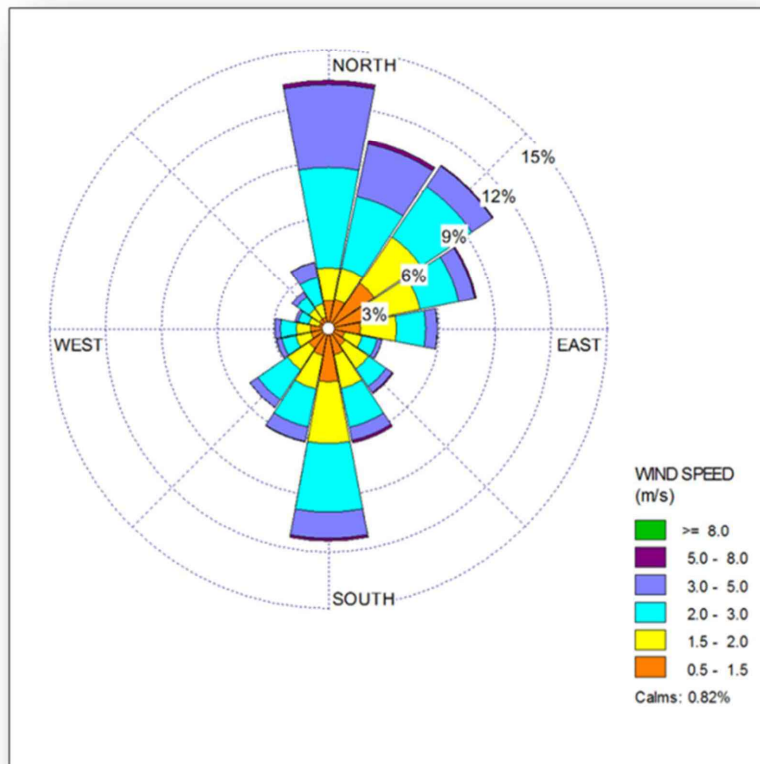


Figure 13: Surface Wind Rose Plots for the period 2003 to 2005 at the SAWS Thabazimbi station (Keiser. K., 2013)

## 6.3 Topography

### 6.3.1 Data Collection

Information contained within this section was obtained from the following information sources:

- Thabazimbi Local Municipality: Draft Integrated Development Plan 2012/13 (Thabazimbi Local Municipality, 2012);
- Limpopo State of the Environment Report (Phase 1) (Africon & Environomics Joint Venture, 2004);
- Waterberg District Municipality: 2011/12 Integrated Development Plan (Waterberg District Municipality, 2011); and
- Dishaba Mine Backfill Project: Final Environmental Impact Assessment Report (Shippon, J, *et al.*, 2012).

### 6.3.2 Regional Description

The landscape of the Waterberg District is a unique feature that distinguishes it from any other place in South Africa. There are four main landscape features in the Waterberg District, namely the Waterberg Plateau, the Transvaal Plateau Basin, the Pietersburg Plain and the Limpopo Depression.

The Waterberg Plateau lies to the northwest of the Bushveld basin, where it forms a highland area with an altitude of between 1068 metres above mean sea level (mamsl) in the northwest and nearly 2100mamsl in the southwest. The highest part of the area is in the south. Krantzberg in the southwest is 2086mamsl, nearly 1220mamsl above the Limpopo plain at the foot of the cliff-like scarps of the Waterberg Sandstone.

---

In the southeast the edge of the plateau is also precipitous in the Sand River Mountains and the Hang lip Escarpment. The plateau surface declines gradually to the west, where a well-defined scarp overlooks the peneplain of the Upper Limpopo valley. The surface of this sub-region is not even everywhere, but its general character is that of an undulating plateau surface with rocky outcrops (of the quartzite) and thin sandy soils.

Two irregular ridges formed by the Rooiberg felsite and the New Red Bushveld granite run roughly parallel with the eastern and southern edge of the Waterberg plateau. Topographically these ridges form the transition zone between the Waterberg plateau and the Bushveld basin, forming terrace steps from the one to the other.

The Waterberg Mountain Range forming a central mountain plateau occupies the central part of the Waterberg District. The Waterberg Mountain Range is linked to the Sebetiela Mountains in the southeastern part, which in turn is linked to the Great Escarpment of the Drakensberg Mountain Range by the Strydpoort Mountains. The Rooiberg Mountains are located in the southwestern part of the Waterberg District.

The terrain of the Thabazimbi Local Municipal area ranges in altitude from approximately 1700mamsl to about 900mamsl. (where the Crocodile river has its confluence with the Limpopo river). The topography of the eastern parts of the Thabazimbi Local Municipality varies from plains which have a moderate to low relief to more complex lowlands, hills and mountains to closed hills and mountains with relief varying from moderate to high.

### 6.3.3 Site Description

Tumela Mine is situated in a relatively flat area. There are no pronounced geomorphological features in the area apart from two dominant conical hills to the south of the Mine and one toward the north around the town of Thabazimbi. The overall mining area's elevation decreases in an easterly direction and is characterised with a gentle topography ranging from 980mamsl in the south-western boundary of the site to 920mamsl in the north-east. The topography for the Proposed Project is also situated on a relatively flat area with elevation decreasing in a westerly direction with a gentle slope ranging from 962mamsl and 953mamsl (**Figure 14**).



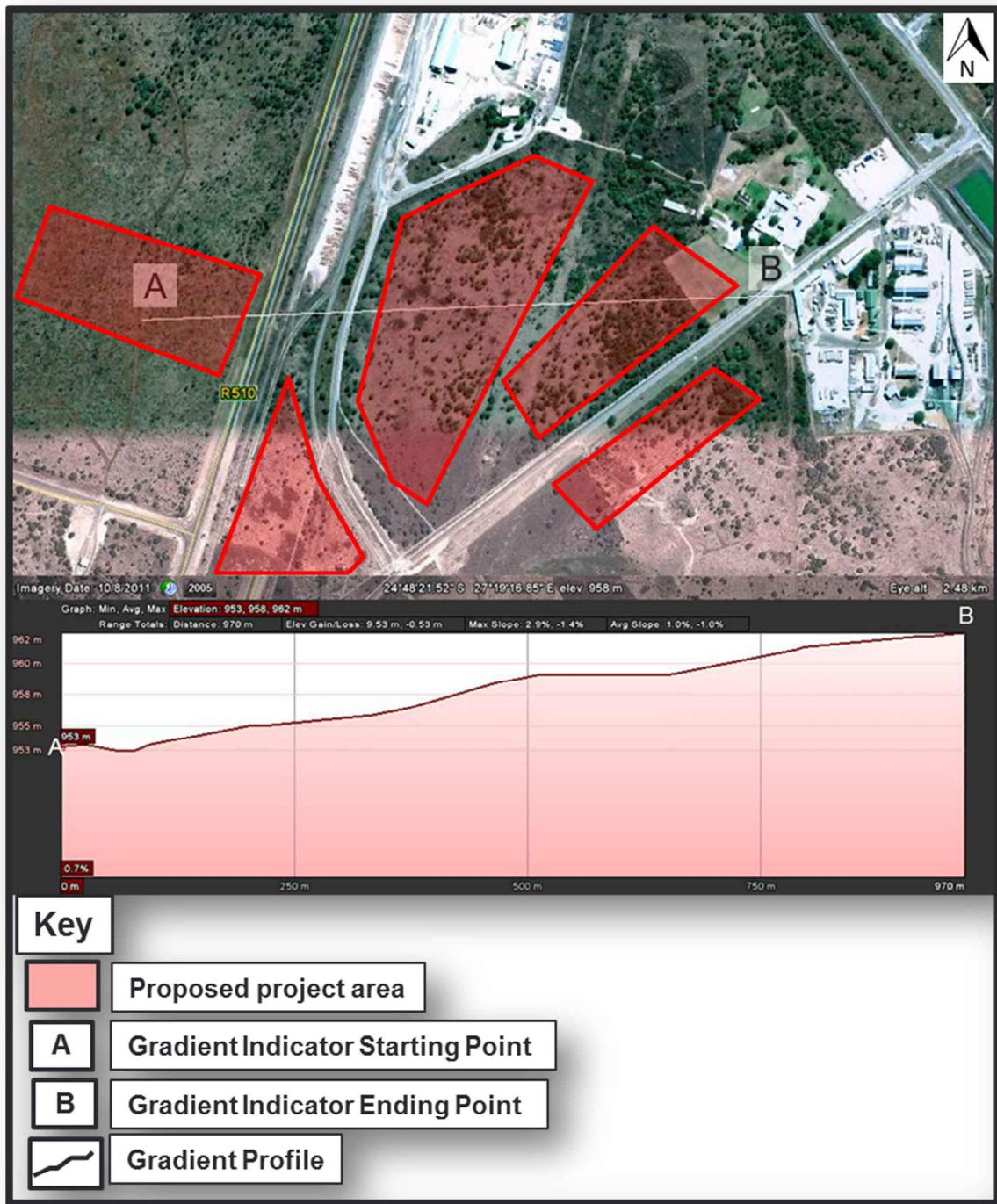


Figure 14: Tumela Gradient (Google Earth, 2011)

## 6.4 Soil and Land Capability

### 6.4.1 Data Collection

Information contained within this section was obtained from the following information sources:

- 
- Anglo Platinum Limited - Amandelbult Section - Merensky Project - Volume 1: Draft Environmental Impact Assessment (12 February 2007) (Bekker, T., 2007);
  - Waterberg District Municipality: 2011/12 Integrated Development Plan (Waterberg District Municipality, 2011); and
  - Dishaba Mine Backfill Project: Final Environmental Impact Assessment Report (Shippon, J, et al., 2012).

#### 6.4.2 Regional Description

The soil in the Waterberg District is very diverse. Major soil associations were identified which include: weakly developed soils on mountainous catchments, uplands and rocky areas, dystrophic, red and yellow, freely draining sandy soils, and plinthic upland duplex and paraduplex soils on undulating middleveld, rugged terrain. The agricultural potential of the area is associated with topographical, pedological (soil) and climate determinants.

#### 6.4.3 Site Description

The dominant soils associated with the study area are:

- Arcadia, vertic A-horizon over parent material;
- Rensburg, vertic A-horizon over a G-horizon; and
- Valsrivier, orthic A-horizon over a pedocutanic B-horizon.

Vertisols, which are soils of the Arcadia form (black clays) are dominant in the area, but they are associated with red soils of the Shortlands and Glenrosa forms adjacent to which they generally show remarkably abrupt contacts. Structurally the reddish soils are more permeable and less expansive. Most of the soils contain free calcium carbonate in the form of powdery deposits or nodular concentrations. Calcium is also the dominant cation in the soil saturation extract.

The dominant soil characteristics of the soils in the mining area are the high clay content, ranging from 28% to 62% and the high cation exchange capacity ranging from 15.32 cmol(+)/kg to 61.65 cmol(+)/kg.

### 6.5 Land Use

#### 6.5.1 Data Collection

Information contained within this section was obtained from the following information sources:

- Thabazimbi Local Municipality: Draft Integrated Development Plan 2012/13 (Thabazimbi Local Municipality, 2012);
- Rustenburg Platinum Mines, Amandelbult Section Biodiversity Action Plan (Rustenburg Platinum Mines Ltd, 2006); and
- Dishaba Mine Backfill Project: Final Scoping Report (Shippon, J, *et al.*, 2012).

#### 6.5.2 Regional Description

The total area of the Limpopo Province is 13.8 million ha of which:

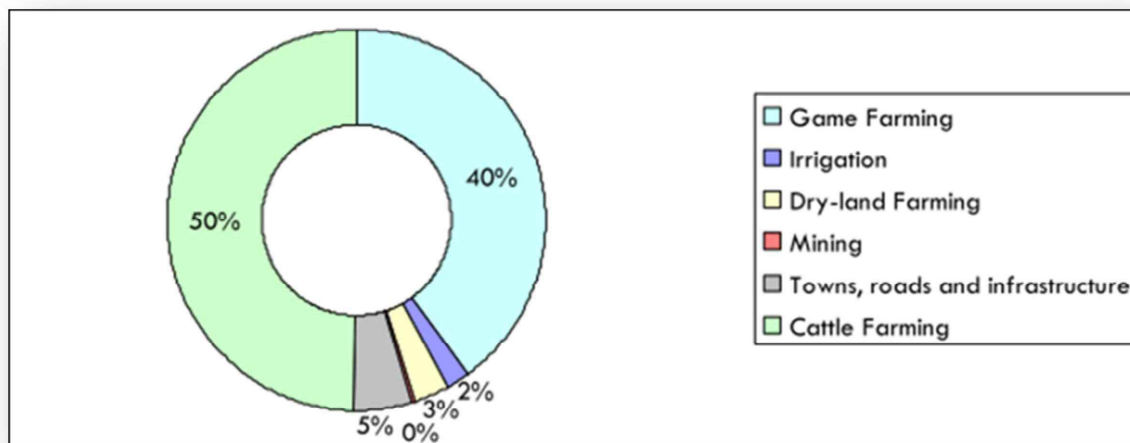
- Arable land accounts for 10%;
- Natural grazing (veld) for a further 67%;
- Forestry 0.9%; and
- 12.7% unclassified (including land not suitable for agriculture).

Table 10 summarises the various land uses in the Waterberg District, indicating the highest percentage as vacant land. In terms of human occupation the highest percentage of land area is used for cultivated land (i.e. crop farming).

**Table 10: Percentage of Land Usage**

Land Use	Hectares in Total	Percentage (%)
Commercial/ Industrial	622.51	0.01
Conservation	324468.01	6.57
Cultivated land	607946.98	12.29
Forestry	1138.49	0.02
Mining	7658.89	0.15
Residential	26615.43	0.54
Subsistence Farming	90503.98	1.83
Vacant / unspecified	3886598.09	78.58
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>4946052</b>	<b>100.00</b>

Approximately 40% of the land situated within the Thabazimbi Local Municipality is utilised for game farming, approximately 2% for irrigation, approximately 3% for dry-land farming, mining 0.4% and approximately 5% for towns, roads and other infrastructure. Fifty per cent of the Local Municipality area is utilised for extensive cattle farming (Figure 15).



**Figure 15: Division of Land Uses in the Thabazimbi Local Municipality (Thabazimbi Local Municipality, 2012)**

### 6.5.3 Site Description

The immediate land use within the Tumela Mine is associated with mining infrastructure and associated activities. The area immediately surrounding Tumela Mine is comprised of general veld. Furthermore, there is also a game reserve adjacent to the proposed site area. The Game Reserve, which is owned by Tumela Mine is situated to the south west of the Proposed Project. The Game Reserve covers an approximate area of 1,49ha. The Bierspruit River flows through the Game Reserve and is the main source of water for wildlife.

---

Local communities use the veld area surrounding Tumela Mine for grazing purposes on a subsistence basis. These activities however are not allowed to take place within the Tumela Mine active operational areas for safety reasons.

## 6.6 Flora

### 6.6.1 Data Collection

Information contained within this section was obtained from the following information sources:

- Waterberg District Municipality: 2011/12 Integrated Development Plan (Waterberg District Municipality, 2011);
- Thabazimbi Local Municipality: Draft Integrated Development Plan 2012/13 (Thabazimbi Local Municipality, 2012);
- Dishaba Mine Backfill Project: Final Scoping Report (Shippon, J, *et al.*, 2012); and
- Dishaba Mine Backfill Project: Dishaba Backfill Project- Ecological Scan (Van der Walt, 2012).

### 6.6.2 Regional Description

Most of the Waterberg District falls within the Central Bushveld Bioregion, which falls within the Savanna Biome. There are also small patches of vegetation that fall within the Mesic Highveld Grassland Bioregion, which falls within the Grassland Biome. Patches of Azonal vegetation is also found within the district. Lowveld Riverine Forest, Springbokvlakte Thornveld, Central Sandy Bushveld, Makhado Sweet Bushveld and Subtropical Salt Pans are the vegetation types of most concern for conservation.

Three centres of endemism occur near the eastern boundary of the Waterberg District. There are a number of protected areas within the Waterberg District, including Marakele National Park, Entabeni Nature Reserve, D'nyala Nature Reserve and Doorndraai Dam Nature Reserve to name a few. Some of these reserves have been incorporated into the Waterberg Biosphere Reserve. The Waterberg Biosphere Reserve is recognised by United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO).

The Waterberg District's natural vegetation has experienced degradation in some areas. This includes urbanisation cultivation or mining. Severe over-grazing is problematic. Biodiversity hotspots and conservation priorities in the study area should be preserved before transformation leads to the loss of the entire area.

The Thabazimbi Local Municipality is located in the Savanna Biome. The Savanna Biome comprises a number of vegetation units. The most recent, national vegetation classification, describe the broad vegetation within the study areas as Dwaalboom Thornveld. Dwaalboom Thornveld grows mainly on black clays (turf) and comprises low to medium high, deciduous microphyllous trees and shrubs with a few broad leaved tree species, while the herbaceous layer is dominated by grasses. Important taxa in Dwaalboom Thornveld include two protected trees *Acacia erioloba* and *Combretum imberbe*, as well as other small trees and shrubs such as *Acacia nilotica*, *A.tortilis subsp. heterachantha*, *Searsia (Rhus) lancea* and *Ziziphus mucronat*. The shrub layer consists of species such as *Acacia hebeclada subsp. hebeclade*, *Combretum hereroense*, *Diospyros lycioides subsp. lycioides*, *Euclea undulata*, *Grewia flava* and *Tarchonanthus camphoratus*. **Figure 16** indicates the location of the Proposed Project in relation to the regional vegetation.

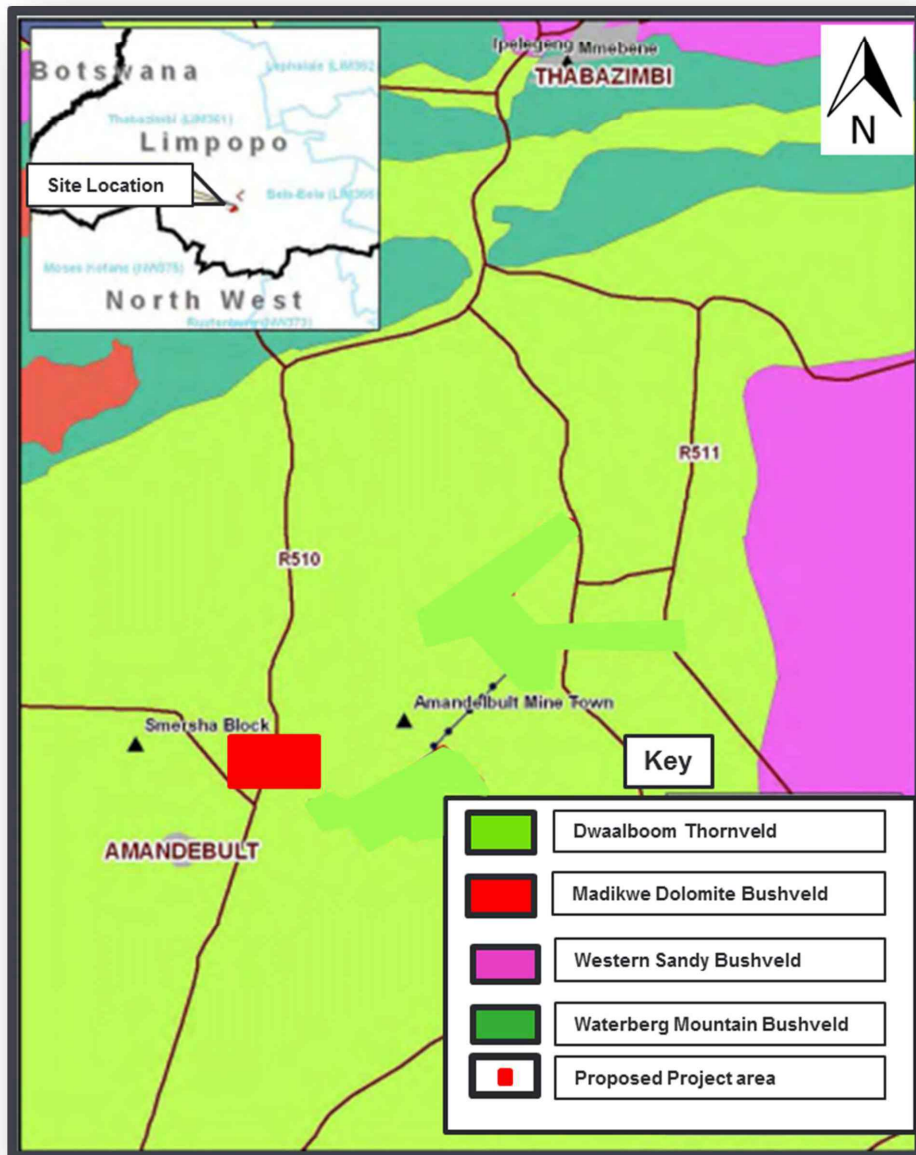


Figure 16: Regional vegetation a (Van der Walt, 2012)

### 6.6.3 Site Description

The vegetation that can be expected to occur in the mine lease area are provide in **Table 11**.

**Table 11: Vegetation Recordings (Shippon, J, et al., 2012)**

<b>Dominant species at the time of the field survey:</b>	<u>Trees</u>
	<i>Acacia tortilis</i> subsp. <i>heteracantha</i> , <i>Acacia nilotica</i> subsp. <i>Kraussiana</i> ; and <i>Acacia mellifera</i> subsp. <i>Detinens</i> .
	<u>Herbs</u>



	<i>Asparagus cooperi</i> ; and <i>Abutilon</i> sp. <u>Grasses (Graminoids)</u> <i>Fingerhuthia africana</i> , <i>Ischaemum afrum</i> , <i>Aristida bipartita</i> .
<b>Plants of conservation concern confirmed to occur:</b>	None
<b>Plants of conservation concern for which suitable habitat was found:</b>	<i>Brachystelma dimorphum</i> subsp. <i>Gratum</i> ; <i>Brachystelma discoideum</i> ; <i>Brachystelma gracillimum</i> ; <i>Drimia altissima</i> ; <i>Drimia sanguinea</i> ; <i>Kniphofia typhoides</i> ; and <i>Stenostelma umbelliferum</i> .
<b>Provincially protected plants confirmed to occur:</b>	None
<b>Provincially protected plants for which suitable habitat was found:</b>	<i>Erythrophysa transvaalensis</i> ; <i>Brachyselma</i> species; <i>Ceropegia</i> species; <i>Cyranthus</i> species; and <i>Orchidaceae</i> .
<b>Nationally protected species confirmed to occur</b>	<i>Combretum imberbe</i> (Protected in terms of National Forest Act of 1998)
<b>Dominant alien species recorded at the time of the survey</b>	Weedy species such as <i>Zinnia peruviana</i> , <i>Conzya bonariensis</i> and <i>Bidens</i> sp.

## 6.7 Fauna

### 6.7.1 Data Collection

Information contained within this section was obtained from the following information sources:

- Waterberg District Municipality: 2011/12 Integrated Development Plan (Waterberg District Municipality, 2011);
- Thabazimbi Local Municipality: Draft Integrated Development Plan 2012/13 (Thabazimbi Local Municipality, 2012);
- Draft Environmental Impact Assessment Report for The Proposed Bela Bela Agri-Village Development (Ueckermann, L, 2010);
- Anglo Platinum Limited - Amandelbult Section - Merensky Project - Volume 1: Draft Environmental Impact Assessment (12 February 2007) (Bekker, T., 2007);
- Dishaba Mine Backfill Project: Final Scoping Report (Shippon, J, *et al.*, 2012); and
- Dishaba Mine Backfill Project: Dishaba Backfill Project- Ecological Scan (Van der Walt, 2012).

## 6.7.2 Regional Description

The Waterberg District falls between two distinct biospheres, namely the middleveld grasslands and sourveld to the east and the Kalahari thornveld to the west. This meeting of biomes creates a converging crossover environment for animals, plants and birds. Birdlife, which is obviously free moving, has remained essentially undisturbed through the protection provided within the mountainous environment. Over 400 species of birds have been recorded across the greater Waterberg District making this one of South Africa's prime birding destinations. All the principal game species, including elephant, rhino, leopard, buffalo and lion are present in larger game reserves in the district along with hundreds of other species. There are 43 mammal species of conservation concern that occur in the Waterberg District Municipality. Thirteen of these species are threatened with extinction and are on the Red List.

## 6.7.3 Site Description

### 6.7.3.1 Avifauna

Tumela Mine falls within 2427 CD (QDGC (Quarter Degree Grid Cell)) where approximately 396 bird species are thought to occur, 17 of which are of conservation concern. A total of 35 bird species including the invasive Indian / Common Myna were identified during the field survey a list of which can be found in **Table 12** (although this total should not be considered as representative of the avifaunal diversity of the area).

**Table 12: Avifauna Species (Van der Walt, 2012)**

Common Name	Scientific Name	Conservation Status	
		National (Barnes 2000)	Global (IUCN)
<b>African Grey Hornbill</b>	<i>Tockus nasutus</i>	LC	LC
<b>Black Crane</b>	<i>Amaurornis flavirostra</i>	LC	LC
<b>Black-crowned Tchagra</b>	<i>Tchagra senegalensis</i>	LC	LC
<b>Black-shouldered Kite</b>	<i>Elanus caeruleus</i>	LC	LC
<b>Blacksmith Lapwing</b>	<i>Vanellus armatus</i>	LC	LC
<b>Blue Waxbill</b>	<i>Uraeginthus angolensis</i>	LC	LC
<b>Cape Turtle-Dove</b>	<i>Streptopelia capicola</i>	LC	LC
<b>Chestnut-vented Tit-Babbler</b>	<i>Sylvia subcaerulea</i>	LC	LC
<b>Common Fiscal</b>	<i>Lanius collaris</i>	LC	LC
<b>Common Ostrich</b>	<i>Struthio camels</i>	LC	LC
<b>Crested Francolin</b>	<i>Dendroperdix sephaena</i>	LC	LC
<b>Crimson-breasted Shrike</b>	<i>Laniarius atrococcineus</i>	LC; En	LC
<b>Crowned Lapwing</b>	<i>Vanellus coronatus</i>	LC	LC
<b>Egyptian Goose</b>	<i>Alopochen aegyptiaca</i>	LC	LC
<b>Familiar Chat</b>	<i>Cercomela familiaris</i>	LC	LC
<b>Fork-tailed Drongo</b>	<i>Dicrurus adsimilis</i>	LC	LC
<b>Gabar Goshawk</b>	<i>Micronisus gabar</i>	LC	LC
<b>Grey Heron</b>	<i>Ardea melanocephala</i>	LC	LC



Common Name	Scientific Name	Conservation Status	
		National (Barnes 2000)	Global (IUCN)
<b>Helmeted Guineafowl</b>	<i>Numida meleagris</i>	LC	LC
<b>Indian (Common) Myna</b>	<i>Acridotheres tristis</i>	Exotic	N/A
<b>Jameson's Firefinch</b>	<i>Lagonosticta rhodopareia</i>	LC	LC
<b>Laughing Dove</b>	<i>Spilopelia senegalensis</i>	LC	LC
<b>Lesser Honeyguide</b>	<i>Indicator minor</i>	LC	LC
<b>Lesser Striped Swallow</b>	<i>Cecropis abyssinica</i>	LC	LC
<b>Magpie Shrike</b>	<i>Urolestes melanoleucus</i>	LC	LC
<b>Namaqua Dove</b>	<i>Oena capensis</i>	LC	LC
<b>Rattling Cisticola</b>	<i>Cisticola chiniana</i>	LC	LC
<b>Red-billed Quelea</b>	<i>Quelea quelea</i>	LC	LC
<b>Ref-faced Mousebird</b>	<i>Urocolius indicus</i>	LC	LC
<b>Southern Yellow-billed Hornbill</b>	<i>Tockus leucomelas</i>	LC; En	LC
<b>Swainson's Spurfowl</b>	<i>Pternistis swainsonii</i>	LC; En	LC
<b>Tawny-flanked Prinia</b>	<i>Prinia subflava</i>	LC	LC
<b>Violet-eared Waxbill</b>	<i>Uraeginthus granatinus</i>	LC	LC
<b>White-browed Scrub-Robin</b>	<i>Erythropygia leucophrys</i>	LC	LC
<b>White-fronted Bee-eater</b>	<i>Merops bullockoides</i>	LC	LC

\* National and global conservation status (VU = Vulnerable; LC = Least Concern; En = Endemic)

Nine species of conservation concern have a high probability of occurring due to the presence of suitable habitat; however, none of these were recorded during the field survey undertaken in 2012, these include:

- Kori Bustard (*Ardeotis kori*);
- White-backed Vulture (*Gyps africanus*);
- Tawny Eagle (*Aquila rapax*);
- Martial Eagle (*Polemaetus bellicosus*);
- Secretarybird (*Sagittarius serpentarius*);
- Lanner Falcon (*Falco biarmicus*);
- Marabou Stork (*Leptoptilos crumeniferus*);
- Red-billed Oxpecker (*Buphagus erythrorhynchus*); and
- Short-clawed Lark (*Certhilauda chuana*).

### 6.7.3.2 Mammals

A number of invertebrate and vertebrate species occur naturally in the area. Direct observations confirmed the presence of large mammal species such as black-backed jackal (*Canis mesomelas*), porcupine (*Hystrix africaeustralis*), vervet monkeys (*Cercopithecus aethiops*), scrub hare (*Lepus saxatilis*), warthog (*Phacochoerus africanus*) and duiker (*Sylvicapra grimmia*). Other direct and indirect observations confirmed the

---

presence of termites, centipedes, butterflies, tapping beetles, lizards, rodents and snakes. No suitable habitats for bats occur at Tumela Mine.

### **6.7.3.3 Spiders**

Trapdoor spiders are usually sedentary and ground living, building intricate burrows that although generally well camouflaged is noticeable once familiar with the different construction methods employed. These spiders are generally burrow-bound during the day, some sitting at the mouth of the burrow, door ajar, waiting for prey to pass by. Once disturbed or in possession of prey, the spider retreats to the burrow, closing the door tightly behind it. In defence the spider is able to hold down the trapdoor with great force. Although burrows can be found in the study area, positive identification of these arachnids have not be achieved. The habitat is considered potentially suitable for these, and a number of other arachnid species.

### **6.7.3.4 Scorpions**

Scorpions have successfully adapted to virtually the full range of potentially compatible terrestrial habitats. No species is unselective in its choice of habitat, but scorpions can be found wandering from one habitat to another when searching for prey. Potentially suitable habitat does exist in both the Savanna and rocky outcrops of the study area.

### **6.7.3.5 Amphibians**

There are 109 species of frog that are currently listed as potentially occurring in the region, 22 of which are listed as threatened, two of which are endemic to the region. While habitats that are suitable do occur in the region, the habitat is considered marginal and not likely associated with the area disturbed by development of the Proposed Project.

### **6.7.3.6 Reptiles**

Northern crag lizards (*Pseudocordylus transvaalensis*) are found only in the Limpopo Province, in isolated populations. It is possible that crag lizards are to be found on the property, although no crag lizards have been observed).

## **6.8 Surface Water**

### **6.8.1 Data Collection**

Information contained within this section was obtained from the following information sources:

- Dishaba Mine Backfill Project: Draft Integrated Waste and Water Management Plan Amendment (Shippon, J, *et al.*, 2012);
- Rustenburg Platinum Mines, Amandelbult Section: Integrated Waste Water Management Plan (Clean Stream Environmental Consultants, 2011);
- Waterberg District Municipality: 2011/12 Integrated Development Plan (Waterberg District Municipality, 2011);
- Thabazimbi Local Municipality: Draft Integrated Development Plan 2012/13 (Thabazimbi Local Municipality, 2012);
- Tumela Central Shaft Project: Hydrological Impact Assessment (Gemmell, 2013); and
- Dishaba Mine Backfill Project: Final Scoping Report (Shippon, J, *et al.*, 2012).

---

## 6.8.2 Regional Description

The rivers flowing in the Waterberg District drain in a north-westerly direction to the Limpopo River that has a direct influence on South Africa's neighbouring countries. The following rivers are the most prominent in the District:

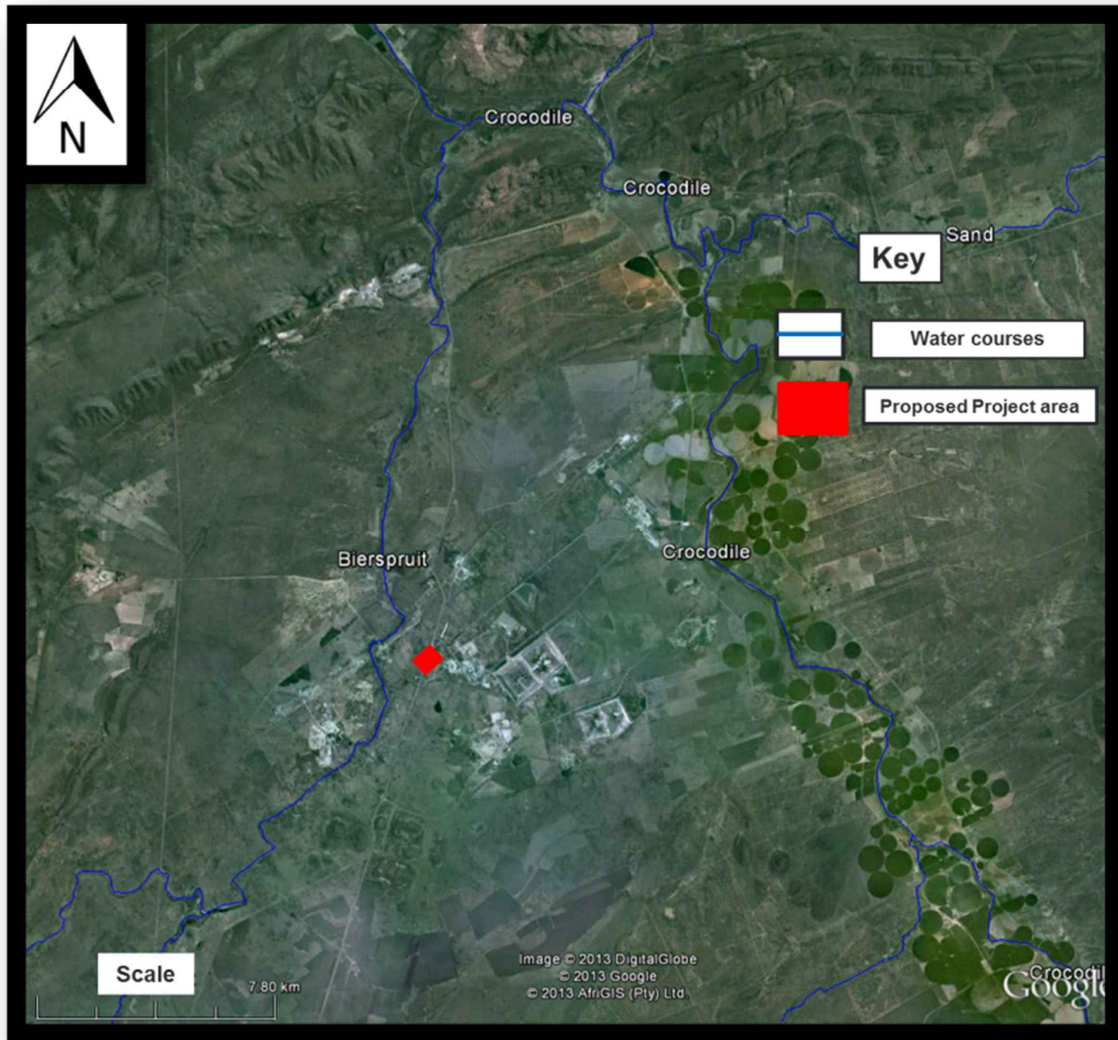
- Mokolo;
- Limpopo;
- Lephallale;
- Mogalakwena;
- Sterk;
- Olifants; and
- Nyl.

The Thabazimbi Local Municipality is situated in the Lower Crocodile Water sub-management-area. This sub-management area represents the remainder of the Crocodile River catchment, downstream of the confluence with the Elands River. The river flows in a north-north-westerly direction until the confluence with the Marico River. After the confluence the river is known as the Limpopo River. The Lower Crocodile River has two main tributaries, namely the Sand River and the Bierspruit which join the Crocodile River east of the town of Thabazimbi. Irrigation is the dominant water demand in this sub-area.

## 6.8.3 Site Description

Two water courses are situated near the project area, namely: the Bierspruit and the Crocodile River. The Bierspruit is found to the west of the study area and flows in a northerly direction where it discharges into the Crocodile River approximately 20km to the north. The Bierspruit is a non-perennial stream characterised by minimal flow between the months of May to October. There is a single tributary that feeds the Bierspruit River that flows from east to west to the south of the study area.

The Crocodile River is a perennial river situated to the east of the Proposed Project where it flows in a north-westerly direction. This river is a source of water to the surrounding farm owners for irrigation purposes. **Figure 17** indicates the regional hydrological setting including the orientation of the Bierspruit and the Crocodile rivers.



**Figure 17: Watercourses in proximity to Tumela Mine (Google Earth, 2012)**

The mining area is situated in the Crocodile-West Marico Water Management Area, and ultimately drains into the Limpopo River, designated by the DWA as Primary Drainage Region A; the responsible water authority being the DWA: North West Regional Office. The Proposed Project is located within the quaternary catchment area A24F (**Figure 18**).

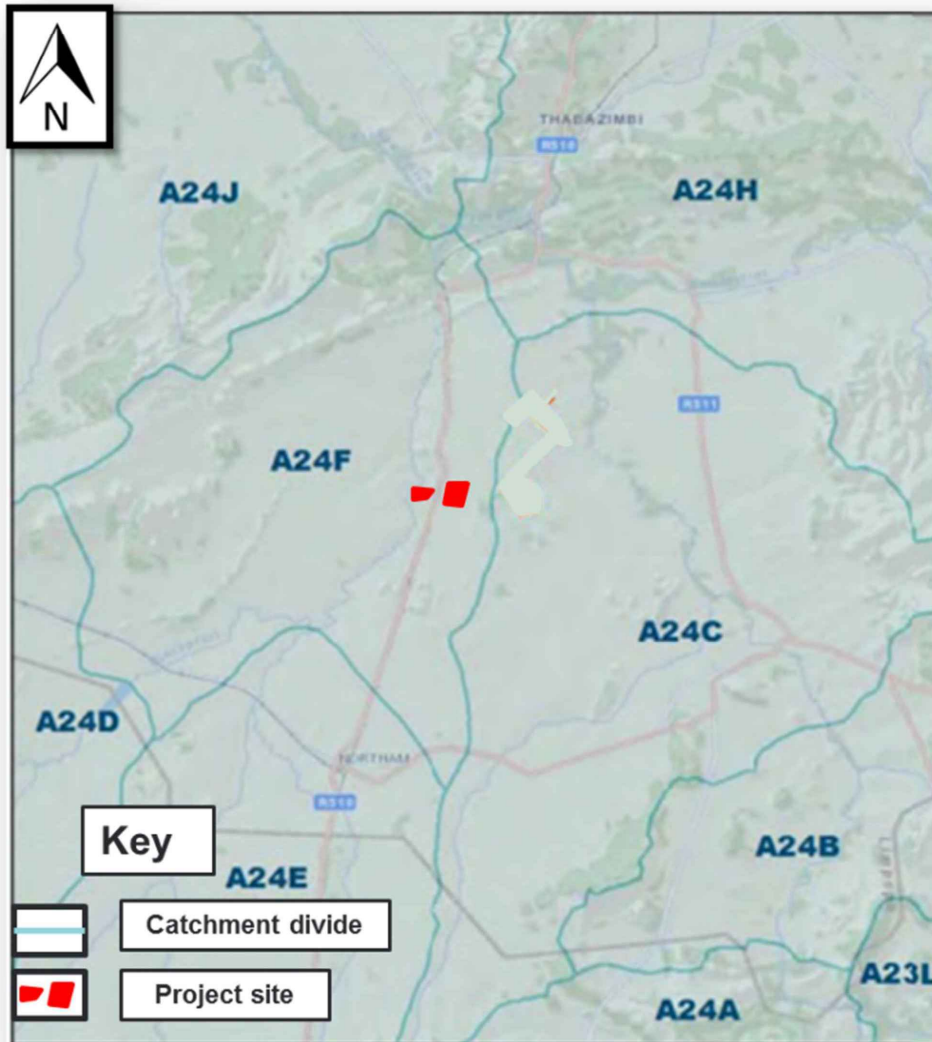


Figure 18: Map indicating the Catchment Boundaries relevant to the Study Area (Shippon, *et al.* 2012)

## 6.9 Groundwater

### 6.9.1 Data Collection

Information contained within this section was obtained from the following information sources:

- Dishaba Mine Backfill Project: Draft Integrated Waste and Water Management Plan Amendment (Shippon, J, *et al.*, 2012);
- Rustenburg Platinum Mines, Amandelbult Section: Integrated Waste Water Management Plan (Clean Stream Environmental Consultants, 2011); and
- Dishaba Mine Backfill Project: Final Scoping Report (Shippon, J, *et al.*, 2012).



## 6.9.2 Regional Description

Close to the Crocodile River the groundwater reservoir is to be found within the sandy formations of ill-defined lateral extent, which are bordered by weathered outcrops of bedrock. The alluvial aquifer is delineated in close proximity to the river and the aquifer only extends for approximately 300m west of the river. The reason for this is that the area is underlain by very shallow bedrock (mainly gabbro and norite), generally less than 9m below surface. The majority of the aquifer is on the eastern side of the river where in fact, some high yielding boreholes are found.

The physical characteristics of the aquifer in all instances are an impermeable clay layer at depths varying from 2 to 8m below the surface of the river bed. The clay is overlain by unconsolidated and structured quartzitic sands and gravels. There are indications that the clay layer is underlain by more sands and gravels. The clay layer occurs as an almost continuous horizon in and along the river bed, forming "tongues" laterally into the adjacent and older alluvial deposits, and pinching out with distances from the river. Based on this information the conclusion drawn is that the river could only be regarded as partly penetrating the aquifer, and serves as a semi-pervious boundary.

## 6.9.3 Site Description

Towards the western parts of the RPM - Amandelbult Section the water table levels are more erratic than other areas of the Amandelbult area, because of the nature of the aquifer. In the vicinity where the No. 4 Shaft is proposed it appears there is a perched water table at 12m and the water table at 60m. There is further evidence that the aquifers are compartmentalised due to the presence of faults in the area.

There is a gentle gradient towards the Bierspruit. The groundwater contours tend to parallel the course of the river, manifesting a groundwater gradient from east to west.

## 6.10 Air Quality

### 6.10.1 Data Collection

Information contained within this section was obtained from the following information sources:

- Tumela Central Shaft project Air Quality Impact Assessment Report (Keiser, 2013);
- Waterberg District Municipality: Integrated Development Plan 2012/13; and
- Dishaba Mine Backfill Project: Draft Environmental Impact Assessment Report (Shippon, J, et al., 2012).

### 6.10.2 Regional Description

The Lephalale, Mogalakwena and Thabazimbi Local Municipalities are considered air quality hotspots within the Waterberg District. Pollution sources within the Waterberg District include power generation, mining, industrial activities, domestic fuel burning, vehicle emissions, agricultural activities, biomass burning, waste treatment and disposal, and dust from various sources. Currently, the air quality of the Waterberg District is considered fair, however with future development set to happen in the area, it is expected that air pollution will increase. **Table 13** indicates the percentage contribution of each local municipality in terms of the following categories: industrial emission, domestic fuel burning, vehicle emissions, PM<sub>10</sub> production, SO<sub>2</sub> generation, and NO<sub>2</sub> generation. The high percentage allocations to the Lephalale Local Municipality can be attributed to the number power stations.

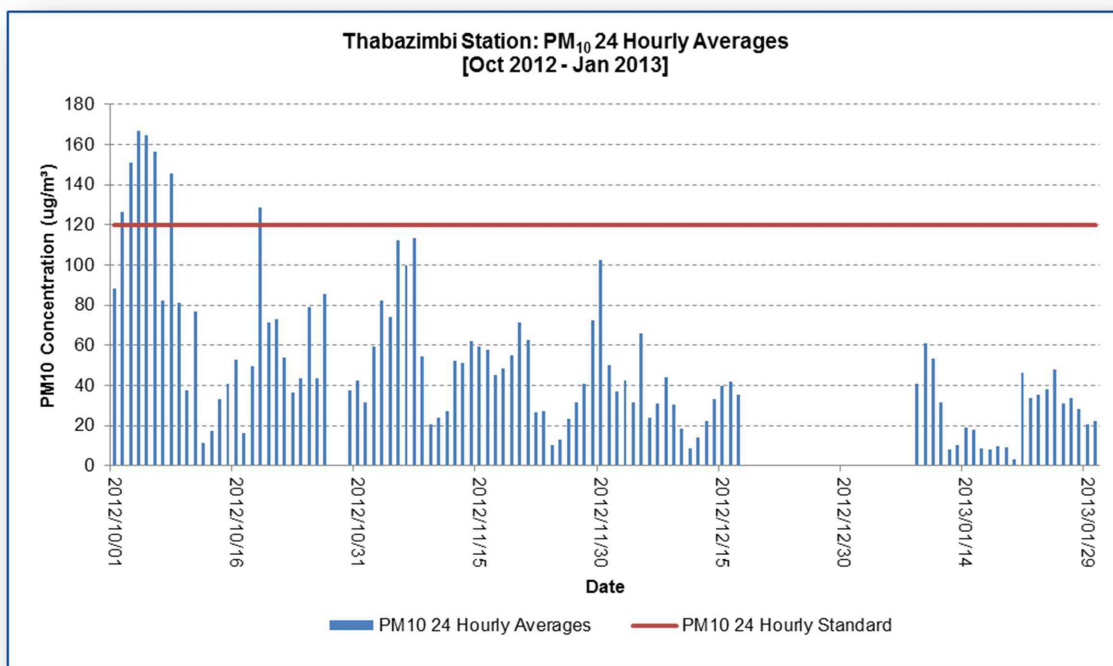
**Table 13: Air Quality in the Waterberg District Municipality (Waterberg IDP, 2012/13)**

Municipality	Industrial emission	Domestic fuel burning	Vehicle emissions	PM <sub>10</sub>	SO <sub>2</sub>	NO <sub>2</sub>
Lephalale	95.9%	19.1%	24.1%	86.2%	95.4%	94.3%

Municipality	Industrial emission	Domestic fuel burning	Vehicle omissions	PM <sub>10</sub>	S <sub>02</sub>	NO <sub>2</sub>
Bela - Bela	0.0%	4.8%	17.0%	0.4%	0.02%	1.0%
Mookgophong	0.0%	3.5%	6.1%	0.2%	0.01%	0.3%
<b>Thabazimbi</b>	<b>3.6%</b>	<b>10.9%</b>	<b>28.1%</b>	<b>0.8%</b>	<b>4.5%</b>	<b>1.6%</b>
Mogalakwena	0.4%	52.0%	13.2%	11.7%	0.05%	2.2%
Modimolle	0.0%	9.6%	11.4%	0.6%	1.8%	0.6%

### 6.10.3 Site Description

The Thabazimbi SAWS station is located closest to the Proposed Project area, approximately 26km north. **Figure 19** illustrates the PM<sub>10</sub> 24 hourly average continuous monitoring data monitored at the Thabazimbi SAWS station. During the monitoring period (October 2012 to January 2013), seven exceedences of the 24 hourly average PM<sub>10</sub> standard were recorded. The majority of exceedences occurred within the first 2 weeks in October, after which concentrations decreased to compliant levels. Based on this monitoring data, the average PM<sub>10</sub> concentration for the four month monitoring period was 50µg/m<sup>3</sup>.



**Figure 19: Hourly average PM<sub>10</sub> concentrations at Thabazimbi SAWS station**

## 6.11 Noise

### 6.11.1 Data Collection

Information contained within this section was obtained from the following information sources:

- Noise Impact Study for the Merensky No. 3 and 4 Shafts (F. Malherbe, 2006).



---

### 6.11.2 Regional Description

The Thabazimbi Local Municipality is dominated by industry and mining as well as agriculture activities. The mining and industrial categories lead to the generation of noise in the area.

### 6.11.3 Site Description

During a noise impact assessment undertaken in 2006 at Amandelbult Section it was noted that the ambient noise levels are determined by the noise emissions from the existing mining operations, as well as self-generated community noise. The ground cover around the Proposed Project is grassland with low shrubs which provide some absorption of noise energy during the propagation from source to receiver. There is no topographical screening between the Proposed Project and the nearest residential area and hostels.

The noise are of greater significance during the night time as the background noise during the night is very low compared to the day time and thus more noticeable to receptors surrounding the Proposed Project.

Common sources of noise in the mining area include:

- Surface compressors;
- Ventilation shafts;
- Mine vehicles;
- Spoornet and Mine trains; and
- Vehicles travelling on the R510.

## 6.12 Archaeology and Cultural Heritage

### 6.12.1 Data Collection

Information contained within this section was obtained from the following information sources:

- Survey of Heritage Resources in the Location of the Proposed Merensky Mining Project, Amandelbult Section, Rustenburg Platinum Mine, Limpopo Province (J. Van Schalkwyk, 2006);
- Tumela Central Shaft Project: Scoping report input report (informal report) (A. van Vollenhoven, 2013); and
- Heritage impact assessment for the Proposed Dishaba Mine Backfill Project, Amandelbult Region, Limpopo Province (J. Van Schalkwyk, 2012).

### 6.12.2 Regional Description

Many Stone Age sites have been identified in the Limpopo Province. Sites dated to the Early Stone Age were identified at Blaauwbank close to Rooiberg and at Olieboompoort to the north of Thabazimbi. Middle Stone Age sites are known at Olieboompoort to the north of Thabazimbi, close to the Lephallale River and at Noord-Brabant and Goergap to the east of Lephallale.

Late Stone Age sites have been identified at Olieboompoort to the north of Thabazimbi and at Noord-Brabant close to Lephallale. Rock art is also associated with the Late Stone Age. Such sites were found in abundance in the Limpopo Province. Rock paintings are located along the Limpopo River, the Soutpansberg, Waterberg, Strydpoortberg, to the south and east of Lephallale and the areas in between. Rock engravings were found along the Mogalakwena and Limpopo Rivers, and between the Olifants and Steelpoort Rivers.

The historical age started with the first recorded oral histories in the area. It includes the moving into the area of people that were able to read and write. This era is sometimes called the Colonial era or the recent past. Due to factors such as population growth and a decrease in mortality rates, more people inhabited the area during the recent historical past. Therefore much more cultural heritage resources have been left on the landscape.

---

During Middle Stone Age times (c. 150 000 – 30 000 BP), people became more mobile, occupying areas formerly avoided. Open sites were preferred near watercourses. These people were adept at exploiting the huge herds of animals that passed through the area, on their seasonal migration. As a result, tools belonging to this period also mostly occur in the open or in erosion dongas. Similar to the Early Stone Age material, artefacts from these surface collections are viewed not to be in a primary context and have little or no significance.

### 6.12.3 Site Description

The Proposed Project site is located within a kilometre of the study area investigated for the Merensky reef project which was undertaken in 2006. Although the vegetation was very dense in the area during the study, a few scattered potsherds were identified. This is in line with what is found in many areas around Limpopo. However, as it is loose surface scatters, with no context, it is viewed to have very low significance. **Figure 20** is a representation of known heritage sites in the surrounding area which are dominant on the west side of the tar road, around the river course. The map was compiled using previous studies/surveys undertaken in the greater project area.

Previous research has indicated that a large number of sites of cultural significance occur in the mining area. Relatively few sites or occurrences were identified east of the tar road, due to the fact that people avoided the turf thornveld in prehistoric times. It is only at one or two isolate outcrops that features were found. Settlement occurred almost exclusively close to the Bierspruit, which also served as water source for the area.

Based on field visit during the 2012, the following heritage sites, features and objects were identified in the proposed development area (approximately 4 km north of the Proposed Project site):

- No sites, features or objects of cultural significance dating to the Stone Age were identified in the study area;
- No sites, features or objects of cultural significance dating to the Iron Age were identified in the study area; and
- No sites, features or objects of cultural significance dating to the historic period were identified in the study area.

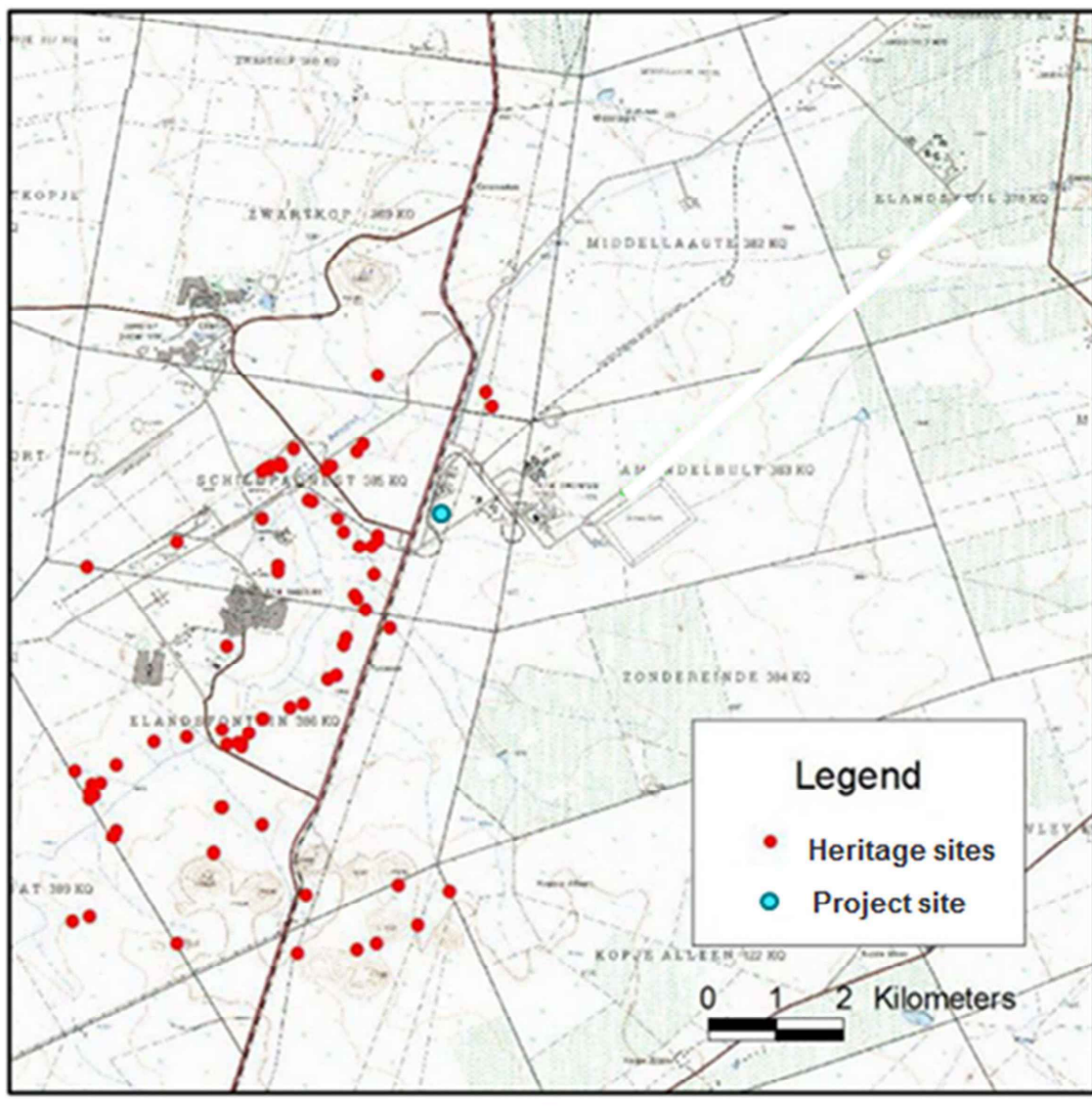


Figure 20: Heritage Sites (Van Schalkwyk, 2012)

## 6.13 Visual Aspects

### 6.13.1 Data Collection

Information contained within this section was obtained from the following information source:

- Anglo Platinum Limited - Amandelbult Section - Merensky Project - Volume 1: Draft Environmental Impact Assessment (12 February 2007) (Bekker, T., 2007).

---

### 6.13.2 Regional Description

The site for the Proposed Project is situated on a flat plane north of a group of low, but distinct hills. The land use to the north of the hills is characterised by industrial mining activities while the land use to the south is characterised by agricultural land and natural vegetation.

Extensive mining activities are taking place in the region in which the Proposed Project will be located, which has resulted in the presence of open cast pits, waste rock dumps and related infrastructure in the area. A substation is located southwest of the Proposed Project location along the R510, from where power lines emanate towards the north and south, along road R510.

### 6.13.3 Site Description

The proposed site lies in a relatively flat area characterised by semi industrial mining related activities. The natural environment on site and in the area has been disturbed by mining activities. The proposed site is surrounded by various mining activities. The proposed site is located within a mine lease area. The mining activity, and the infrastructure that supports these mines, dominates the agricultural type landscape characteristics to the east of the area. To the south, a series of small 'koppies' are evident and to the north, the Waterberg range protrudes prominently above the flat plain.

The R510 constitutes the major public road and tourist route in the vicinity of the proposed site. The road runs in a north-south west direction of the Proposed Project connecting Northam to Thabazimbi. People using this road would definitely be able to view the structures as they travel along the road. The most sensitive viewing area would be that along the R510 towards Thabazimbi. The area features a combination of agricultural land, natural vegetation and hills. From the R510 the new shaft will be stand out against the backdrop provided by the existing hill. The proposed site will be located approximately 200m from the road at its nearest point.

The proposed site does not have any inhabitants, but there are however mine villages within the vicinity of the site. A number of farmlands are also located in the vicinity of the mine, primarily along the R510. The larger town of Thabazimbi is located approximately 25km from the site.

## 6.14 Socio-Economic

### 6.14.1 Data Collection

Information contained within this section was obtained from the following information sources:

- Dishaba Mine Backfill Project: Draft Integrated Waste and Water Management Plan Amendment (Shippon, J, *et al.*, 2012);
- Thabazimbi Local Municipality: Draft Integrated Development Plan 2012/13;
- Thabazimbi Local Municipality: Spatial Development Framework 2007;
- Waterberg District Municipality: Integrated Development Plan 2012/13;
- Statistics South Africa, 2011 Census and 2007 Community Survey data (Statistical Release report (revised), 2012; and
- Anglo American Platinum: Amandelbult Community Engagement Plan (2011).

### 6.14.2 Regional Description

The Proposed Project is located in the Thabazimbi Local Municipality within the Waterberg District Municipality of the Limpopo Province. Geographically, the Province is bordered by Zimbabwe to the north, Botswana to the north-west and the North West, Gauteng and Mpumalanga Provinces to the south.

The population of the Limpopo Province was 5,404,868, and the Waterberg District population was approximately 679,300 in 2011. Within the Waterberg District, the population is unevenly distributed among the

six Local Municipalities, and it contributes up to 13% of the Limpopo population of 5.4 million persons. In 2011 the Limpopo Province had an average population density of 43 people per km<sup>2</sup>.

The majority of the Waterberg District population reside within the Mogalakwena Local Municipality (45%), followed by Lephalale Local Municipality (17%), Thabazimbi Local Municipality (13%), Bela-Bela and Modimolle Local Municipalities (10% each) and Mookgopong Local Municipality (5%). See **Table 14** for the statistics of population groups within the Waterberg District.

**Table 14: Population of Waterberg District**

Local Municipality	Black	Coloureds	Indian/Asian	Other	White	Totals
<b>Thabazimbi</b>	71,845	527	205	347	12,309	85,234
<b>Lephalale</b>	104,964	1,023	344	317	9,120	115,767
<b>Mookgopong</b>	30,509	131	70	209	4,721	35,640
<b>Modimolle</b>	60,373	249	285	227	7,379	68,513
<b>Bela-Bela</b>	56,401	965	379	196	8,560	66,500
<b>Mogalakwena</b>	295,796	403	1,646	563	9,274	307,682
<b>Waterberg DM (2011)</b>	<b>619,889 (91.2%)</b>	<b>3,298 (0.5%)</b>	<b>2,929 (0.4%)</b>	<b>1,858 (0.3%)</b>	<b>51,362 (7.6%)</b>	<b>679,336 (100%)</b>
<b>Waterberg DM (2007)</b>	<b>540,451 (90.7%)</b>	<b>1,717 (0.3%)</b>	<b>3,932 (0.7%)</b>		<b>49,987 (8.4%)</b>	<b>596,087 (100%)</b>

#### 6.14.2.1 Population Demographics

In 2011 approximately 85,234 people were living in the Thabazimbi Municipal area, a 42% increase from 2007, and a population density of 2 people per km<sup>2</sup>. The most common languages spoken in the Limpopo Province are Sepedi, Xitsonga and Tshivenda. The Province is characterised by a high dependency ratio due to the fact that 31% of the population is between the ages of 0 and 14. In terms of education, approximately 7% of the population of the Thabazimbi Local Municipality reported as having no schooling, 18% of the population attained grade 12 (a significant increase since 2007 of 9.8%) and 6% of the population had received some form of tertiary education (an increase from 3% in 2007).

#### 6.14.2.2 Major Economic Activities and Employment Statistics

Only 39% of the economically active Thabazimbi Local Municipality population were employed in 2011. An estimated 10% of people in the municipal area who were economically active were unemployed, which can be attributed to a lack of employment opportunities and / or lack of relevant skills.

The most significant employer in the Thabazimbi Local Municipality is the mining sector (68.7% with a 7.8% increase average per annum) which has made substantial contributions to in-migration). Other sectors that are responsible for employment in the municipal area include: agriculture (8.3%), households (4.9%) and community services (3.6%). The Thabazimbi Local Municipality experienced an average decrease in employment of 12%, with 33,900 people employed in 2011 versus 30,600 people in 2007, therefore indicating a low overall increase in employment levels within the municipality. Unemployment has been maintained at approximately 10%. In terms of employment, a great challenge that the municipality faces is the fact that most of the mines in the area are mature and are nearing the end of life, which will have implications for future employment rates.

---

### **6.14.2.3 Social Infrastructure Provided by the Municipality**

There are: 30 pre-schools, 25 Primary schools, 4 combined schools, 4 high schools and 4 private schools located within the Thabazimbi Municipal Locality. The Thabazimbi Municipality have 5 hospitals, 10 clinics, 3 mobile clinics and 3 satellite clinic offices.

Some areas within the Thabazimbi Local Municipality were identified as facing challenges that need to be addressed regarding sanitation and water. A shortage of potable water and groundwater, especially during summer, are major challenges that are being faced at present. Bulk water is imported from the Magalies Water Scheme; however, this source is not adequate during summer months. Infrastructure is needed to increase the water supply to meet the current water demand. To address the water shortages the Thabazimbi Local Municipality has commenced with the construction of a bulk water supply pipeline between Zand Rivierspruit and Rooiberg, this pipeline is currently 97% complete. Due to a lack of service coverage by the municipality, approximately 3,660 households are experiencing water backlogs.

In the Thabazimbi Local Municipality in 2007, 95.4% of the population had access to some sort of sanitation facility, with the majority of people having access to flush toilets (connected to a sewerage system). 6 946 households had no access to sanitation facilities in 2009. The number of households with no electricity connections decreased from 245 in 2007 to 94 in 2008.



# 7 Potential Environmental Impacts

## 7.1 Environmental and Socio-economic Impacts

The over-arching objective of the Scoping Phase is to identify record and describe the potential environmental impacts that maybe associated with the Proposed Project. This enables the specialist studies to be clearly focused on aspects of significant concern. It also provides a framework for the assessment of the impacts that the Proposed Project will have on the environment, and of the impacts the environment will have on the Proposed Project. Based on inputs from the Project Team, stakeholders, I&APs and specialists, the potential environmental (biophysical and social-economic) impacts have been identified in **Table 15** and **Table 16** and will be investigated further during the EIR Phase of the process.

### 7.1.1 Potential Environmental Impacts

**Table 15: Environmental Impacts Potentially Associated with the Proposed Project**

Environmental Aspect	Potential Impact	Proposed method of investigation
<b>Geology</b>	Loss of geological resources.	Assessment of significance in the EIR Phase and the undertaking of a Blasting Impact Assessment.
	Potential sinkhole formation.	
	Potential formation of fractures within the bedrock due to blasting.	
<b>Soils, Land Use and Land Capability</b>	Loss of grazing capacity on the area proposed for development.	Assessment of significance in the EIR Phase.
	Loss in agricultural potential of the soil on which the project is proposed.	
	Obstacles to movement of people and livestock.	
	Potential for spills of fuels and other chemicals during construction and operation.	
	Development of previously vacant land.	
<b>Biodiversity</b>	Loss of grassland type habitat.	Assessment of significance in the EIR Phase.
	Disturbance and displacement of fauna / avifaunal species.	
	Faunal interaction with structures, servitudes and personnel.	
	Impact on surrounding habitat and species in terms of noise and dust.	
	Increase in overall environmental degradation associated with the mine.	
	Potential introduction / spread of alien species.	
	Potential loss of species diversity.	
<b>Surface and Ground-water</b>	Soil erosion as a result of land clearing may drain into surface water resources.	Assessment of significance in the EIR Phase and the undertaking of a Hydrological Impact Assessment.
	Surface water pollution due to spills of fuels or chemicals during construction and operation.	
	Groundwater depletion due to the groundwater pumping activity associated	



Environmental Aspect	Potential Impact	Proposed method of investigation
	with a mining shaft. Groundwater contamination due to underground mining activity.	
<b>Air Quality</b>	Particulate matter (dust) impacts due to land clearing. Dust entrainment from construction / operations vehicles. Dust from the tailings storage facility where the tailings from the Proposed Project will be deposited. Dust generation associated with blasting activity.	Assessment of significance in the EIR Phase and the undertaking of an Air Quality Impact Assessment.
<b>Noise</b>	Construction activities such as drilling, blasting, road construction, excavations, heavy machinery and earth moving equipment and vehicles can result in a noise nuisance to the sensitive receptors in the area. Noise associated with the up and down movement of the shaft infrastructure during mining operations.	Assessment of significance in the EIR Phase and the undertaking of a Noise Impact Assessment.
<b>Visual</b>	Visual impact associated with construction vehicles and activities on site. Dust from construction activities may contribute to the visual impact of the Proposed Project. Visual impacts associated with the waste rock dumps, headgear, and other associated structures.	Assessment of significance in the EIR Phase and the undertaking of a Visual Impact Assessment.
<b>Traffic</b>	Construction vehicles using the existing road networks to access the Proposed Project site will increase congestion. Damaging of roads due to the weight of the mining vehicles. Construction vehicles using the existing public roads may cause damage to the roads due to the increase in volume of vehicles utilising the roads. Increase in the number of vehicles on the existing networks during the operational phase.	Assessment of significance in the EIR Phase and the undertaking of a Traffic Impact Assessment.
<b>Culture and Heritage</b>	Impacts on previously unknown heritage / cultural / archaeological resources that may be un-earthed during construction.	Assessment of significance in the EIR Phase and the undertaking of a Heritage Impact Assessment.
<b>Waste</b>	Waste will be generated during both construction and operation. It will consist of non-hazardous waste, building rubble, industrial waste and potentially hazardous waste. Indiscriminate disposal will have an impact on both the biophysical and socio-economic environments. Soil, land use and land capability, surface water, groundwater and air quality may be pol-	Assessment of significance in the EIR Phase.

Environmental Aspect	Potential Impact	Proposed method of investigation
	luted. Odours and fumes may lead to a human and / or faunal health risk.	
<b>Incidents</b>	Incidents such as a spillage, flood, fire or explosion may occur during the construction and operational phases which could lead to environmental pollution and a health / safety risk to humans and / or fauna.	Assessment of significance in the EIR Phase.

### 7.1.2 Potential Socio-economic Impacts

**Table 16: Socio-Economic and Cultural / Heritage Impacts Potentially associated with the Proposed Project**

Environmental Aspect	Potential Impact	Proposed method of investigation
<b>Socio-Economic</b>	Potential job creation.	Assessment of significance in the EIR Phase and the undertaking of a Social Impact Assessment (specialist study will be part of the EIAR).
	Expansion of local skills through experience and on-the-job training.	
	Local procurement opportunities.	
	Economic development.	
	Noise intrusion.	
	Dust intrusion.	
	Light intrusion.	
	Influx of people resulting in increase in informal settlements and additional pressure on existing facilities and resources.	
Cracking of houses due to vibrations caused by blasting.		
<b>Safety</b>	Safety of employees during construction.	Assessment of significance in the EIR Phase.
	Safety of employees during operational activities underground.	
	The influx of contractors and job seekers could result in an increase in safety hazards.	
	Road Safety: Increase in construction trucks / heavy vehicles on public roads.	

## 7.2 Potential Cumulative Impacts

Cumulative impacts are regarded as the incremental and combined effects of human activity that pose a significant threat to the environment. Cumulative impacts accrue over time, from one or more sources, and can result in the degradation of valuable resources. Potential cumulative impacts have been identified and are presented in **Table 17**.

**Table 17: Cumulative Impacts Potentially Associated with the Proposed Project**

Environmental Aspect	Potential Impacts	Cause
<b>Climate</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Increased greenhouse gas emissions.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Increased electricity use;</li> <li>■ Increased vehicle usage; and</li> <li>■ Increased use of the Concentrator.</li> </ul>
<b>Air quality</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Degradation of air quality.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The operation of existing and future infrastructure at Dishaba, Tumela and the Concentrator,</li> </ul>
<b>Hydrology</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Surface water pollution; and</li> <li>■ Aquatic systems (ecosystem functioning).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Soil erosion; and</li> <li>■ Soil contamination by chemicals and hydrocarbons.</li> </ul>
<b>Geohydrology</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Groundwater pollution and depletion.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Groundwater contamination from existing tailings storage facility;</li> <li>■ Groundwater contamination due to the underground mining activities; and</li> <li>■ Groundwater depletion due to shaft dewatering pumping.</li> </ul>
<b>Noise</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Increased noise production.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The operation of existing and future infrastructure at Dishaba, Tumela and the Concentrator.</li> </ul>
<b>Socio-Economic</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Safety;</li> <li>■ Aesthetics;</li> <li>■ Regional economic benefit; and</li> <li>■ Traffic.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Increase to existing activities in the area;</li> <li>■ Cumulative impact of the proposed shaft infrastructure and existing infrastructure on the visual aesthetics of the area;</li> <li>■ Generation of possible employment opportunities; and</li> <li>■ The increase in traffic could have an impact on the surrounding public roads in the area.</li> </ul>

---

## 8 Public Participation Process

Public participation is understood to be a series of inclusive and culturally appropriate interactions aimed at providing stakeholders with opportunities to express their views, so that these can be considered and incorporated into the S&EIR decision-making process. Effective public participation requires the prior disclosure of relevant and adequate project information to enable stakeholders to understand the risks, impacts, and opportunities of the Proposed Project.

The objectives of the public participation process can be summarised as follows:

- Identify relevant individuals, organisations and communities who may be interested in or affected by the Proposed Project;
- Clearly outline the scope of the Proposed Project, including the scale and nature of the existing and proposed activities;
- Identify viable project alternatives that will assist the relevant authorities in making an informed decision;
- Identify shortcomings and gaps in existing information;
- Identify key concerns, raised by I&APs that should be addressed in the subsequent specialist studies;
- Highlight the potential for environmental impacts, whether positive or negative; and
- To inform and provide the public with information and an understanding of the Proposed Project, issues and solutions.

### 8.1 The Roles and Responsibilities of the Stakeholder

Registered I&APs (stakeholders) have the right to bring to the attention of the competent authority any issues that they believe may be of significance to the consideration of the application.

The rights of stakeholder are qualified by certain obligations, namely:

- Stakeholders must ensure that their comments are submitted within the timeframes that have been approved by the DEA, or within any extension of a timeframe agreed by the Proponent, EAP or competent authorities;
- Serve a copy of the comments submitted directly to the competent authorities, the Proponent or the EAP; and
- Disclose to the EAP any direct business, financial, personal or other interest that they might have in the approval or refusal of the application.

#### 8.1.1 Role of Stakeholders

The roles of stakeholders in a public participation process usually include one or more of the following:

- Assisting in the identification and prioritisation of issues that need to be investigated;
- Making suggestions on alternatives and means of preventing, minimising and managing negative impacts and enhancing project benefits;
- Assisting in or commenting on the development of mutually acceptable criteria for the evaluation of decision options;
- Contributing information on public needs, values and expectations;
- Contributing local and traditional knowledge; and
- Verifying that their issues have been considered.

---

### 8.1.2 Responsibility of Stakeholders

In order to participate effectively, stakeholders should:

- Become involved in the process as early as possible;
- Register as a stakeholder;
- Advise the EAP of other stakeholders who should be consulted;
- Contribute towards the design of the public participation process (including timeframes) to ensure that it is acceptable to all stakeholders;
- Follow the process once it has been accepted;
- Read the material provided and actively seek to understand the issues involved;
- Give timeous responses to correspondence;
- Be respectful and courteous towards other stakeholders;
- Refrain from making subjective, unfounded or ill-informed statements; and
- Recognise that the process is confined to issues that are directly relevant to the application.

### 8.1.3 Approach to Public Participation

Our approach to public participation is based on the following principals:

- Undertake meaningful and timely participation with I&APs;
- Focus on important issues during the S&EIR process;
- Undertake due consideration of alternatives;
- Take accountability for information used;
- Encourage co-regulation, shared responsibility and a sense of ownership over the Proposed Project lifecycle;
- Apply "due process" particularly with regard to public participation as provided for in the EIA Regulations and DRM Regulations; and
- Consider the needs, interests and values of I&APs.

## 8.2 Methodology

The following activities were undertaken as part of the Scoping Phase:

- Stakeholder identification;
- Authority notification;
- Stakeholder notification;
- Stakeholder and public meetings;
- Compilation of the Proposed Project Issues Trail; and
- Public review of the Draft Scoping Report.

### 8.2.1 Stakeholder Identification

I&APs were identified through several mechanisms. These included:

- A review of the existing database;

- 
- Networking with local business owners, farmers associations, non-governmental agencies, community based organisations, and local council representatives; and
  - Advertising in the press, placement of community notices, and distribution of background information documents (discussed separately).

All I&APs identified were registered on the stakeholder database. The EAP endeavoured to ensure that individuals / organisations from referrals and networking were notified of the Proposed Project, in addition to efforts to notify and identify I&APs at a geographical level. I&APs were identified at the horizontal (geographical) and vertical extent (organisations level). Refer to **Appendix C** for a list of stakeholders captured in the project database.

## 8.2.2 Authority Notification

The prescribed EA application form (in terms of the activities identified within **Section 2.3**) was submitted to the LEDET on 11 February 2013 (refer to **Appendix D**). The LEDET acknowledged receipt of the application form in a letter dated 19 March 2013 and provided the following reference number: 12/1/9/2-W36 (refer to **Appendix D**).

WSP notified the DMR of the intent to hold a notification meeting however, the DMR respectfully declined and request a notification letter be submitted. The letter of notification was submitted to the DMR on 12 February 2013 (refer to **Appendix D**).

WSP notified the DWA of the proposed Project via a DWA notification meeting. The meeting was held in order to clarify the way forward in terms of the WULA process. The meeting took place on 25 February 2013 (refer to **Appendix D**).

## 8.2.3 Stakeholder Notification

### 8.2.3.1 Newspaper Advertisements

Advertisements, announcing the Proposed Project and inviting stakeholders to register, were placed in the following publications:

- The Platinum Weekly on 22 February 2013; and
- The Rustenburg Herald on 22 February 2013.

An additional newspaper advertisement was placed in the above listed newspapers on 10 May 2013, notifying the change in public meeting date. Refer to **Appendix C** for a copy of the newspaper advertisements.

### 8.2.3.2 Site Notices

Site notices, announcing the Proposed Project and inviting stakeholders to register, were placed at the following locations in and around the project area:

- Northam Public Library (24° 57' 59.21" S 27° 16' 20.29" E);
- Smash Block Office (24° 46' 57.66" S 27° 17' 13.35" E);
- Mantserre traditional authorities office (24° 57' 01.32" S 27° 05' 40.70" E);
- Tumela security entrance gate (adjacent to Proposed Project area) (24° 48' 32.57" S 27° 18' 57.26" E);
- Amandelbult Recreation Club (24° 48' 51.58" S 27° 17' 51.16" E);
- 15E Security Entrance (24° 46' 29.35" S 27° 19' 51.83" E);
- Intersection of R510 & road to Zwartklip (24° 48' 32.59" S 27° 19' 02.31" E);
- Security entrance point to the Amandelbult recreation club (24° 49' 44.33" S 27° 17' 23.11" E);

- Tumela Mine reception (24° 48' 15.03" S 27° 17' 53.47" E); and
- Security entrance point (24° 49' 43.27" S 27° 17' 18.59" E).

Refer to **Appendix C** for a copy of the site notice and proof of associated placements.

### 8.2.3.3 Background Information Document

The purpose of a BID is to provide stakeholders with introductory information on the application, the S&EIR process and the public participation process. The BID also provides I&APs who are interested in the project with the opportunity to register as stakeholders by way of completing the registration sheet distributed with the BID. Information on the registration sheet has been used to register stakeholders on a database so that they will receive all future project-related information and invitations to meetings. The registration sheet includes a section for comments and issues, which allows stakeholders an opportunity to provide the EAP with written comments and feedback. A copy of the BID is contained in **Appendix C**.

A letter of invitation and accompanying BIDs were emailed, faxed and posted to existing stakeholders on the database. This mechanism of notification is suitable for all groupings, except for the local communities, many of whom do not have access to these forms of communication. In order to ensure an encompassing notification, sms notifications were sent to stakeholders in local communities for which cell phone numbers were available and copies of the BID were distributed as hand-outs to the local communities, local ward councillors and traditional leaders as well as left at the following locations:

- Tumela Mine reception (24° 48' 15.03" S 27° 17' 53.47" E);
- Smash Block Office (24° 46' 57.66" S 27° 17' 13.35" E);
- Amandelbult Recreation Club (24° 48' 51.58" S 27° 17' 51.16" E);
- Northam Public Library (24° 57' 59.21" S 27° 16' 20.29" E); and
- Mantserre traditional authority's office (24° 57' 01.32" S 27° 05' 40.70" E).

### 8.2.4 Stakeholder and Public Meetings

WSP took part in three separate stakeholder meetings during the project Scoping Phase. The meetings include the following:

- A Community Engagement Forum (CEF) quarterly meeting within which WSP presented the Proposed Project to representatives from the Local Municipality and the District Municipality. The meeting took place from 09:00am – 12:00pm on 08 May 2013 at the Amandelbult Recreational Club;
- A public notification meeting which WSP chaired at the Amandelbult Recreational Club on 11 March 2013 at 16:00. The purpose of the meeting was to notify the public of the progression of the Proposed Project and the upcoming Scoping Phase public meeting; and
- A public meeting was held in order to present the Proposed Project and to ask the public to raise concerns or queries. The public meeting took place at the Amandelbult Recreation Club on 14 May 2013 from 16:30 - 18:30. Invitations to this meeting were sent to all registered stakeholders and transport was provided for stakeholders in neighbouring communities.

The CEF meeting was chaired by the Community Engagement Department (part of RPM Management Team), while the remaining meetings were facilitated by WSP's team and attended by the AAP Project Representatives. The engineers responsible for Project Management and design provided technical input during the respective meetings.

### 8.2.5 Issues Trail

All concerns, comments, viewpoints and questions (collectively referred to as 'issues') have been documented to date and responses issued from RPM Management Team and the Project Management Team. The Issues Trail records the following, as listed below, and is provided in **Appendix C**:



- List of all issues raised;
- Record of who raised the issues;
- Record of where the issues were raised;
- Record of the date on which the issue was raised; and
- Response to the issues (provided by the Team).

## 8.2.6 Public Review of the Draft Scoping Report

### 8.2.6.1 Draft Scoping Report Availability

Copies of the Draft Scoping Report were placed on public review for a period of 83 days from 23 February 2013 to 17 May 2013, at the following venues:

- Tumela Platinum Mine Main Office reception;
- Mantserre Traditional Authorities Office;
- Amandelbult Recreation Club;
- Northam Library; and
- WSP website ([www.wspenvironmental.co.za](http://www.wspenvironmental.co.za)).

All registered stakeholders and commenting departments were notified of the public review period as well as the locations of the Draft Scoping Report via fax and email, post, sms and hand-outs. Issues were received from stakeholders on the Draft Scoping Report.

## 8.2.7 Final Scoping Report Submission

All issues raised during the Scoping Phase of this project have been incorporated into the Final Scoping Report (this document) and will be addressed during the EIR Phase of the project. Once a decision has been reached, the stakeholders will be informed of the next phase of the public participation process.

## 8.3 Analysis of Stakeholders

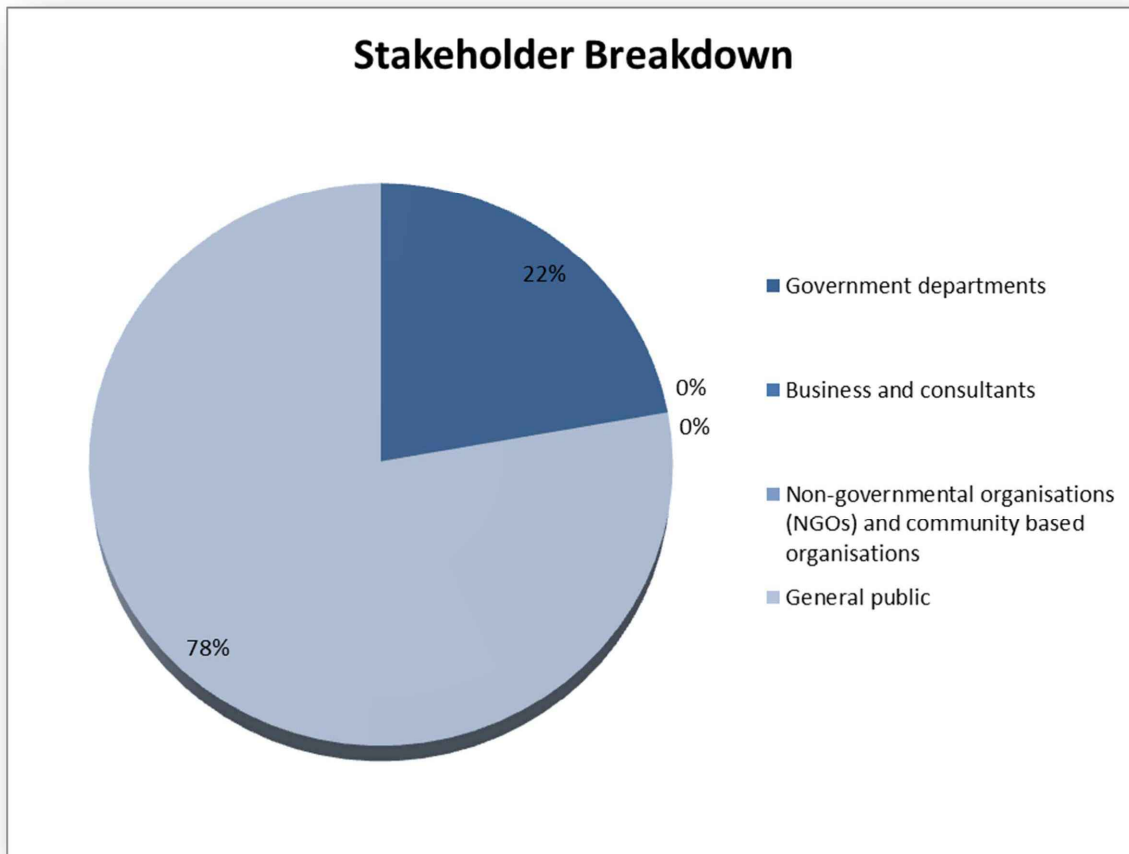
### 8.3.1 Breakdown of the Stakeholders

This section contains an analysis of stakeholders and issues raised during the process to date. **Table 18** provides a breakdown of stakeholders currently registered on the database where as **Figure 21** illustrated such.

**Table 18: Breakdown of Stakeholders Currently Registered on the Database**

Representative sector	Further explanation	No. of stakeholders
Government departments	All tiers of government, namely, national, provincial, and local government. Also inclusive of parastatal organisations such as Transnet and Eskom.	40
Business and consultants	Local and neighbouring businesses dependant on or affected by the mining activities at Tumela Mine. Representatives of consulting organisations that provide services in the area.	0

Non-governmental organisations (NGOs) and community based organisations	Agricultural unions, churches, and environmental NGOs.	0
General public	Local communities, farmers, and other such individuals who may have an interest in the project.	140



**Figure 21: Pie chart showing the Breakdown of the Stakeholders currently Registered on the Database**

### 8.3.2 Stakeholder’s Capacity to Participate

The BID, newspaper advertisements, and site notices were distributed in English. In addition, the BID was translated into Setswana. During the public meetings a Setswana’s translator was available to clarify the Proposed Project, the process, answer questions, and allow for comments to be provided in the local language. It is WSP’s opinion that those on the database have sufficient understanding to participate in the process.

## 8.4 Key Issues and Concerns

A number of issues were raised by stakeholders (including the land owner), regarding the Proposed Project. The following list summarises the significant issues raised during the Scoping Phase:

- The communities surrounding the Mine raised unemployment as a significant issue in the communities. They requested that the employment opportunities resulting from the Proposed Project be made available to the surrounding communities;

- 
- A lack of training opportunities was raised as a significant limiting factor to the communities in terms of applying and successfully obtaining the employment opportunities which are advertised by the Mine;
  - The use of external contractors was raised as a community frustration. The community requested that labour primarily be sourced from the surrounding communities and not from the RPM - Rustenburg Section or any other outlying areas;
  - The community requested local small businesses be given priority in terms of procurement opportunities created by the Proposed Project; and
  - The landowner raised the lease agreement between the Mine and the “Baphalane Ba Mantserre” as a potential risk to the Proposed Project. The Chief of the Mantserre Community indicated that he would oppose the Proposed Project should the lease agreement negotiations not be resolved. However, following this statement RPM consulted the landowner in order to prevent the lease agreement from affecting the Proposed Project. Following this consultation the landowner agreed to run the lease agreement negotiations as a separate process to the S&EIR process.

Please refer to **Appendix C** for a detailed breakdown of all issues raised and responses issued by the Team.

---

## 9 Plan of Study for the Environmental Impact Reporting Phase

The EIR Phase will aim to:

- Address any issues that have been highlighted during the Scoping Phase;
- Evaluate the alternatives for the existing and proposed activities;
- Assess all identified impacts to determine the potential significance of the impact; and
- Recommend mitigation measures for minimising the significance of each impact.

The EIR Phase will comprise of the following activities:

- Public participation;
- Assessment of alternatives;
- Baseline and specialist studies for the existing and proposed activities;
- Identification of potential impacts;
- Impact assessment;
- Identification and description of mitigation measures; and
- Reporting and decision-making.

### 9.1 Public Participation during the Environmental Impact Reporting Phase

The public participation process was initiated during the Scoping Phase, but will continue through the EIR Phase to keep stakeholders informed of Proposed Project developments, and to maintain liaison with authorities. During the EIR Phase public participation activities will include:

- The registration of any additional I&APs;
- The placement of advertisements in newspapers, as identified during the Scoping Phase, notifying I&APs of the public meeting and availability of the Draft EIAR for review;
- The distribution of notification letters to stakeholders informing them of the public meeting and availability of the Draft EIAR for review;
- A public meeting and or focus group meetings, where required, to dispatch project information to stakeholders and facilitate communication between stakeholders and the Proponent; and
- Communication through letters, email, telephonic conversations with authorities and stakeholders throughout the EIR Phase until the respective authorisations have been issued.

Copies of the Draft EIAR will be made available for 40 days for stakeholder and authority review in terms of the NEMA and 30 days in terms of the MPRDA, prior to finalisation and submission of the Final EIAR. This provides stakeholders and I&APs with an opportunity to comment on the Draft EIAR and raise their issues.

Once the Final EIAR (including comments received by stakeholders) has been submitted to the lead delegate authorities a decision will be reached, thereafter stakeholders will be notified of the appeal process.

---

## 9.2 Baseline Studies

### 9.2.1 Scope of Investigations

The primary objective of this phase is to collect adequate baseline information to accurately describe the receiving environment. The level of detail for each aspect of the baseline studies will be determined by the level of confidence required for decision-making. The following aspects of the biophysical and socio-economic environments will be considered in the baseline studies:

- Climate;
- Geology;
- Topography;
- Soil and land capability;
- Land use;
- Flora and fauna;
- Surface-and-groundwater;
- Air quality;
- Visual aspects;
- Cultural heritage; and
- Socio-economic environment.

### 9.2.2 Methodology

#### 9.2.2.1 Desktop Studies

Desktop studies will be the departure point of data collation of various aspects of the receiving environment. The following published resources will be consulted for this purpose:

- Environmental Potential Atlas (ENPAT);
- 1:50 000 government topocadastral maps;
- 1:10 000 ortho photos;
- Land type maps of the region;
- Municipal Demarcation Board (specifically for socio-economic assessment);
- Statistics South Africa (specifically for socio-economic assessment);
- Integrated Development Plans;
- Spatial Development Frameworks;
- Environmental Management Frameworks;
- Binomial Soil Classification System;
- Red Data Books for fauna and flora;
- WR90 published by the Weather Research Commission; and
- Climate data from the Weather Bureau.

Desktop studies will not be limited to the abovementioned resources. Review of existing reports will be carried out, as well as perusal of all related documentation available from the Proponent.

---

### 9.2.2.2 Field Visits

Field visits will be undertaken to verify the information collected at desktop study level, and will facilitate:

- The mapping and ground truthing of impact receptor sites;
- The verification of adjacent and current land cover and land use;
- The verification and status of the site; and
- The verification of adjacent land owners and local inhabitants that may be affected by the project.

### 9.2.2.3 Specialist Studies

Specialists will be appointed to undertake the necessary specialist studies that have been identified during the Scoping Phase. The results of the specialist studies will be utilised to inform the impact assessment and decision-making process. At this stage, the specialist studies envisaged are:

- Air Quality Impact Assessment;
- Noise Impact Assessment;
- Hydrological Assessment;
- Heritage Impact Assessment;
- Blasting Impact Assessment;
- Visual Impact Assessment;
- Traffic Impact Assessment; and
- Social Impact Assessment.

## 9.2.3 Air Quality Impact Assessment

Air quality impacts have been identified as one of the potentially significant environmental aspects of activities which will be undertaken during the construction and operational phase of the Proposed Project. In order to assess these impacts, an air quality impact assessment (AQIA) is required. The aim of this study is to assess the change in air quality related impacts as a result of the Proposed Project. This will be done by baseline environmental characterisation, establishing an emissions inventory, applying atmospheric dispersion modelling and assessing the impacts, as detailed below:

- Baseline Assessment:
  - A site visit, as orientation of the proposed site and surrounding environment is important for the AQIA process;
  - A comprehensive review of the Proposed Project activities will be conducted to ensure that all the possible points of emission releases will be assessed in the AQIA, considering construction phase and operational phase emissions; and
  - A review of available ambient air quality data (if available) for the area will be conducted, with the aim of including background ambient concentrations into the dispersion model to calculate the cumulative impact of emissions from the Proposed Project.
- Emissions Inventory:
  - Compilation of an emissions database in an easily-referenced system with emission rates for all significant releases to atmosphere (point, line and area sources);
  - Calculation of the emission mass, by source, time period, and pollutant. These variables are calculated by using individual emission source information with their associated emission factors, and the respective operational parameters over a determined period of time. These parameters are then used to calculate the total source-related emissions at the Proposed Project. The total source emissions can



---

then be expressed in various forms such as an individual source or group of sources, by pollutant or by period of time (e.g. hour, day, week, month or year);

- The primary pollutants of concern are particulate matter (PM<sub>10</sub>, dust or particulate matter (PM) with a diameter smaller than ten micrometers (µm)) and dust fallout, although during the project, should additional criteria pollutants be identified, these will be included in the AQIA; and
- The final emission inventory will be submitted to the client to approve and sign off before dispersion modelling commences.

■ Dispersion Modelling:

- In order to conduct atmospheric dispersion modelling of the quantified emissions of pollutants at the Proposed Project, ADMS v4.2 will be utilised. ADMS is a new generation air dispersion model designed for short-range dispersion of airborne pollutants in steady state plumes. ADMS incorporates air dispersion based on boundary layer turbulence structure and scaling, including treatment of both surface and elevated sources, and both simple and complex terrain. The ADMS system uses hourly sequential meteorological files with pre-processors to generate flow and stability regimes for each hour that cumulatively offer long-term ambient concentrations whilst also capturing short-term peaks. Maps of plume spread with key isopleths will be generated, used for visual interpretation, whilst statistical output can be compared directly with the latest national and international ambient air quality standards for compliance testing against regulated benchmarks. Other site specific data such as geographic coordinates and a full set of hourly-sequential meteorological data will be integrated into the model;
- The model will be programmed to compute ambient ground-level (1.5m) concentrations of the pollutants mentioned above, based on both long-term (annual / chronic) and short-term (worst-case / acute) scenarios. Model scenarios will be for cumulative impacts (i.e. including background concentrations obtained from existing monitoring data were available), such that statistical output can be compared with applicable ambient air quality standards for compliance assessment;
- Source inventory data (pertaining to pollutant concentrations, discharge velocities and volumetric flow rates, gas temperatures etc.) from the emission inventory detailed above will be used as input for the creation of the dispersion model;
- Other site specific data such as source release dimensions and geographic coordinates, as well as a full set of hourly-sequential meteorological data will be integrated into the model base. WSP will use the most relevant meteorological dataset from the SAWS should there be no on-site data available. Allowance has been made to purchase modelled meteorological data should actual South African Weather Service data not be available; and
- Should it be identified that complex terrain will potentially impact on emissions from the facility; a digital terrain file will be created and incorporated into the model.

■ Air Quality Impact Assessment:

- An AQIA will be required as part of the EIR process to demonstrate the impacts of the Proposed Project on the existing air quality situation of the area, with considerations of construction and operational phases. The report will include all methodological and technical information required to support the findings, as well as focusing on the potential impacts on sensitive receptors.

## 9.2.4 Noise Impact Assessment

The noise impact has been identified as another potentially significant environmental aspect of the activities which will be undertaken during the construction and operational phase of the Proposed Project. In order to assess these impacts, a noise impact assessment is required. The aim of this study is to assess the overall noise impact created as a result of the Proposed Project on both fauna and humans. This will be done by undertaking environmental noise propagation modelling and then assessing the noise impacts, as detailed below:

■ Environmental Noise Propagation Modelling

---

An integrated sound propagation model (according to SANS methodology) will be used to generate noise contours for the study area for each scenario. WSP will make use of the internationally accredited acoustic modelling software, Computer Aided Noise Abatement (CadnaA).

CadnaA environmental noise modelling software developed by Datakustik, Sweden, will calculate future noise levels at discrete noise receptors and/or the noise level over a grid, producing noise isopleths. The software provides an integrated environment for noise predictions under varying scenarios and calculates the cumulative effects of various sources, specified by the user. The model uses ground elevations, meteorological information and source sound power levels to calculate the noise propagation over a region. CadnaA has been utilised in many countries internationally for the modelling of environmental noise and town planning. It is comprehensive software for 3-dimensional calculations, presentation, assessment and prediction of environmental noise, covering noise emissions of industrial plants, parking lots, roads, railway schemes or entire towns and urbanized areas. Noise levels emanating from a source can be calculated at specified receptor points to determine the impact of the noise source. CadnaA is also able to incorporate the complex terrain of a region (if necessary) as well as the effect of the buildings in and around the area of activity at the Proposed Project.

CadnaA is regularly used as a calculation tool for ArcMap where the data and source input data are prepared in a Geographic Information System (GIS) and then exported to CadnaA for calculations. The results are then exported to GIS for final analysis/investigation and map creation.

The different modelled noise levels from the different scenarios (construction and operational) will be compared against the criteria in SANS 10117:2003 and SANS 10103. SANS 10103:2008 (the Measurement and Rating of Environmental Noise with Respect to Land Use, Health, Annoyance and Speech Communication), which gives an indication of the criteria for an assessment of annoyance. SANS 10103:2008 recommends maximum noise levels for residential and non-residential areas.

The following will be conducted:

- Calculation of a noise inventory, including the proposed construction activities and operational phase;
- Input of the noise inventory into a CadnaA model; and
- Determine the impact of noises on surrounding sensitive receptors due to the proposed activities, providing outputs in both tabular and graphical (isopleths) format.

■ Environmental Noise Impact Assessment:

The environmental noise impact assessment report will be compiled summarising the data sources, information obtained, interpretation at a strategic level, limitations and recommendations for further study as well as identifying potential mitigation measures that could be implemented for the Proposed Project.

### 9.2.5 Hydrological Assessment

In order to ascertain the level of impact of the Proposed Project and associated developments on the hydrological environment, and to determine the required mitigatory measures, a hydrological specialist study is required. The hydrological assessment will focus on a number of core factors related to surface water management, including:

- Desktop review and gap analysis;
- Site walkover;
- Hydrological assessment;
- Stormwater management plan; and,
- Water monitoring programme.

These investigations will be used to determine the expected environmental impacts, and to guide the required management and mitigation measures.

- Desktop Review and Gap Analysis:

- 
- A desktop review and gap analysis will be conducted at the outset of the assessment. Relevant available hydrological data (water quality and quantity) will be sourced and reviewed. Data reviewed will include amongst others, relevant reporting generated for the site, pertinent published data and interrogation of available databases. The desktop review will serve to provide a preliminary description of the receiving environment and current infrastructure, and to identify gaps in information; and
  - Where gaps are identified, the relevant mine representative will be notified and recommendations put forward in terms of addressing the shortfalls.

■ Site Walkover:

An initiation interview will be conducted with relevant RPM representatives to ascertain the level of understanding of the Proposed Project hydrology prior to conducting the site walkover. The initial site walkover will take the following factors into consideration:

- General catchment characteristics (e.g. soils, vegetation, land uses etc.);
- Current state of the drainage channels, streams and rivers (e.g. riparian zone, channel characteristics, channel vegetation etc.) in the vicinity of the development;
- Current and proposed water and land use practices within each sub-catchment; and
- Existing surface water monitoring programme (if available).
- Hydrological nodes will be identified during the site walkover and these nodes will be used as points of reference in the hydrological assessment. From Google Earth imagery and other available topographical data, it is envisaged that no more than five nodes will be required in order to establish the hydrological characteristics and potential impacts of the mine on the receiving hydrological environment.

■ Hydrological Assessment:

- The flow volumes and peak discharges occurring within the area will be altered during the lifespan of the mine (operational, decommissioning and post closure phases). The changes in peak discharges and flow volumes for the hydrological nodes identified during the site walkover will be modelled and quantified for various milestones in the mines lifespan. Proposed surface water management practices that are to be implemented by the Mine will be factored into the hydrological modelling; and
- A comparative exercise will be conducted on the modelling results in order to quantify the impacts on flow volumes as a result of the changes in land use associated with the mine. Based on these results, mitigatory measures will be recommended.

■ Storm Water Management Plan:

The information gathered during the desktop review and site walkover will be consolidated to develop a conceptual storm water management plan (SWMP) for the Mine. The conceptual SWMP model will incorporate specifications as set out in the following documents:

- Requirements of the DWA GNR 704 Guideline Document for the Implementation of Regulations on Water Use of Mining and Related Activities Aimed at the Protection of Water Resources; and
- DWAF Best Practice Guidelines (DWAF, 2006).

A SWMP must address the impacts of mine operations on water flow and quality in the hydrological cycle as well as the impacts of the hydrological cycle on mine operations. The main objectives of the SWMP are as follows:

- Protection of adjacent water resources from pollution;
- Prevention of erosion of the catchment and water courses;
- Maintain downstream water quality and quantity requirements;
- Minimise the current and long terms impacts of mine operations on downstream water users; and
- Preservation of the natural environment.

---

This is achieved by the following measures:

- Confine / divert any unpolluted water to a clean water system, and polluted water to a dirty water system;
- Both clean and dirty water systems should be designed and constructed in such a way so as to prevent cross contamination between the clean and dirty water systems;
- The clean and dirty water systems should be designed to contain the 50 year storm event, and should not lie within the 1:100 year flood line or within a horizontal distance of 100m from any watercourse; and
- Maintenance of the storm water management infrastructure.

The objective of the conceptual SWMP will therefore be to ensure environmentally sound, safe, continual and cost effective mining practices in terms of water resources protection. The conceptual SWMP will incorporate the proposed mine development plan to determine the management requirements for the various mining phases (i.e. operational, decommissioning and post closure).

■ Water Monitoring Programme:

- It has been assumed that there is currently no water quality monitoring programme on the watercourses in the vicinity of the proposed mine development. A monitoring programme will therefore be developed to support various management actions. The Best Practice Guideline - G3: Water Monitoring Systems will be consulted when developing the program for the site. The water monitoring programme will define the sampling methodology, location, frequency and analytical programme; and
- Water samples will be obtained from the hydrological nodes identified. Samples will be submitted for full screening purposes. It is assumed that no more than five samples will be required. These will be utilised as an indication of baseline water quality data. Due to the non-perennial nature of the watercourses in the vicinity of the site, it is expected that sampling will only be possible directly after rainfall events.

## 9.2.6 Heritage Impact Assessment

Due to the lack of heritage surveys undertaken on the study area in the past it was identified that a heritage impact assessment (HIA) be undertaken in order to ensure that the heritage resources in the area be identified and correctly documented. The aim of the HIA study is to assess the presence of archaeological remnants in the project area which may be negatively impacts upon. This will be done by undertaking the following activities:

- Identify all objects, sites, occurrences and structures of an archaeological or historical nature (cultural heritage sites) located on the property;
- Assess the significance of the cultural resources in terms of their archaeological, historical, scientific, social, religious, aesthetic and tourism value;
- Describe the possible impact of the proposed development on these cultural remains, according to a standard set of conventions;
- Propose suitable mitigation measures to minimize possible negative impacts on the cultural resources;
- Recommend suitable mitigation measure should there be any sites of significance that might be impacted upon by the proposed development; and
- Review applicable legislative requirements.

## 9.2.7 Blasting Impact Assessment

Due to the nature of the Proposed Project the undertaking of a blast impact assessment is deemed necessary. The aim of the study is to assess the possible negative impact which the blasting activities associated with the sinking of a new mining shaft. This will be completed by undertaking the following activities:

- 
- A site visit will be undertaken for the following reasons:
    - To understand the location of the site and its surroundings;
    - To identify structures found within a 3,500m radius of possible influence area;
    - The structure profile is required for determining the quality and type of structures found in this area; and
    - The structure information is used to determine allowed ground vibration and air blast limits and possible human perception that may be applicable where people are possibly.
  - A site evaluation is undertaken which entails the following:
    - The evaluation of the mining operations and the possible influences from blasting operations;
    - The methodology consists of modelling the expected impact based on expected drilling and blasting information for the project. Various accepted mathematical equations are applied to determine the attenuation of ground vibration, air blast and fly rock. These values are then calculated over distance investigated from site and shown as amplitude level contours. Overlay of these contours with the location of the various receptors then give indication of the possible impact and expected result of potential impact; and
    - Evaluation of each receptor according to the predicted levels will then give an indication of possible mitigation measures to be done or not. The possible environmental or social impacts will then be addressed in the detailed EIR Phase investigation.
  - All the information will then be contained within a report and submitted as supporting documentation with the EIAR.

### 9.2.8 Visual Impact Assessment

Due to the nature of the Proposed Project the undertaking of a visual impact assessment is deemed necessary. The aim of the study is to assess the possible negative impact which the proposed infrastructure associated with the sinking of a new mining shaft. This will be completed by undertaking the following activities:

- The Scoping Study:
  - The scoping study is a desktop assessment which identifies the core visual elements within the project brief, and how these proposed landscape modifications relate spatially to the surrounding land use and communities. This section makes use of GIS mapping and a viewshed analysis of possible project heights to graphically depict the possible visibility of the project to inform the field survey.
- Field Survey and Baseline Study:
  - The baseline requires a field study from which the nature of the landscape character of the site and surrounds and the receptor significance are defined. The landscape character is evaluated in terms of land cover, topography and prominence. The receptor section comprises a survey of specific locations to verify the visibility, the scenic quality of the location (sense of place) and the sensitivity of the receptors. A preliminary understanding of the nature of the impacts is obtained in terms of the visual absorption capacity of the landscape and potential visual intrusion. This study concludes with a statement on the significance of the landscape character, whether further visual impact assessment is required and which significant receptor locations (Key Observation Points) the proposed landscape modification should be assessed for visual impacts.
- 3D Visualisation and Photo Montages:
  - Photo Montages are a photographic representation of a proposed landscape modification as viewed from a specific location. Making use of GIS 3D modelling software, the 3D model of the project can be represented from a specific view angle and then by means of Photoshop computer software, inserted onto a photograph taken from a similar angle at an earth based location. To ensure that this representation is ethical, VRM Africa subscribes to the Proposed Interim Code of Ethics for Landscape Visualisation. This code states that professional presenters of realistic landscape visualisations are responsible for promoting full understanding of proposed landscape changes; providing an honest and

---

neutral visual representation of the expected landscape, by seeking to avoid bias in responses and demonstrating the legitimacy of the visualisation process.

Presenters of landscape visualisations should adhere to the principles of:

- Access to information;
- Representativeness; and
- Accuracy.

The purpose of the 3D modelling and photo montage section is two-fold. The first aspect focuses on the design of the landscape modifications, where real time visualisations can be utilised as a component of the design process to ensure that the final product is such that visual impacts from Key Observations Points are adequately reduced, ensuring a greater predictability to the outcome. The second aspect relates to the public participation component of the EIR where the final outcomes of the landscape modifications including mitigation and a strong model proof, can be effectively portrayed and disseminated to stakeholders and to decision makers.

■ Visual Impact Assessment and Mitigation Criteria:

The criteria for the assessment of visual impacts for the Proposed Project are based on the Department of Environmental Affairs and Development Planning (DEA&DP) Guideline for involving visual and aesthetic specialists in the EIR Process. Impacts will be defined for all the proposed landscape modifications and the defined alternatives based on the following criteria:

The following criteria are specified in the DEA&DP visual guidelines.

- Distribution of Impacts: Advantages and disadvantages;
- Extent: The spatial or geographic area of influence of the visual impact;
- Duration: The predicted life-span of the visual impact;
- Intensity: The magnitude of the impact on views, scenic or cultural resources;
- Probability: The degree of possibility of the landscape modification occurring; and
- Significance: A synthesis of the above.

In order to retain the visual quality and landscape character, management actions must become an essential part of the guidelines throughout construction, and operation. This ensures that the lowest possible impact is created by the project. Management not only depends on mitigation but also a continual effort to educate, and to regulate land use and future modification. Although they are recommendations, lack of management actions has the potential to result in greater and more consequential visual impact. Specific management actions will be defined to avoid or reduce the levels visual impacts based on the following DEA and Development Planning Guideline for involving visual and aesthetic specialists in EIR processes definitions:

- Avoidance: “Consideration should be given to avoiding potential impacts altogether”;
- Mitigation: “These may include adjustments to the siting and design of the project, the careful selection of finishes and colours, the use of earthworks (such as berms) and planting to provide visual screening, as well as dust control where required”;
- Compensation and offsets: “Where avoidance and mitigation cannot achieve the desired effect, various forms of compensation could be considered”;
- Rehabilitation and restoration: “Both on-site and off-site landscape rehabilitation of areas affected by the project should be considered...This may include re-instating landforms and natural vegetation, provision of landscaped open space, or other agreed upon facilities”; and
- Enhancement: “Where the Proposed Project is located in run-down areas, or degraded landscapes, the improvement of these areas could form part of the visual management actions for the project.”



---

### 9.2.9 Traffic Impact Assessment

The numbers of vehicles which will be utilising the municipal roads as well as RPM - Amandelbult Section roads during the construction phase and the operational phase of the Proposed Project will be determined during the EIR Phase. The exact values expected will be portrayed within the EIAR following the undertaking of the traffic impact assessment (TIA). The TIA will be carried out in two phases: scoping investigation and the detailed traffic impact assessment. The methodology to be undertaken for the TIA includes, but is not limited to the following.

- The scoping investigation will entail:
  - Definition of study area (this includes identification of affected public roads);
  - Site visit and traffic survey (traffic counts at affected intersections);
  - *Status quo* investigation of internal and external roads;
  - Identification of the transport requirements during the construction period;
  - Confirmation of the potential trip generators during the construction period;
  - Confirmation of the project methodology; and
  - Identification of the assessment variables.
- The detailed TIA will entail:
  - Identification of the potential traffic impact:
    - Calculation of the expected trip generation during the construction of the Proposed Project; and
    - Identification of potential road safety risks.
  - Capacity analysis:
- Quantification of the traffic impact due to the mining activities;
- Capacity analysis of existing network (congestion levels); and
- Assessment of the impacts that may accrue (road safety).
  - Worker transport (public transport provision and adequacy of existing public transport facilities, if existent);
  - Impact significance of the identified impacts;
  - Impact rating; and
  - Mitigation measures (proposed road upgrades and road safety management).
- In addition, the following tasks will be carried out as part of the TIA:
  - Liaison with the professional team members to extract relevant information (two meetings);
  - Preparation of a study report with findings, conclusions and recommendations; and
  - Liaison with the relevant roads authorities.

### 9.2.10 Social Impact Assessment

WSP will undertake a site investigation and desktop socio-economic impact assessment during the EIR Phase of the Proposed Project. It is WSP's opinion that the Proposed Project does not necessitate a full socio-economic impact assessment, as the nature of the project, as a "replacement" of an existing operation, may only result in indirect impacts, and therefore does not necessitate a detailed study.

During the EIR Phase, the desktop socio-economic assessment will explore and evaluate the impacts identified in the Scoping phase in terms of the socio-economic receiving environment. A brief overview of the study methodology is provided below.



- Review of documentation: - The study is likely to included, but may not be limited to, the following documents:
  - Project plan - feasibility and implementation plans, specifically pertaining to labour requirements, training and local social initiatives;
  - AAP Social and Labour Plan - relevant to the local operations;
  - AAP Socio-economic Assessment Toolbox, community engagement plans, and other relevant socio-economic documentation;
  - Past socio-economic impact assessments for RPM – Amandelbult Section (if available); and
  - The District and Local Municipality - Integrated Development Plans and Local Economic Development documentation (where available).
- Consideration of issues raised by stakeholders: - Issues and concerns raised by stakeholders during the Scoping phase stakeholder engagement process will be considered; and
- Consideration of specialist studies: - the findings of specialist studies undertaken during the EIR Phase, which may have a bearing of the social environment surrounding the mine, will also be considered, including: Heritage, Noise, Blast, Visual, Traffic, Hydrological and Air Quality Impact Assessments.

The information obtained from the study will then be incorporated into the EIAR in order to inform the commenting and authorising authorities with more information about the potential socio-economic impacts of the Proposed Project.

### 9.3 Environmental Impact Assessment Methodology

The environmental impact rating will be undertaken according the AAP's 5x5 Impact Rating Matrix utilised to determine the significance of the potential impact as a result of the Proposed Project. This will entail:

- The identification of different environmental aspects, impacts, receptors and resources for construction and operational phases and, where relevant, for decommissioning;
- The identification of receptors and resources will provide an indication of the areas sensitivity to impact; and
- The identification of the significance of impacts, including the probability of occurrence; the intensity or severity of the change to the environment; the timing of the impact; duration over which an impact will be experienced; and the spatial extent of the impact.

**Table 19: Environmental Significance Determination**

Aspect	Consequence				
<b>Schedule</b>	Less than 1% impact on overall project timeline	May result in overall project timeline overrun equal to or more than 1% and less than 5%	May result in overall project timeline overrun of equal to or more than 5% and less than 20%	May result in overall project timeline overrun of equal to or more than 20% and less than 50%	May result in overall project timeline overrun of 50% or more
<b>Cost</b>	Less than 1% impact on the budget of the project	May result in overall project budget overrun equal to or more than 1% and	May result in overall project budget overrun of equal to or more than 5% and less than 20%	May result in overall project budget overrun of equal to or more than	May result in overall project budget overrun of 50% or more

Aspect	Consequence				
		less than 5%		20% and less than 50%	
<b>Quality of Deliverables</b>	No significant impact on quality of deliverables	Quality issues that can be addressed prior to handover	Quality issues that can be addressed during ramp-up	Quality issues that require significant intervention to maintain performance	Quality issues that require significant intervention to achieve performance
<b>Safety/ Health</b>	First aid case / Exposure to minor health risk	Medical treatment case / Exposure to major health risk	Lost time injury / Reversible impact on health	Single fatality or loss of quality of life / Irreversible impact on health	Multiple fatalities / Impact on health ultimately fatal
<b>Legal &amp; Regulatory</b>	Low level legal issue	Minor legal issue; non-compliance and breaches of the law	Serious breach of law; investigation/report to authority, prosecution and or moderate penalty possible	Major breach of the law; considerable prosecution and penalties	Very considerable penalties and prosecutions. Multiple law suits and jail terms
<b>Reputation/ Social/ Community</b>	Slight impact - public awareness may exist but no public concern	Limited impact - local public concern	Considerable impact - regional public concern	National impact - national public concern	International impact - international public attention
<b>Environment</b>	Minimal environmental harm – L1 incident	Material environmental harm – L2 incident remediable short term	Serious environmental harm – L2 incident remediable within LOM	Major environmental harm – L2 incident remediable post LOM	Extreme environmental harm – L3 incident irreversible

Likelihood		Risk Level				
<b>5 – Almost Certain</b>	90% and higher probability of occurring	11 (M)	16 (H)	20 (H)	23 (H)	25 (H)
<b>4 – Likely</b>	Between 60% and less than 90% of occurring	7 (M)	12 (M)	17 (H)	21 (H)	24 (H)
<b>3 – Possible</b>	Between 30% and less than 60% of occurring	4 (L)	8 (M)	13 (H)	18 (H)	22 (H)

Likelihood		Risk Level				
<b>2 – Unlikely</b>	Between 1% and less than 30% of occurring	2 (L)	5 (L)	9 (M)	14 (H)	19 (H)
<b>1 – Rare</b>	Less than 1% of occurring	1 (L)	3 (L)	6 (M)	10 (M)	15 (H)

Table 20: Interpretation of the Risk Level

Risk Rating	Guideline for Matrix
<b>21 to 25 Extreme (EX)</b>	<b>Eliminate, avoid, implement specific action plans/procedures to manage and Monitor</b>
<b>13 to 20 High (H)</b>	<b>Proactive Management</b>
<b>6 to 12 Medium (M)</b>	<b>Actively manage</b>
<b>1 to 5 Low (L)</b>	<b>Monitor and manage as appropriate</b>

### 9.3.1 Cumulative Impacts

In terms of EIA Regulations it is a requirement that the EIR Phase take cognisance of cumulative impacts. In fulfilment of this requirement, the impact assessment will take cognisance of any existing impact sustained by the operations, any mitigation measures already in place, any additional impact to environment through continued and proposed activities, and the residual impact after mitigation measures.

It is important to note that cumulative impacts at national or provincial level will not be considered in this assessment, as the total quantification of external companies on resources is not possible at the project level due to the lack of information and research documenting the effects of existing activities. Such cumulative impacts that may occur across industry boundaries can also only be effectively addressed at a provincial and national government level.

---

## 10 Way Forward

This Final Scoping Report contains:

- A description of the existing and proposed activities.
- A description of the alternatives considered to date.
- An outline of the proposed process to be followed.
- Information on the Proponent, EAP and stakeholders who have chosen to participate in the project.
- An outline of the environment in which the projects fall.
- Information on the potential environmental impacts to be studied in more detail during the EIR phase of the project.
- Information on the proposed specialist studies to be undertaken.
- Information on the comments and concerns raised to date.

The Final Scoping Report has been submitted to the delegated lead authorities responsible for authorising this project, in this case the Limpopo DMR and the LEDET, who are considering the findings in consultation with various other authorities and will issue a decision to proceed onto the next phase, that being the EIR phase.

---

# 11 References

Anglo American Platinum Limited, <http://www.angloplatinum.com/default.asp>, date accessed: 22 May 2013.

Anglo American Platinum., (2011): Amandelbult Community Engagement Plan. South Africa.

Anglo American Platinum, (2012): Tumela Central Shaft Project: Project Charter Anglo American Platinum Limited. South Africa.

Anglo American Platinum (2012): Tumela Mine – Central Shaft Surface Infrastructure Pre-Feasibility Study. Anglo American Platinum Limited. South Africa.

Anglo American Platinum, (2013): Tumela Central Shaft Project: Shaft Surface Position (Rev A).

Anglo American Platinum, (2006): Rustenburg Platinum Mines Amandelbult Section: Biodiversity Action Plan (BAP). Anglo American Platinum Limited. South Africa.

Anglo American Platinum, (2013): Tumela Central Shaft EMP/ EIA presentation. Anglo American Platinum Limited. South Africa.

Anglo American Platinum, (2013): Final Amandelbult MES presentation. Anglo American Platinum Limited. South Africa.

Anglo American Platinum, (2013): Amandelbult: Final Mine Extraction Strategy. Anglo American Platinum Limited. South Africa.

Allan, K. (2008): Environmental Impact Assessment for additional Ventilation Infrastructure, WSP Environmental Pty (Ltd), South Africa.

Allan, K. (2008): Scoping Report for Rustenburg Platinum Mines Rustenburg Section for Additional Ventilation Shafts. WSP Environmental Pty (Ltd), South Africa.

Anglo Platinum Limited: Dishaba and Tumela Mines SEAT report, 2011: Socio-Economic Assessment Toolbox. Anglo American Platinum Limited internal documentation

Bekker, T. (2007): Anglo Platinum Limited - Amandelbult Section: Merensky Project. WSP Environmental Pty (Ltd), South Africa.

Fourie, J. (2012): Geochemical assessment of underground concrete backfill material, Amandelbult Section, Dishaba Mine. Geostratum, South Africa.

---

Gemmell, (2013): Tumela Central Shaft Project: Hydrological Impact Assessment. WSP Environmental. South Africa.

Postma, B. (2011): Amandelbult Integrated Waste Water Management Plan. Clean Stream Environmental Services, South Africa.

Postma, B. and du Toit, P. (2011): Regulation GN 704 Surface Water / Stormwater Management Audit. Cleanstream Environmental Consultants, South Africa.

Shippon, J., Gebhardt, Z., and Geyer, S. (2012): Dishaba Mine Backfill Project: Final Scoping Report. Prime Resources, South Africa.

Shippon, J., Gebhardt, Z., and Geyer, S. (2012): Dishaba Mine Backfill Project: Draft Environmental Impact Assessment and Environmental Management Programme. Prime Resources, South Africa.

Statistics South Africa, 2011 Census and 2007 Community Survey data (Statistical Release report (revised), 2012.

Van der Walt, K. (2012): Dishaba Backfill Project: Ecological Scan. Strategic Environmental Focus (Pty) Ltd, South Africa.

Van Schalkwyk, J. (2012): Heritage Impact Assessment for the proposed Dishaba Mine Backfill project, Amandelbult region. Prime Resources, South Africa.

Wildy, E. (2011): Biodiversity assessment of three sites proposed for organic farming within Union and Dishaba Mines. WSP Environmental Pty (Ltd), Limpopo Province, South Africa.

Anonymous,. (2012) Limpopo State of the Environment Report (Phase 1) (Africon & Environomics Joint Venture, 2004).

Anonymous, (2011): Community Development Commitments included in Anglo American Platinum Limited's Social and Labour Plans report. Anglo American Platinum Limited. South Africa.

Anonymous, (2011): Thabazimbi Local Municipality (2012/3): Integrated Development Plan. Available online at: [www.thabazimbi.gov.za](http://www.thabazimbi.gov.za).

Anonymous, (2011): Waterberg District Municipality (2011/2): Integrated Development Plan. Available online at: [www.waterberg.gov.za](http://www.waterberg.gov.za).

---

# Appendices



---

## Appendix B - WSP Capability Statement



## WSP Environment & Energy Capability Statement

UNITED  
BY OUR  
DIFFERENCE



# CORPORATE PHILOSOPHY, STRUCTURE AND SERVICES

## Our Vision

Our vision is to provide an independent, innovative and professional service whereby we strive to achieve a balance between environmental protection, social desirability and economic development.

WSP Environment & Energy (WSP) is a leading South African environmental consultancy with a broad range of expertise and over 20 years experience in the regional environmental market. Whilst we are operated by WSP Environmental Ltd, a global environment and energy consultancy listed on the London Stock Exchange (WSP Group plc), we are also committed to transformation in our operational region having achieved Level 4 BEE compliance in South Africa. As part of a global business we provide the regional marketplace with a dynamic blend of local and global expertise.

WSP's Environment and Energy has offices in Durban, Cape Town, Johannesburg and Pietermaritzburg. WSP is owned by WSP Group Africa Ltd, a 900-member strong subsidiary of WSP Group plc, an international FTSE 250 management, engineering and built environment consultancy, with 10,000 employees worldwide, which is listed on the London Stock Exchange. As part of WSP Group, we have access not only to a broad range of environmental and sustainability specialists, but to leading international engineers across the full range of disciplines: energy, electrical, civil, and structural, among others.

WSP has received a number of international awards for our contribution to sustainable development including the Acquisitions Monthly Environmental Advisor of the Year Award for 2010, and the Winner of the 2009 and 2010 Big Tick Award for Climate Change, awarded by the Prince of Wales's Business in the Community charity, based upon our global climate change consulting services to clients.







## Our Values

- Trust
- Sharing and Supporting
- Pride and Passion
- Sustainability
- Innovation

By incorporating our principles of Trust, Sharing and Support, Pride and Passion, Sustainability and Innovation into our day to day operations, we are able to deliver an independent, insightful and professional service to our clients to achieve a balance between environmental protection, social desirability and economic development.

Stronger regulatory control, market pressures, stakeholder awareness and global concerns, have caused businesses to adopt an innovative, proactive approach to the evaluation of environmental issues. The provision of sound environmental advice is therefore becoming an essential ingredient for progressive business management and success. By fully understanding our clients business, associated operations and requirements, and combining this knowledge with our strong legal and technical competence we are able to provide our clients with sound strategic advice and improved environmental performance.

We pride ourselves on our reputation for delivery and technical excellence and provide a broad range of environmental and energy related services across a range of economic arenas including the industrial, mining, financial, tourism and public sectors.

## STAFF WELFARE

Creating the optimum social and environmental framework for staff is essential if we are to attract and retain the intellectual capital that sets our business apart from our competitors. We actively promote capacity building through staff and knowledge transfers between our international offices.







## OUR SERVICES

WSP brings to the South African marketplace a dynamic blend of local expertise and global cutting-edge technology. Being part of a large global company, we are also able to draw on considerable international resources and expertise accumulated over many years.

We have a well established team of environmental scientists and our team can provide a range of environmental solutions to businesses in the following fields:

- Air Quality Management
- Asbestos Surveys
- Climate Change Adaptation and Mitigation Strategies
- Contaminated Land and Remediation
- Corporate Social Responsibility
- Due Diligence, Compliance and Liability Audits
- Energy Efficiency and Management
- Energy Project Development and Investment
- Environmental Engineering
- Environmental Management Systems
- Environmental Project Management
- Human Health and Ecological Risk Assessment
- Environmental Toxicology
- Environmental Training
- Geotechnical Investigations
- Groundwater Monitoring and Modelling
- Integrated Environmental Management
- Public Participation Programs
- Renewable Energy
- Surface Water Hydrology
- Sustainability Management Systems
- Sustainability Reporting
- Sustainable Solutions
- Waste Engineering
- Waste Management, Waste Characterisation and Delisting



There is a growing awareness that if an organisation or project is to succeed in the 21st century it will need to meet new challenges by working in partnership with key stakeholders and integrating social and environmental factors into business decisions alongside the more traditional economic issues. We deliver proactive sustainability solutions, offering real business benefits, which include reducing operating costs, protecting corporate reputations and meeting stakeholder aspirations in society.

## CORPORATE SUSTAINABILITY

Our key capabilities and services include the following:

- Corporate Sustainability Strategy, Reporting and Verification
- Benchmarking Tools (e.g. Sustainability Assessment Technique)
- Sustainability and Value Management Systems
- Corporate Governance and Communicating with Stakeholders (King and Turnbull Reports)
- Community Enhancement and Corporate Citizenship
- Teambuilding and Employee Volunteering Programmes
- Green Procurement
- Energy Efficiency, Renewable Energy and Climate Change Strategies
- Waste Management and Eco-labelling
- Local, Regional and National Strategy Planning (e.g. Local Agenda 21 policy and plans)

Our Sustainability Assessment Technique (SAT) is designed to visually represent the assessment, and superimposed onto it are the impacts associated with a development. Used throughout the project life cycle, it will identify the threats and opportunities associated with the development.





A changing climate threatens those businesses that cannot adapt in an efficient manner. How businesses adapt can influence the longevity and profitability of your business. WSP assesses the climate change risk to business using holistic outlook taking into account economic, social and environmental factors. Incorporating business resilience, resistance and continuity plans will ensure your business can react positively to a business interruption and will be in a far better position to prevent, survive, prosper and gain an advantage over less prepared competitors.

## CLIMATE CHANGE ADAPTATION AND MITIGATION STRATEGIES

WSP offers an integrated approach to business climate risk management, utilising global expertise across all spheres. Our offering can be adapted to meet the needs of your business.

Our basic capabilities include the following:

- Climate Risk and Opportunity Assessments
- Detailed Carbon Inventory Analyses
- Business Adaptation Strategy
- Assisting with Carbon Disclosure Project (CDP) responses
- Renewable Energy and Energy Efficiency
- Carbon finance services:
  - Assisting with access to specialised finance for sustainable energy investments.
  - Carbon Credit projects (Kyoto CDM, voluntary market etc.)
  - Supporting client transactions via carbon offset market.

## FOOTPRINTING SERVICES

Responding to climate change can be best perceived as a journey, starting with Greenhouse Gas (GHG) inventory and acquiring an understanding your organisation's climate change risks. Further development of this response includes exploring the broader environmental impacts of products and embedding sustainability of one's of climate change specialists, but experts across various environmental disciplines, including sustainability, toxicology, ecology and waste management. WSP are specialists in the field of footprinting – from life cycle assessments for Apple's Macbook laptops, water footprinting for GlaxoSmithKline, ecological footprinting for the City of London or carbon emissions modelling for the South African recycled oil industry, we have a proven track record in developing solutions to our clients' sustainability needs.

WSP's footprinting services include:

- Comprehensive Product Life Cycle Assessment (LCA)
- End-to-End Carbon Footprinting and Carbon Labelling (PAS2050 methodology)
- Water Footprinting
- Ecological Footprinting





Understanding energy usage and potential efficiency gains within a business or industry sector is becoming increasingly important in a world of tightening legislative requirements and increased pressure from governments and business shareholders to lower carbon emissions resulting from production processes. We are able to operate in close co-operation with the WSP Energy Africa group and Green Buildings Business of WSP, and in house engineering teams to provide energy advice on efficiency options in line with the needs of individual business requirements.

## ENERGY MANAGEMENT AND EFFICIENCY

### Our integrated services include:

- Energy risk analysis
- Process alternatives assessment
- Business, industry or country specific assessments of energy efficiency potential
- Development of solution implementation plans

### Specialist services offered by WSP Green Building Services include:

- Sustainability in the built environment consultants
- Consulting to professional team to assist in designing sustainable buildings
- Facilitate and administer Green Star accreditation process
- Architectural, urban and engineering background



Integrated Environmental Management (IEM) covers all aspects of environmental management in the project life cycle, from planning and design, to construction, operations, decommissioning and closure.

## INTEGRATED ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT

We offer environmental services appropriate to all project phases such as:

- Risk assessments and fatal flaw analyses
- Scoping studies
- Route/site/process alternatives assessment
- Public participation programmes
- Environmental impact assessments
- Environmental management plans
- Environmental management programmes
- Environmental monitoring of construction and operational activities
- Closure plans

Our studies are all conducted according to the regulatory frameworks of the countries in which we operate, so that we can obtain regulatory approval for our clients. Internationally funded projects are carried out in the manner specified by the lending agency and to world standards of best environmental practice.

In particular, we have experience in the following business sectors:

- Mining
- Infrastructure development (power lines, pipelines, roads, telecommunications)
- Building construction
- Manufacturing
- Industry
- Eco-tourism
- Water development projects
- Waste disposal
- Community development





Public participation involves a process resulting in improved decision-making. The process should lead to a joint effort by stakeholders, technical specialists, the authorities and the proponent who work together to produce more informed decisions.

Strong and independent facilitation, coupled with the necessary empathy for people's concerns, is required during meetings with stakeholders. At times, it is necessary to direct stakeholder concerns to the authorities rather than to the proponent.

## STAKEHOLDER ENGAGEMENT

WSP offers comprehensive stakeholder engagement services, which include the following:

- Design of public participation processes
- Identification of stakeholders
- Compilation and maintenance of stakeholder databases
- Co-ordination and facilitation of public meetings, stakeholder workshops, multi-sectoral meetings and Open Houses/Days
- Compilation of proceedings of meetings and verification of issues
- Compilation of issues trails
- Liaison with authorities, clients and stakeholders to facilitate negotiations
- Report compilation detailing public participation process on projects

WSP provides strategic advice and operational support to a range of clients across five continents. We strongly believe that our team is at the forefront of Environmental Systems (EMS) in a way, which integrates environmental issues into existing business systems and operations.

## ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS AND TRAINING

In particular we can offer the following services:

- Raising awareness and providing information on the full range of EMS approaches and recognised standards (e.g. EMAS, ISO 14001:2004 series, OHSAS 18000 etc)
- Advanced training for EMS implementation and auditing
- System design, gap analysis and implementation on specific projects including the development of procedures
- Auditing throughout the development of an EMS and identification of the potential for system improvement and pre-preparation audits
- Development and review of legal registers
- Software based implementation tools and training
- Supply chain management protocols and coaching programmes
- Certified EMS Implementation Training Course
- Certified EMS Internal Auditors Training Course

Our EMS Team can draw on experience of EMS work across a broad range of economic sectors including: construction, manufacturing (e.g. BMW), mining, financial services, government agencies and departments and office based organisations.





The Air Quality Unit (AQU) offers in-depth experience in all phases of air quality management, from calculation of emissions inventories, developing and implementing monitoring programs, air quality modelling in support of Environmental Impact Assessments or permit applications to designing pollution abatement strategies and emission control systems.

## AIR QUALITY MONITORING AND DISPERSION MODELLING

State of the art equipment, coupled with strategic modelling and risk assessment techniques enable WSP to evaluate problems accurately and engineer workable solutions to complex and potentially costly environmental issues.

### Our core air quality management services include:

- Source, fence line and ambient air quality monitoring
- Air emissions inventories
- Atmospheric source-dispersion modelling
- Meteorological monitoring and data analysis
- Best practical available technology assessment
- Pollution controls system and cost-benefit analysis
- Quantitative health risk assessments for hazardous air pollutants
- Occupational health and safety monitoring
- Greenhouse emissions and carbon footprinting



The Contaminated Land Unit (CLU) in WSP offers consulting services, ranging from site assessment and investigation through to risk assessment, and contracting services ranging from environmental remediation and on-going monitoring to regulatory compliance and sign-off. At present, clean-up contracts can be planned as procured services via a tender process with WSP CLU acting as consultants or on the basis of a turnkey design and supply project.

## LAND RESTORATION AND GROUND ENGINEERING

### CONSULTING SERVICES:

- Contaminated land and geohydrological assessments
  - Desk top and feasibility studies
  - Full ground investigations
  - Design, implementation and management of groundwater monitoring systems
  - Soil and groundwater sampling and monitoring for organic and inorganic contaminants
  - Geohydrological and contaminant plume modelling
- Human health and risk assessment
  - Quantitative and qualitative risk assessment
  - Source, release mechanism, pathway receptor relationships
  - Determination of the need for remediation
  - Determination of site-specific remediation, goals and targets
  - Waste management
- Waste management strategy development
  - Waste classification, hazard rating and delisting
  - Landfill site assessment and investigation
  - Waste treatment option assessments
- Surface water hydrology
  - Surface water management plans
  - Runoff modelling
  - Water balances
  - Floodline assessments
  - Water licensing and water use registrations
  - Reserve determination
- Geotechnical investigations
  - Infrastructure and development
  - Foundation design engineering

### CONTRACTING SERVICES:

WSP offers a full service remediation business, local and international, with a solution driven approach to remediation projects of all sizes and types.

We have a track record in negotiated settlements of environmental contamination issues and provide an integrated technical, financial, legal and environmental service to ensure the right solution.

Services include:

- Site investigations
- Land option appraisals
- Commercial risk evaluation
- Material classification and treatment studies
- Technical and financial feasibility studies
- Laboratory and field trials
- Risk-based remediation design
- Regulatory authority consultation
- Remediation contracting



## LIABILITY TRANSFER

The outsourcing of environmental liabilities using Active Transfer™ allows a business to eliminate environmental liabilities without losing control of its assets. WSP is partnered with Willis and is capable of providing risk management, environmental engineering and financial modelling to provide a cost effective and permanent solution.

## DUE DILIGENCE, COMPLIANCE AND PRE-ACQUISITION AUDITING

As southern Africa becomes more and more part of the 'Global Village', increased awareness of environmental liabilities facing business and the risks associated with sub-standard environmental performance, will intensify. Our auditing services are designed to assess all the environmental risks and liabilities associated with commercial and industrial businesses and their assets, including identifying any latent environmental damage, regulatory non-compliance and third party liabilities.

## ENVIRONMENTAL FINANCE

WSP advises on business and project risks presented by environmental and operational issues. Using quantitative techniques favoured by financial analysts, models and forecasts are generated to assess, for example, the cost of environmental liabilities, asset impairment issues, or the impacts of future regulation and policy on the project or business enterprise.

We can therefore quantify risk, whether adverse or positive, in monetary terms and develop financial tools that when integrated with technical solutions from other parts of the business, lead to the development of a total risk management solution. This manifests itself in the implementation of strategies ranging from basic control measures through to elaborate financing tools, such as captive insurance and alternative risk transfer (ART).





The WSP is utilising its expertise in environmental sustainability and the built environment to provide consulting advice to clients on optimal planning / urban design for sustainable outcomes. WSP, along with traffic engineers, housing specialists and economists, have been involved with the development of Local Area Plan (LAP) projects for various municipalities within South Africa.

## SUSTAINABLE MASTERPLANNING

Our client offerings within this field include:

- Environmental guidance from conceptual planning to detailed design.
- Development Risk Assessment, Including 'No-go' Options.
- Strategic Environmental Impact Assessment & Identification of opportunities.
- Development Parameters Assessment.
- Integrated Assessment GIS and Mapping.
- Land-use management (LUMs) advice.
- Project implementation plans.



# CONTACT US:

WSP has offices located in Johannesburg, Durban, Pietermaritzburg and Cape Town.

## JOHANNESBURG OFFICE:

WSP House, Bryanston Place Office Park  
199 Bryanston Drive  
Bryanston, 2021  
South Africa  
P O Box 5384  
Rivonia 2128, RSA  
Tel +27 (0)11 361 1380  
Fax +27 (0)11 361 1381

E-mail: [wspe@wspgroup.co.za](mailto:wspe@wspgroup.co.za)

## CAPE TOWN OFFICE:

3rd Floor  
35 Wale Street  
Cape Town 8001  
South Africa  
P.O. Box 2613  
Cape Town 8000, RSA  
Tel +27 (0)21 481 8700  
Fax +27 (0)21 481 8799

E-mail: [wspe@wspgroup.co.za](mailto:wspe@wspgroup.co.za)

## DURBAN OFFICE:

WSP House, 1 on Langford  
Langford Road  
Westville 3629  
South Africa  
P O Box 1442  
Westville 3630, RSA  
Tel +27 (0)31 240 8860  
Fax +27 (0)31 240 8861

E-mail: [wsped@wspgroup.co.za](mailto:wsped@wspgroup.co.za)

## PIETERMARITZBURG:

Suite 7B  
Cascades Office Park  
21B Cascades Crescent  
Cascades 3202  
PO Box 689  
Hilton 3245, RSA  
Tel: +27(0)33 347 5391  
Fax: +27(0)33 347 5391

E-mail: [wsped@wspgroup.co.za](mailto:wsped@wspgroup.co.za)

UNITED  
BY OUR  
DIFFERENCE







## Appendix D - Public Participation – Scoping Phase

Stakeholder Database

Site Notice

Background Information Document

Newspaper Advert

Letters of Notification

Issues Trail

Stakeholder Meeting Records

---

## Stakeholder / Authorities Database

## STAKEHOLDER DATABASE

Name	Company
A Potgieter	Parastatal-University of Limpopo
Amanda Mooney	Prime Resources
B.L. Mogale	Baphalane Mantserre Traditional Council
B.M. Mokoka	Baphalane
Beauty Maguga	PR Councillor
Benjamin Mokoka	Anglo Tumela
Danie Van Aswegen	Anglo American Platinum
Danilla Breedt	WSP
Elsabie Bushby	HATCH
Enock Makete	Anglo Platinum
Ephraim Sekhu	Mantserre Community
Hermanus Prinsloo	Anglo American Platinum
Jan Greyling	Anglo American Platinum
Johanna Moshaba	SMSH Block Ward Committee
Julia Mathebula	SYC
Karen Koen	Prime Resources
Keitumetse Makhubela	Rethabile Village
Keitumetse Mothegwe	Rethabile Village
Kgosana Saltiel Ramokoka (sub-Chief)	Mantserre Community Development Trust
Kgosi J Ramokoka (Chief)	Baphalane Traditional Council
Koko Elizabeth Lamola	Ward 03 Ward committee
Lebang Gaobepe	Anglo American Platinum
Lesego Manzini	Anglo American Platinum
Libby Redding	Anglo American Platinum
Lorraine Thebe	Rethabile Village
Lucas Baifetse Mogale	Baphalane Mantserre
Lucas Selemale	Baphalane Traditional Council
M.I Ranokoka	Baphalane Mantserre
Mabusela Maphutii	Constituency Office Northam
Mapule Raditlhalo	Rethabile Village
Mokoka	Baphalane Mantserre
Mr. Stephen Molefe(Chairperson)	Sebilong Communal Property Association
Muzi Molazi	Anglo American Platinum
N.A Takensi	Ward 11 Rethabile Village
Nishi Haripursad	Anglo American Platinum
Nomsa	Ward committee
Nozipho Gumede	Anglo Platinum
Ntabiseng Thebe	Tumela Village



Onkemetse Motona	Rethabile Village
P.I. Kgalegi	Traditional Authority
P.I. Siko	Mokgalwana
Patricia Ntombizanele Nonyanda	Ward 03 Ward committee
Paul Muller	HATCH
Percy Chake	Ward Committee - Youth Council Smash Block
Peter Monegi	Baphalane Mantserre
Phenyo Sephoti Baphalane	Traditional Council
Pretty Modisane	Rethabile Village
Ralton Maree	Anglo American Platinum
Risenga Mahlebu	SIM
S. Dialo	Mantserre Traditional Council
S. Matsietsa (Principal)	Chromine School
S.R. Moatshe	Mantserre Traditional Council
S.W. Mogale	Thabang Children's Home
Saligh Cader	Anglo American Platinum
Saltiel Ramokoka	Baphalane Mantserre
Segale Pilane	Anglo American Platinum
Selaelo Sekgabela	Disability Council
Sinah Diale	Kgoffa Mautsesse
Station Commissioner	SAPS Thabazimbi
Stephen Lerumo	Smash Block Ward 33
Tumisang Masilo	Office of the Speaker, ward coordinator
Vinesh Dilsook	Anglo American Platinum
Z.O. Ziba Thabang	HBC
Zelda Warriach	Rethabile Village
Mr Molefe	Northam Councilor
Councillor Sikwane	Northam Councilor
cllr Lerumo	Smashblock Councilor
ClIr Matsietsa	Rethabile Location
cllr Masilo	Rethabile Location
cllr Fisher	Thabazimbi
E. Baloyi	Thabang Children's PLHIV
B. Mmamba	Thabang Children's PLHIV
S. Matlala	Mmantserre
Tshepo Makgopole	Mmantserre
Rifilwe Ditswene	Mmanserre
Boitumelo	Mmantserre
D. Thandeka	Smash Block
Wiseman Phohleli	Smash Block
Molapo	Smash Block
Keketso Koboba	Smash Block

Mama Ditsele	Smash Block
Johana Mashaba	Smash Block
Myeni Ntombi	Smash Block
Margaret Nkotso	Smash Block
Thandi Qibi	Smash Block
K. Motshelamad	Northern Ext 6 2362
Mankwa Phumile	-
Reuben Mothamme	-
Japhta Mmebe	-
Morgan Mbhakani Mncube	Mmantserre
Johannes Monene	Mmantserre
S. Sitole	Smash Block
Aubrey Mokgoso	Rethabile
Nkhoesa Poloko	Rethabile
Rethabile Molapo	Rethabile
Kagisho Mabogola	Rethabile
Collen Maunntlala	Rethabile
Keithemetse Makhubela	Rethabile
Lena Mabitsela	Rethabile
T Motlomelo	Rethabile
Johannes Mokgaetsi	Northam
Sithole Samson	Northam
Hendrick	Northam
Bosney Meslas	Community
Thabiso Khumalo	Community
Lerato Ndlovu	Community
Catherine Sikwane	Ward 08 Zimbi Councillor
Unipha Moraphula	Rethabile
Gorden Tshithango	Golden General Trading
Phineas Nkhumane	Mmantserre
Sandile	Litsheke
Sibongile Nobhangaye	Smash Block
Gideon Thabo Theko	Northam
Sello Tshepiso	Northam
John Motlhoki	Northam
RB Morare	Smash Block
Karabo Komane	-
Joseph Letageng	Northam
M. May	Northam
Lemogang Moabi	Northam
Katrena Morabudi	Northam RDP
Pailly Mofamme	-
Kate Kekana	Northam RDP

Precious Mpunzi	Northam RDP
Elizabeth Mokoba	Mmantserre
Johannes Mogale	Mmantserre
Solomon	Mmantserre
Alfred M.	Mmantserre
Juta Ditshwena	Mmantserre
Jimmy B	Mmantserre
Lilian Setsita	Mmanserre
Sentomile Molapo	Smash Block
Khayalake Maseti	-
Ramakoka Lebogani	Mmantserre
Moses Ramokoka	Mmantserre Royal Family
Boitumelo Chirwa	Mmantserre
Petrus Modibedi	Mmantserre
Zamikhaya Sikhunana	Smash Block
Bhekaphezulu Aphiwe	Smash Block
Nelson Mqhwayo	Smash Block
Oyintando Thandeka	Smash Block

## AUTHORITY DATABASE

Name	Department
ANDREW SALOMON	SAHRA
Azwihangwisi Mulaudzi	DMR
B Tladi	DoE - Limpopo Educ Dev Trust
Bafedile Moselane	Moses Kotane Local Municipality
Bafedile Moselane	Moses Kotane Local Municipality
C.S. Sikhane Thabazimbi Local Municipality	Thabazimbi Local Municipality
Clr. Maria Fetsang Mokati Thebe	Moses Kotane Local Municipality
D Magadzi	Dept of Public safety & Liaison
Dumisani Sibayi	SAHRA (HEAD office)
Foster Baloyi	LEDET
Jane Mulaud	DWA
Katie Smuts	SAHRA
M Rapola	Dept of Social Development
M.E. Semadi	Thabazimbi Local Municipality
Madibela	Municipality
Maluleke Vusumuzi	LEDET
Mayor P. Mosito (Mayor)	Thabazimbi Local Municipality
Molatelolo Mabitsele	Thabazimbi Local Municipality
Mr. Motaung	Thabazimbi Local Municipality
Ms. Nono Dince (Municipality Manager)	Moses Kotane Local Municipality
N D Masemola	Prov. Dept of Education

P.A. Moatshe	Thabazimbi Local Municipality
Phillip Hine	SAHRA
R. Mashego	Waterberg district
Refilwe Mothiba	DWA
Robert Mashe	LEDET
S Lekganyane	Local Gov. & Housing
Stephen Lerumo	Thabazimbi Local Municipality
Sylvia Matsietsa	TBZ Municipality
Tinyiko Malungani	LEDET
Tjale Kalela Phillip	DWA (Primary contact)
Bafedile Moselane	-
Ms Nono Dince	-
Ms Sandra Mafisa	-
-	Speaker Secretary
-	Mayor Secretary

**Please note that the contact details have been removed from the table due to confidentiality reasons. This database will be updated on a continuous basis throughout the Environmental Authorisation Process.**

## Site Notice

---

**Final Site Notice**



# ENVIRONMENTAL AUTHORISATION

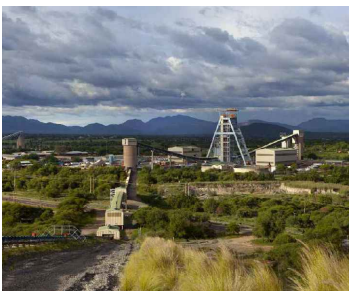
Notice of environmental authorisation process, environmental management programme amendment and a water use license application in accordance with the National Environmental Management Act (No. 107 of 1998) as amended (NEMA), the Minerals and Petroleum Resources Development Act (No. 28 of 2002) (MPRDA), and the National Water Act (No. 36 of 1998) (NWA), respectively.

**Proponent:**  
**Rustenburg Platinum Mines – Amandelbult Section**

**Project Location:**  
**±15 km's north of Northam**

**Project Co-ordinates:**  
**24°48'24.12"S, 27°19'17.07"E**

**Independent Environmental Assessment Practitioner:**  
**WSP Environment and Energy**  
**PO Box 5384**  
**Rivonia, 2128**



## Environmental authorisation processes for the proposed Tumela Central Shaft Project, Tumela Mine, Amandelbult Section in the Limpopo Province.

Tumela Mine is an operational mine located north of Northam in the Limpopo Province. Rustenburg Platinum Mines – Amandelbult Section proposes to develop a new shaft including associated infrastructure. The Tumela Mine has revised its Business Plan to access resources on both the Merensky and the UG2 reef horizons, located on the farm Schildpadnest 385 KQ via a new shaft (the Tumela Central Shaft). The envisaged activities include a Main shaft with headgear and surface infrastructure, 2 ventilation shafts (downcast and upcast), a waste rock dump, refrigeration plant(s), water management infrastructure and a main Eskom substation.

The project involves activities listed in terms of the NEMA, as amended, Government Notice Regulation (GN. R) 544 and 545 including (but not limited to): activities 9, 12, 13, and 23 of GN. R 544 and activity 5 of GN. R 545, therefore a Scoping and Environmental Impact Assessment process will be undertaken in accordance with GN. R 543. Water uses listed in the NWA are considered relevant and will require a water use license in terms of Section 21 of the NWA. In addition, the MPRDA requires an amendment to the existing Environmental Management Programme Report due to the expansion of activities/infrastructure within the mine lease area.

An application for authorisation was submitted to the Limpopo Economic Development, Environment and Tourism on 11/02/2013. A notification letter was submitted to the Department of Mineral Resources on 12/02/2013. The project is in communication with the DWA regarding the WUL application process.

WSP Environmental (Pty) Ltd has been appointed as the Environmental Assessment Practitioner to undertake the authorisation process on behalf of Rustenburg Platinum Mines – Amandelbult Section.

In order to ensure that you are registered as a Stakeholder or would like to participate and find out more about the project, please submit your

name, contact information and interest in the matter to Jared O'Brien.

### WHAT IS STAKEHOLDER ENGAGEMENT?

A process in which potential stakeholders are informed about the project and given an opportunity to comment on, or raise issues relevant to the proposed activities.

### WHO ARE STAKEHOLDERS?

Any person, group of persons or organisation interested in and / or affected by an activity; and any organ of state that may have jurisdiction over any aspect of the activity.

### SCOPING REPORT

The Scoping Report will be made available from 22/02/2013 to 03/04/2013 for public review at the following locations:

- Tumela Mine Main Office;
- Office of traditional authorities (Montserre);
- Amandelbult Recreation Club;
- Northam Library; and
- WSP's website: [www.wspenvironmental.com](http://www.wspenvironmental.com)

### PUBLIC MEETING

A Public Meeting will be held to inform the public of the proposed project. The details of this meeting are as follows:

**Amandelbult Recreation Club**  
**(11/03/2013, 16:00- 17:00).**

Should you wish to attend the Public Meeting, please respond to Jared O'Brien by 8 March 2013.

### FOR MORE INFORMATION, OR TO REGISTER AS AN INTERESTED OR AFFECTED PARTY, CONTACT:

**Jared O'Brien**  
**WSP Environment and Energy**

**T** 011 361 1396  
**F** 086 505 3939  
**E** [Jared.OBrien@WSPgroup.co.za](mailto:Jared.OBrien@WSPgroup.co.za)

PO Box 5384, Rivonia, 2128

**Site Notice Photo Plate**

# Tumela Central Shaft Project - Site Notices (Photo Plate)



Site Notice 1 - Northam Public Library (24° 57' 59.21" S 27° 16' 20.29" E)



Site Notice 2 – Intersection adjacent to the Project area (24° 48' 34.44" S 27° 19' 14.05" E)

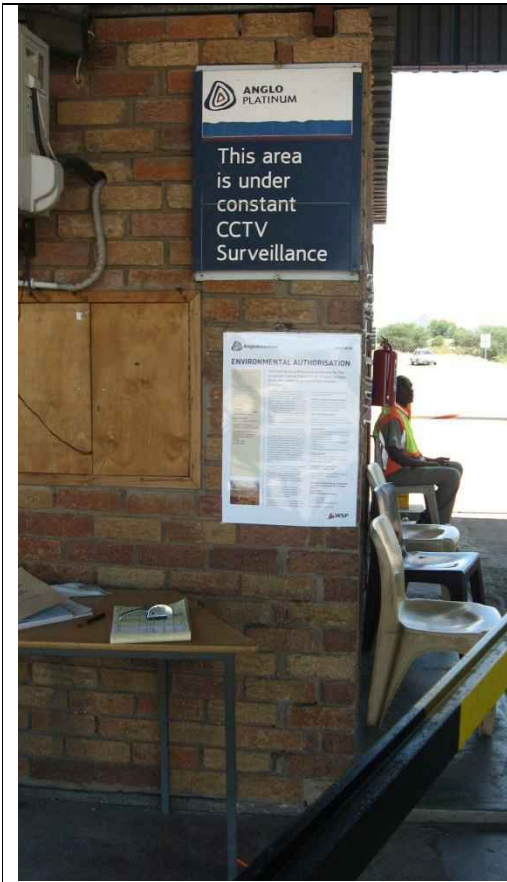




Site Notice 3 - Smash Block Office - (24° 46' 57.66" S 27° 17' 13.35" E)



Site Notice 4 - Mantserre traditional authorities office - (24° 57' 01.32" S 27° 05' 40.70" E)



Site notice 5 - Tumela security entrance gate (to proposed project area) - (24° 48' 32.57" S 27° 18' 57.26" E)



Site Notice 6 – Amandelbult Recreation Club - (24° 48' 51.58" S 27° 17' 51.16" E)





Site Notice 7 - 15E Security Entrance - (24° 46' 29.35" S 27° 19' 51.83" E)



Site Notice 8 – Intersection of R510 & road to Zwartklip- (24° 48' 32.59" S 27° 19' 02.31" E)



Site Notice 9 - Security entrance point to the Amandelbult recreation club- (24° 49' 44.33" S 27° 17' 23.11" E)



No Image Available

No Image Available

Site Notice 10: Tumela Mine reception – (24° 48' 15.03" S 27° 17' 53.47" E)



Site notice 11: Security entrance point - (24° 49' 43.27" S 27° 17' 18.59" E)

---

Background Information Document (English & Tswana)

**English**

# NOTICE OF THE ENVIRONMENTAL AUTHORISATION PROCESSES FOR THE PROPOSED TUMELA CENTRAL SHAFT PROJECT, TUMELA MINE LOCATED AT AMANDELBULT SECTION NORTH OF NORTHAM, LIMPOPO PROVINCE.

## Detailed Project Description

Rustenburg Platinum Mines - Amandelbult Section (Amandelbult Section) comprises two mines; Tumela Mine and Dishaba Mine. In addition, Amandelbult Section also includes a concentrator plant at which the ore extracted from the Dishaba and Tumela Mines is processed. Amandelbult Section is an operational mine located north of Northam in the Limpopo Province. The Tumela Mine has revised its Business Plan to access resources on both the Merensky and the UG2 reef horizons, located on the farm Schildpadnest 385 KQ via a new shaft (the Tumela Central Shaft). The new shaft will be located in the Limpopo Province within the Thabazimbi Local Municipality (NP 361) and the Waterberg District Municipality (DC 36), approximately 40 km south of Thabazimbi, 15 km north of Northam and 100 km north of Rustenburg (see **Appendix A** for a locality map).

The Tumela Upper Mine comprises a series of small incline shafts and shallow raise bored shafts. The Merensky and UG2 Reefs on this shallower infrastructure will be depleted within the next five years. The ore body on both Merensky and UG2 around this shallower infrastructure are being depleted and necessitates additional hoisting capacity from depths exceeding 800 metres below surface. An additional Central Shaft is required in order to arrest the depleting production rate of the Tumela Mine. It is proposed that the Central Shaft Project will increase production to above 4 Mega tons per annum for the Tumela Mine. The objective of the Central Shaft Project will be to install infrastructure to access the 15 East mining area (refer to **Appendix B**), to greater depths on both the Merensky and UG2 reef horizons (rock layers containing mineral deposits), which will ensure production of ore from the 15 East mining area by 2019. The infrastructure will be designed for a capacity of 250 kilo tons per month (ktpm) however, only 125 ktpm will be handled during the first eight years of operation.

The envisaged activities/ infrastructure include: a Main shaft headgear and surface infrastructure, 2 ventilation shafts (downcast and upcast), a waste rock dump, refrigeration plant(s), additional electrical reticulation and instrumentation (including a main Eskom substation); compressed air infrastructure, emergency power generation infrastructure, mine stores (including: explosives shed, timber yard, winder house, lamp house, salvage yard, and workshops), water management infrastructure, offices (including change-houses), waste management systems, and security systems (including access control).

In order for the proposed activities to commence the Amandelbult Section requires authorisation from various government Departments in line with relevant environmental legislation. The Limpopo Economic Development, Environment and Tourism (LEDET), the Department of Mineral Resources (DMR), and the Department of Water Affairs (DWA) will be responsible for authorising the Scoping and EIA process in accordance with the National Environmental Management Act (No. 107 of 1998) (NEMA), the Environmental Management Programme Report amendment (EMPR) process in accordance with the Minerals and Petroleum Resource Development Act (No 28 of 2002) (MPRDA) and the Water use License Application (WULA) process in accordance with the National Water Act (No. 36 of 1998) (NWA), respectively.

**WSP Environment and Energy (WSP)** has been appointed as the independent environmental assessment practitioner to undertake the environmental authorisation process for the project and to facilitate stakeholder engagement.

## ***Purpose of this Document***

---

This background information document (BID) introduces all stakeholders to the proposed project. This document forms part of the stakeholder consultation process, undertaken as a component of the environmental authorisation process and is intended to provide stakeholders with adequate information to comment on the project.

The BID details the project, the environmental authorisation process, the role of stakeholders in the process as well as to encourage stakeholders to comment on the project, ask questions and raise issues that should be included in the project documents. Aside from this document, at various stages of the environmental authorisation process, information and reports will be made available for stakeholders to comment on.

## ***Legal framework***

---

In accordance with NEMA, Government Notice Regulation (GN. R) 544 and 545, the undertaking of certain listed activities requires environmental authorisation.

The activities listed in GN. R 544 associated with the proposed project includes (but are not limited to):

- Activity 12: The construction of facilities or infrastructure for the off-stream storage of water, including dams and reservoirs, with a combined capacity of 50,000 cubic metres or more, unless such storage falls within the ambit of activity 19 of Notice 545 of 2010; and
- Activity 23: The transformation of undeveloped, vacant or derelict land to-
  - I. Residential, retail, commercial, recreational, industrial or institutional use, inside an urban area, and where the total area to be transformed is 5 hectares or more, but less than 20 hectares, or
  - II. Residential, retail, commercial, recreational, industrial or institutional use, outside an urban area, and where the total area to be transformed is bigger than 1 hectare but less than 20 hectares.

The activities listed in GN. R 545 associated with the proposed project includes (but are not limited to):

- Activity 5: The construction of facilities or infrastructure for any process or activity which requires a permit or license in terms of national or provincial legislation governing the generation or release of emissions, pollution or effluent and which is not identified in Notice No. 544 of 2010 or included in the list of waste management activities published in terms of section 19 of the National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act No. 59 of 2008) in which case that Act will apply.

Application for environmental authorisation (in the form of a Scoping and EIA process) for activities listed in GN. R 544 and 545 was submitted to the LEDET on 11 February 2013.

The following water use activities listed under Chapter 4, Section 21 of NWA are considered relevant and will require authorisation in the form of WUL:

- 21 (g): disposal (storage) of water containing waste.

A meeting with the DWA has been undertaken in order to notify the Department and to detail the way forward for the WULA process.

Furthermore, Amandelbult Section is required to undertake an EMPR amendment process, in line with the MPRDA due to the alteration/ expansion of activities within the mine lease area. A notification letter has been submitted to the DMR to indicate the commencement of the environmental authorisation process.



### Stakeholder Consultation Process

The purpose of stakeholder engagement is to consult with interested and affected parties in the public and private sectors in the decision-making process on projects which may affect them. The process aims to develop and maintain open channels of communication between the project team and stakeholders. This process provides stakeholders with the opportunity to express their views and concerns regarding the proposed project through project correspondence. The environmental assessment practitioner documents the views and concerns of stakeholders, and makes the project team and relevant authority(s) aware of issues that need to be considered during the compilation and evaluation of the potential risks and impacts associated with the project.

### Who is a Stakeholder?

Any person, group of persons or organisation interested and/ or affected by the proposed development.

To become a registered stakeholder and to receive further correspondence about the EIA/ EMPR amendment process, or to provide comment on the proposed project, kindly send your contact details and comments to Jared O'Brien:

Tel: 011 361 1396  
Fax: 086 505 3939  
Address: P.O. Box 5384, Rivonia, 2128  
Email: Jared.O'Brien@wspgroup.co.za

A comment sheet has is attached to this document for your convenience.

## Stakeholder Engagement

The first steps are to notify the public and identified stakeholders of the proposed project and invite all stakeholders to a public meeting through the following mediums:

- Newspaper advertisements in the Rustenburg Herald and the Platinum Weekly on 22 February 2013;
- Site notices in and around the project area on 22 February 2013;
- Written notification letters to surrounding landowners and municipal ward councillors on 22 February 2013; and
- Distribution of the BID to stakeholders on 22 February, 8 & 9 March 2013 & 30 April 2013.

### PUBLIC MEETING

A public meeting will be held in order to outline the details of the project to stakeholders and provide an opportunity for stakeholders to raise questions and indicate potential issues or risks associated with the project. The details of the meeting are as follows:

- Venue: Amandelbult Recreation Club
- Date: 30 April 2013
- Time: 16:00 pm - 17:00 pm

Should you wish to attend the Public Meeting, please respond to Jared O'Brien by 29 April 2013.

## Scoping Report and EIAR/EMPR amendment Report for Public Review

A Scoping Report has been compiled in accordance with the NEMA and the MPRDA, and outlines the process that will be followed for stakeholder engagement and for EIA Phase of the project. The report describes the receiving environment and lists the potential impacts of the project as identified in the Scoping Phase. The report indicates the specialist studies (including methodologies) that will be undertaken to investigate identified impacts. The draft Scoping Report is available for public and state department review for a period of greater than 40 days prior to submission to the LEDET and the DMR.

### PUBLIC REVIEW OF SCOPING REPORT

The Scoping report is available from 22 February 2013 to 3 May 2013 for public review at the following locations:

- Tumela Mine Main Office;
- Office of traditional authorities (Mantserre);
- Amandelbult Recreation Club;
- Northam Library; and
- WSP's website ([www.wspenvironmental.com/publicreview](http://www.wspenvironmental.com/publicreview)).

Subsequent to the Scoping Report, an EIAR/ EMPR amendment report will be compiled. This report will outline the stakeholder consultation process and include all comments or issues raised during the process. Additionally, the report will rate the anticipated impacts against a ratings table in order to assess the severity, duration, extent and significance of the impact, and include any cumulative impacts on the receiving environment. Mitigation measures will be developed in order to minimise negative impacts associated with the project. The draft EIAR/ EMPR amendment will also be placed on public and state department review for a period of 40 days prior to submission to the LEDET and the DMR.

Kindly register with Jared O'Brien in order to receive information about the location of the draft reports and review period via email, facsimile, telephone, registered mail and/ or SMS. Any comments received will be addressed and included in the report prior to the final drafts being submitted to the responsible departments for review and authorisation.



# Registration and Comments Sheet

To be a registered stakeholder and ensure all comments and queries regarding this project are accurately documented and addressed please forward your comments and contact details with the attached response sheet to Jared O'Brien by 12 August 2013:

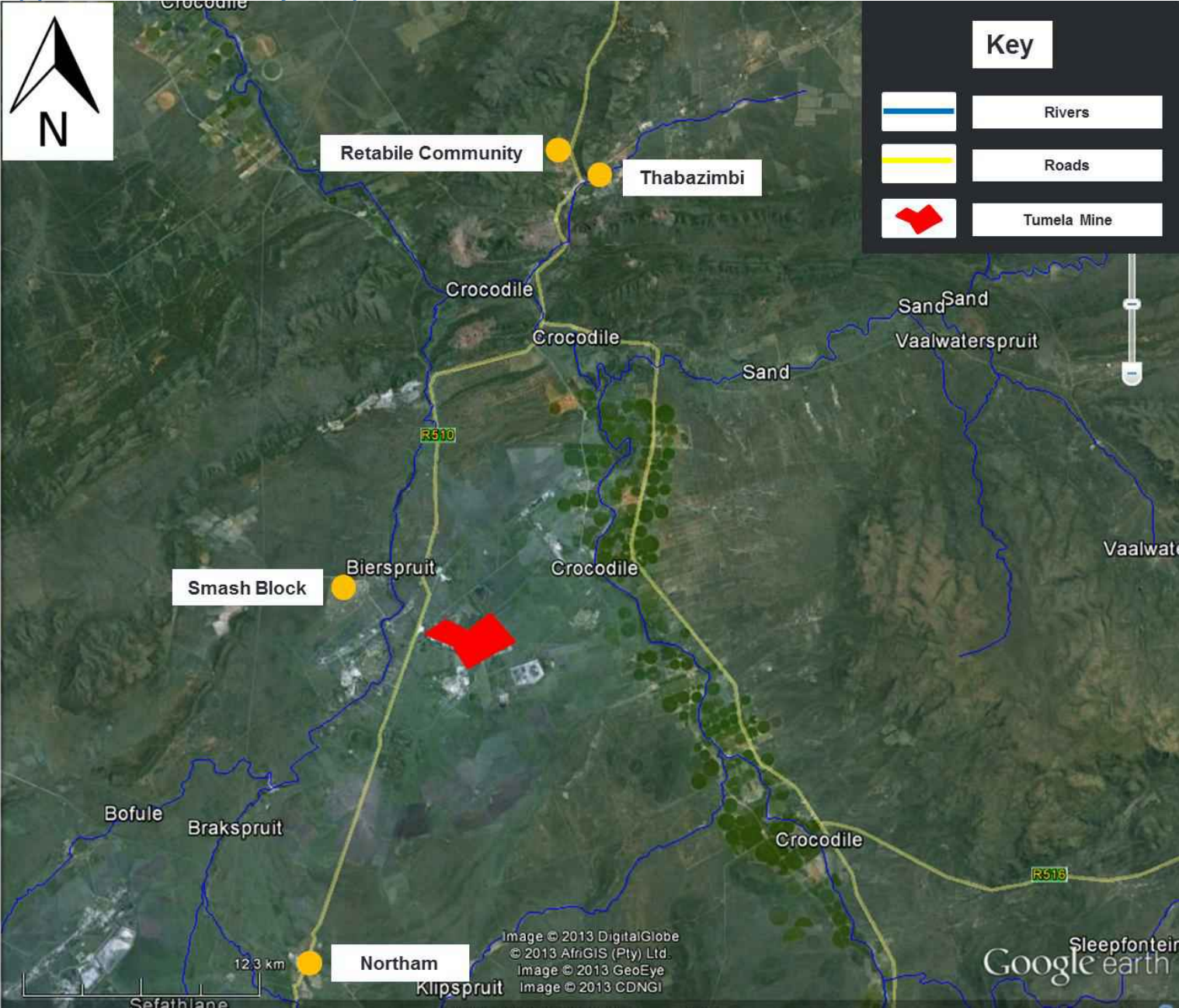
**Jared O'Brien**  
**WSP Environmental (Pty) Ltd**  
**Address:** P.O. Box 5384, Rivonia, 2128  
**Tel:** 011 361 1396  
**Fax:** 086 505 3939  
**Email:** Jared.O'Brien@wspgroup.co.za

Please insert your personal details below:

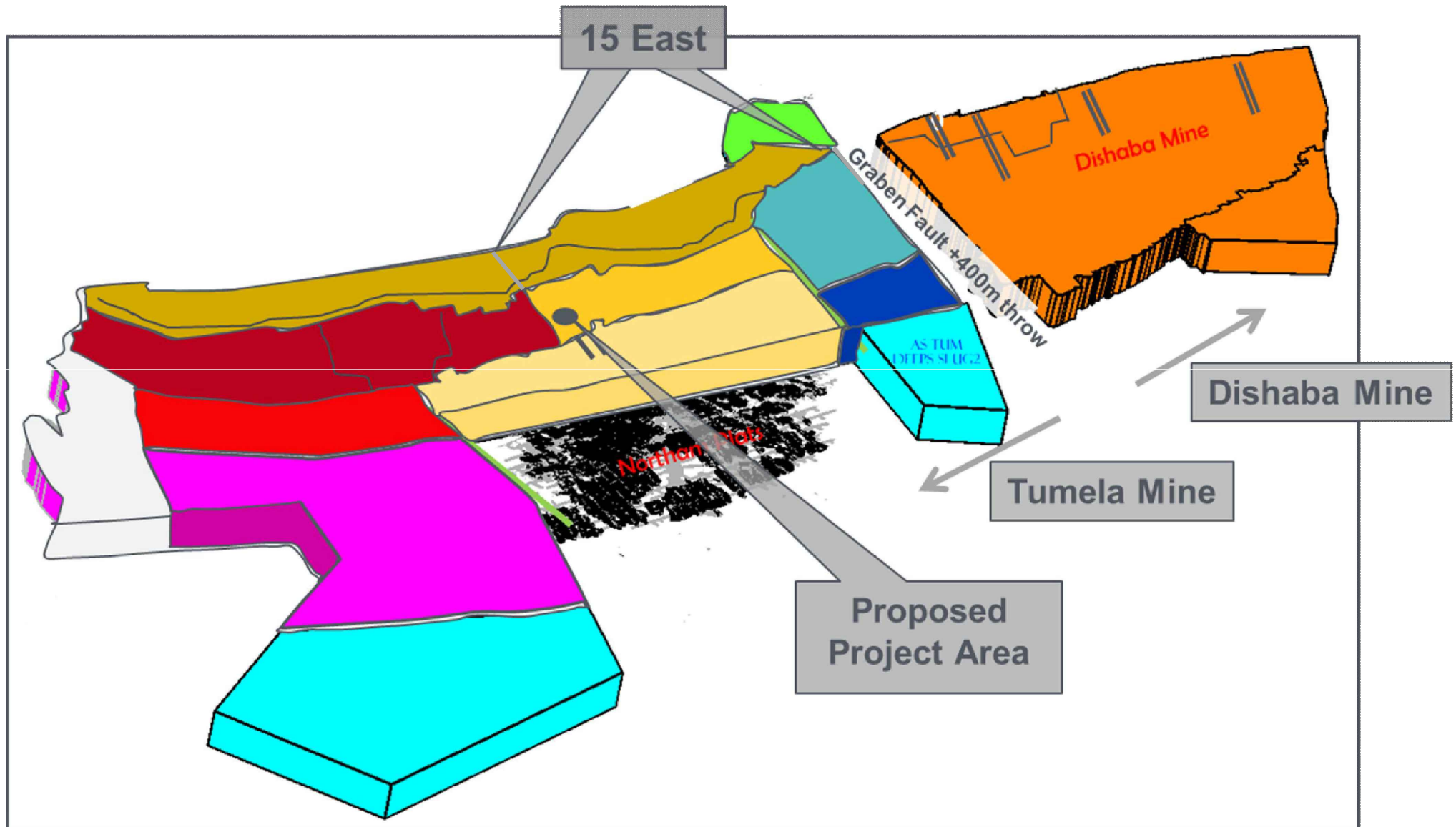
<b>Name:</b>	
<b>Organisation and Designation:</b>	
<b>Address:</b>	
<b>Tel:</b>	
<b>Fax:</b>	
<b>E-mail:</b>	

Please list your interest in the project and comments below:


# Appendix A: Locality Map



Appendix B: 15 East Area Map



---

**Tswana**



# TEMOSO KA GA TSAMAISO YA TUMELELO YA TIKOLOGO MALEBANA LE POROJEKE YA TUMELA CENTRAL SHAFT E E TSHIKHINNGWANG, MOEPO WA TUMELA O O KWA KAROLONG YA AMANDELBULT KWA BOKONE JWA NORTHAM, POROFENSE YA LIMPOPO.

## DOKHIUMENTETSHEDIMOSETSO YA LEMORAGO

### Tlhalosetso ya Porojeke ka Botlalo

Rustenburg Platinum Mines – Karolo ya Amandelbult (Karolo ya Amandelbult) e bopiwa ke meepo e le mebedi; Tumela Mine le Dishaba Mine. Go feta fa, Karolo ya Amandelbult e bile e akaretsa polante ya ditirelo tsa thekenoloji, fao lenyatshipi le le epilweng go tswa go Moepo wa Dishaba le wa Tumela le tsweletswang teng. Karolo ya Amandelbult ke moepo o o dirang, o o fitlhelwang mo bokone jwa Northam mo Porofenseng ya Limpopo. Moepo wa Tumela o lebile sešwa Leanokgwebo la ona, la go fitlhelela ditirelo go dikhutlopono tsa Merensky le tsa UG2, tse di leng mo polaseng ya Schildpadnest 385 KQ ka mosele wa šafote e ntšhwa (Tumela Central Shaft). Šafote e ntšhwa e tlaa nna kwa Porofenseng ya Limpopo mo Mmasepaleng wa Selegae wa Thabazimbi. (NP 361), mmogo le Kgaolo ya Mmasepala ya Waterberg (DC 36), e e ka nnang 40km kwa borwa jwa Thabazimbi, 15 km kwa bokone jwa Northam le 100 km kwa bokone jwa Rustenburg (bona **Mametlelelo A** malebana le mmapalefelo).

Moepo wa Tumela Upper Mine o bopiwa ke dišafote di le mmalwa mmogo le dišafote tse di epilweng. Dirifi tsa Merensky le tsa UG2 mo thulaganyetsong e e phaphametseng e, di tlaa bo di kgarithilwe mo dingwageng di le tlhano tse di latelang. Manya a Merensky le UG2 mo thulaganyetsong e e phaphametseng e, a a kgarithiwa, mme a a tlhoka go godisiwa go tswa go boteng jwa dimetara di feta 800 go tswa mpeng ya lefatshe. Go tlhokega šafotebogare e nngwe go thibela kelo ya phokotsego ya kumo ya Tumela Mine. Go tshikhinngwa gore Porojeke ya Central Shaft e tlaa oketsa kumo go feta 4 Mega tone ka ngwaga mo go Tumela Mine. Maitlhommo a Porojeke ya Central Shaft e tlaa nna go tlhoma dithulaganyetso go fitlhelela karolo ya moepo ya 15 East (bona **Mametlelelo B**), go boteng jo bo gaisang mo rifting ya khutlopono ya Merensky mmogo le UG2 (dillaga tsa matlapa a a tshotseng dikumo tsa diminerale), tse di tlaa netefatsang kumo ya lenya go tswa go karolomoepo ya 15 East ka ngwaga wa 2019. Dithulaganyetso di tlaa tlhamelwa mothamo wa 250 kilo tons ka kgwedi (ktpm) le gale, ke fela 125 ktpm e tlaa tsamaisiwang mo dingwagatirisong tsa ntlha di le robedi.

Ditirwana/dithulaganyetso tse di lebeletsweng di akaretsa: Thulaganyetso ya serwalwathogong sa šafote ya Main mmogo le ya sefatla, dišafote di le 2 tse di tsenyang mowa (tlase le godimo), Ditirwana/dithulaganyetso tse di lebeletsweng di akaretsa: serwalwathogong se Segolo mmogo le dithulaganyetso tsa sefatla, dišafote tsa mowa di le 2 (tsa tlase le godimo), thothobolo ya matlapa, (ma)felo a ditsidifatsi, digokelelwatlaleletso tsa motlakase le didiriso (go akarediwa seteišene sa Eskom se segolo); dithulaganyetso tsa mowakgatelelo, dithulaganyetso tsa go fetlha motlakase wa tshoganyetso, bobolokelo jwa moepo (go akarediwa: leobo la dithuntshi, segotlo sa dikota, ntlwana ya diwaendara, ntlwana ya mabone, segotlotshireletso, le ntlwanatirelo), dithulaganyetso tsa taolometsi, dikantoro (go akarediwa le matlo a go apolela), dithulaganyo tsa taololeswe, le dithulaganyo tsa polokese go (go akarediwa taolophitlhelelo).

Gore ditirwana tse di tshikhinngwang di simolole, Karolo ya Amandelbult e tlhoka tsetlelelo go tswa Mafapheng a puso a a farologaneng go ya ka molawana wa tikologo o o maleba. Tlhabololo ya Ikonomi ya Limpopo, Tikologo le Bojanala (LEDET), Lefapha la Ditlamelo tsa Dirafu (DMR), le Lefapha la tsa Metsi (DWA), a tlaa rwala maikarabelo a go neela tumelelo ya tsamaiso malebana le Tekanyetso le tsamaiso ya EIA, go ya ka Molawana wa Taolo ya Tikologo ya Naga (No. 107 wa 1998) (NEMA), tsamaiso ya tlhabololo ya Pegelo ya Lenaneo la Taolo ya Tikologo (EMPR), go ya ka Molawana wa Tlhabololo ya Ditlamelo tsa Diminerale le Peteroleamo (No. 28 wa 2002) (MPRDA) mmogo le tsamaiso ya Kopo ya Laesense ya tiriso ya Metsi (WULA), go ya ka Molawana wa Naga wa Metsi (No. 36 wa 1998) (NWA), ka tatelano.

**WSP Tikologo le Maatla (WSP)** e tlhophilwe jaaka motsamaisi wa tlhatlhobo ya tikologo yo o ikemetseng, go diragatsa tsamaiso ya tsetlelelo ya tikologo malebana le porojeke e, le go bebofatsa seabe sa beng.



## **Maikaelelo ka Tokomane e**

Tokomane e ya tshedimosetso ya lemorago (BID), e itsise beng ka ga porojeke e e tshikhinngwang. Tokomane e, e bopa karolo ya tsamaiso ya therisano le beng, e e tsewang jaaka karolo ya tsamaiso ya tettelelo ya tikologo, mme maikaelelo ka ga yona ke go neela beng tshedimosetso e e lekanetseng go ba kgontsha go tshwaela malebana le porojeke.

BID e neela dintlha ka botlalo ka ga porojeke, tsamaiso ya tettelelo ya tikologo, seabe sa beng mo tsamaisong mmogo le go rotloetsa beng go tshwaela male bana le porojeke, go botsa dipotso le go tlhagisa dintlha tse di tshwanetseng go akarediwa mo ditokomaneng tsa porojeke. Kwantle ga tokomane e, mo dikgatong tse di farologaneng tsa tsamaiso ya ya tettelelo ya tikologo, beng ba tlaa neelwa tshedimosetso le dipegelo gore ba tshwaele ka ga tsona.

## **Lethomeso la semolao**

Go ya ka NEMA, Molawana wa Kitsiso wa Puso (GN. R) 544 le 545, tiragatso ya ditirwana dingwe tse di mo lenaneong e tlhoka tettelelo ya tikologo.

Ditirwana tse di mo lenaneong la GN. R 544 malebana le porojeke e e tshikhinngwang di akaretsa (mme di sa bofelelwa go):

- Tirwana 12: Kago ya dithulaganyetso tsa poloko ya metsi e e kgethegileng, go akarediwa matamo le bodutelo, tse mothamo wa tsona fa o tlhakane o leng dimetara tsa dikhiubiki di le 50000 kgotsa go feta, kwantle ga fa polokelo e, e akarediwa mo tirwaneng ya 19 ya Kitsiso 545 ya 2010; le
- Tirwana 23: Tlhabololo ya naga e e lolea kgotsa e nyaragantswe, go e dira ya-
  - I. Bodulo, kgwebo, boitapoloso, difaboriki kgotsa ditheo, mo lefelotoropong, le, fao karolo e e fetolang e le diheketara di le 5 kgotsa go feta, mme di le ka fa tlase ga 20, kgotsa
  - II. Bodulo, kgwebo, boitapoloso, difaboriki kgotsa ditheo, ka fa ntle ga lefelotoropo mme karolo e e fetolang e le kgolo go heketara e le 1 mme e le ka fa tlase ga diheketara di le 20.

Ditirwana tse di mo lenaneong la GN.R 545 malebana le porojeke e e tshikhinngwang di akaretsa (mme ga di a bofelelwa go):

- Tirwana 5: Kago ya ditlamelo kgotsa dithulaganyetso tsa tsamaiso kgotsa tirwana e e tlhokang tettelelo kgotsa laesense go ya ka molawana wa porofense kgotsa wa naga o o laolang tlhologo kgotsa go ntshiwa ga mesi le digase, kgotlelelo e e sa boletwang mo Kitsisong No. 544 ya 2010 kgotsa go akarediwa mo lenaneong la ditirwana tsa taolo ya leswe le le itsisitsweng go ya ka Karolo 19 ya Molawana wa Leswe: Taolo ya Tikologo ya Naga, 2008 (Molawana No. 59 wa 2008). Fa go le jaana go tla dirisiwa Molawana.

Kopo ya tettelelo ya tikologo (ka mosele wa tsamaiso ya Tekanyetso le EIA) malebana le ditirwana tse di kwadilweng mo go GN. R 544 le 545 e neetswe go LEDET ka la 11 Tlhakole 2013.

Ditirwana tsa metsi tse di latelang tse di kwadilweng mo lenaneong la Kgaolo 4, Karolo 21 ya NWA di tsewa di le maleba mme di tlaa tlhoka tettelelo ya mofuta wa tlhabololo ya Kopo ya Laesense ya Tiriso ya Metsi (WULA) e e leng teng kgotsa go neelwe WULA e nngwe kwa thoko:

- 21 (g): go latlha (bolokwa) ga metsi a a nang le leswe. Go rulagantswe pitso le DWA go neela diteng tsa go ya pele. 21 (g):

Go feta fa, karolo ya Amandelbult e tlhoka go simolola tsamaiso ya tlhabololo ya EMPR, go ya ka MPRDA ka ntata ya phetolo/ kgodiso ya ditirwana tsa karolo ya khiro ya moepo. Go neetswe lekwelokitsiso go DMR go kaela tshimololo ya tsamaiso ya tettelelo ya tikologo.

## Tsamaiso ya Therisano le Beng

Maikaelelo ka kgoagano le beng ke go tlhola batho ba ba nang le kगतlhego le ba ba amegang mo dikarolong tsa morafe le tsa poraefete malebana le tsamaiso ya ditsweletso mo diporojekeng tse di ka ba amang. Tsamaiso e e ikaelela go tlhama le go tsweletsa kgoagano le tlhaeletsano magareng a setlhopha sa porojeke le beng. Tsamaiso e e neela beng tšhono ya go tlhagisa dikakanyo le matsapa a bona malebana le porojeke e e tshikingwang ka tlhaeletsano malebana le porojeke. Motsamaisi wa tlhatlhubo ya tikologo o kwala dikakanyo le matsapa a beng mme o tsibosa setlhopha sa porojeke le bothati malebana le dintlha tse di tlhokang tlhokomelo mo tsamaong ya kgobokanyo le tlhatlhubo ya dikotsi tse di ka golaganang le porojeke..

## Beng ke bo mang?

Mongwe fela, kgotsa setlhopha le fa e le setlamo se se nang le kगतlhego kgotsa se khuetswa ke tlhabololo e e tsikingwang.

Go ikwadisa jaaka mong le go bona tlhaeletsano ka ga tsamaiso ya tlhabololo ya EIA/ EMPR, tswetswee romela dintlhakgoagano le ditshwaelo go Jared O' Brien:

Mogala I: 011 361 1396  
Fekese : 086 505 3939  
Aterese : P.O. Box 5384, Rivonia, 2128  
Imeile: Jared.O'Brien@wspgroup.co.za

Papetlana ya ditshwaelo e mameleletswe mo tokomaneng e go go thusa.

## Botsaakarolo jwa Beng

Dikgato tsa ntlha ke go itsise morafe le beng ba ba lemogilweng ka ga porojeke e e tshikingwang le go laletsa beng botlhe mo pitsong ka mesele e e latelang:

- Papatso mo kuranteng mo go Rustenburg Herald le Platinum Weekly ka la 22/02/2013;
- Dikitsisofelo mo karolong ya porojeke ka la 22/02/2013;
- Makwaloketsiso go bengnaga le makhanselara a dikarolo tsa masepala ka la 22/02/2013; le
- Phatlhalatso ya BID go beng ka la 22/02/2013.

### PITSO YA BOTLHE

Pitso ya botlhe e tla tsarwa go tlhalosetsa beng diteng tsa porojeke le go ba neela tšhono go botsa dipotso le go supa dintlha tsa kotsi malebana le porojeke. Diteng tsa pitso ke tse di latelang:

- Lefelo: Amandelbult Recreation Club
- Letha: 9 Moranang April 2013
- Nako: 16:00pm - 17:00pm

Fa o eletsa go tsenela pitso ya botlhe tswetswee golagana le Jared O'Brien pele kgotsa ka la 8 Moranang 2013.

## Pegelo ya Tekanyetso le Pegelotlhabololo ya EIAR/EMPR

Pegelotekanyetso e kokoantswe go ya ka kelo ya NEMA le MPRDA, mme e tlhalosa tsamaiso e e tla latelwang go golagana le beng le malebana le karolo ya EIA ya porojeke. Pegelo e tlhalosa maemokamogelo mme e neela khuetsa ya porojeke e e lemogilweng mo Karolong ya Tekanyetso. Pegelo e supa botlhotlhomisi (go akarediwa mekgwa) jo bo tlaa dirisiwang go batlisisa khuetsa e e lemogilweng. Letlhomiso la pegelotekanyetso le ka bonwa ke botlhe le mafapha a puso, mo pakeng ya malatsi a le 40 pele le neelwa LEDET le DMR.

### TLHATLHOBHO YA BOTLHE YA PEGELOTEKANYETSO

Pegelotekanyetso e tlaa bonwa go tloga go 22/02/2013 go ya go 12/04/2013 go tlhatlhojwa ke botlhe kwa mafelong a latelang:

- Kantorokgolo ya Tumela
- Kantor ya bothati jwa tsa setso (Mmantserre);
- Amandelbult Recreation Club;
- Northam Library.

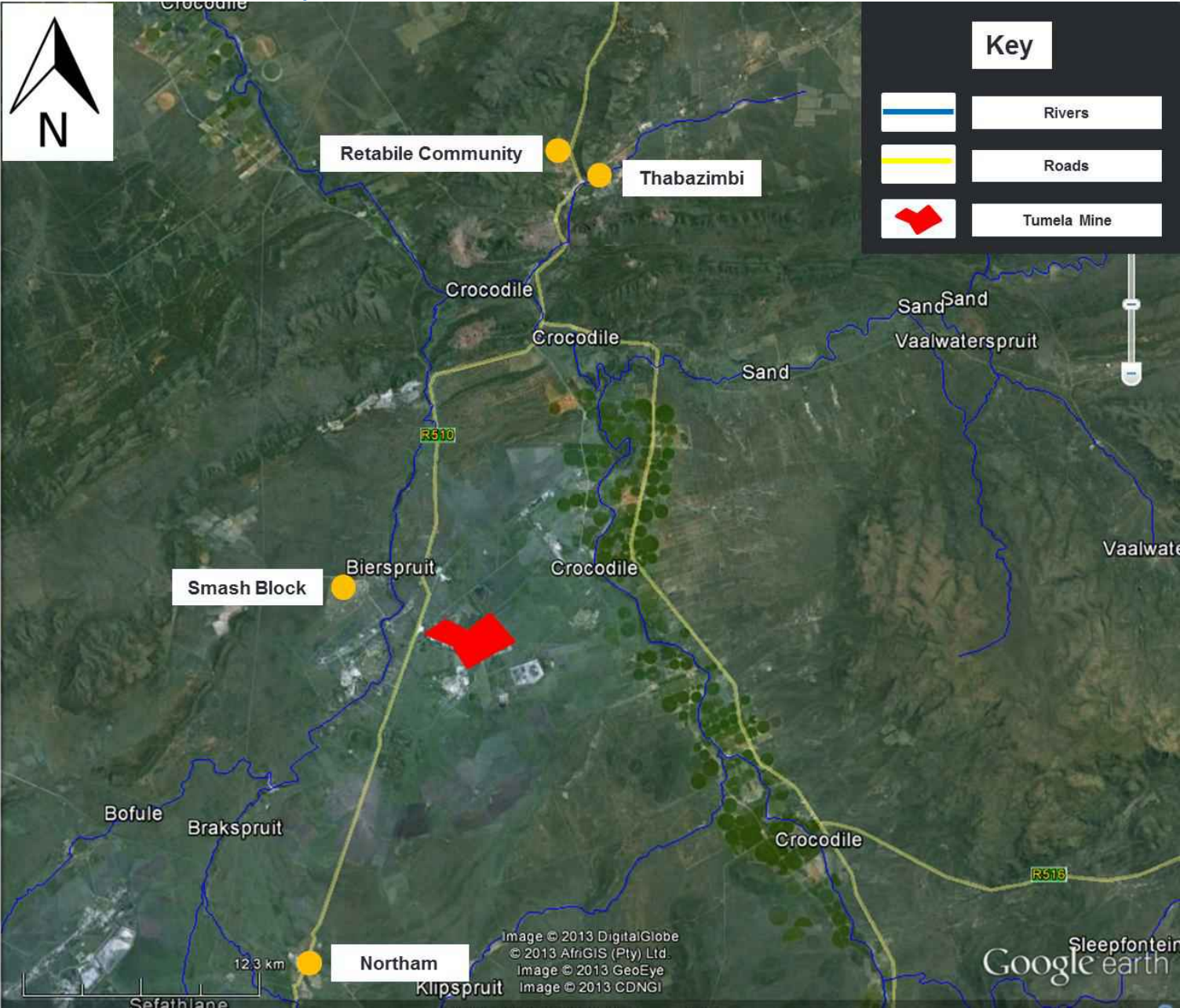
Morago ga Pegelotekanyetso, go tlaa rulagangwa pegelotlhabololo. Pegelo e e tlaa tlhalosa tsamaiso ya tlhaeletsano le Beng le go akaretsa ditshwaelo le dintlha tsotlhe tse di thagisitsweng ka nako ya tsamaiso. Go feta fa, pegelo e tlaa lekanyetsa khuetsa e e akanyetswang kगतlhanong le sethalwa sa tekanyetso, go tlhatlhuba maatla, paka le boleng jwa khuetsa, mme e akaretse khuetsa go tikologo e e amegang. Go tlaa tsewa dikgatotseleganyo go fokotsa khuetsa e e bosula malebana le porojeke. Tlhabololo ya letlhomiso la EIAR/EMPR e tlaa neelwa botlhe le mafapha a puso go tlhatlhojwa mo pakeng ya malatsi a le 40 pele e neelwa LEDET le DMR.

Tswetswee ikwadise le Jared O'Brien gore o amogele tshedimosetso ka ga lefelo le le tshotseng letlhomiso la dipegelo le paka ya tlhatlhubo ka imeile, fekese, mogala, makwalo a a rejisetarilweng kgotsa SMS. Ditshwaelo tse di amogetsweng di tlaa lejwa mme tsa akarediwa mo pegelolong pele pele letlhomiso la bofelo le neelwa mafapha a a maleba go tlhatlhojwa le go dumelelwa.



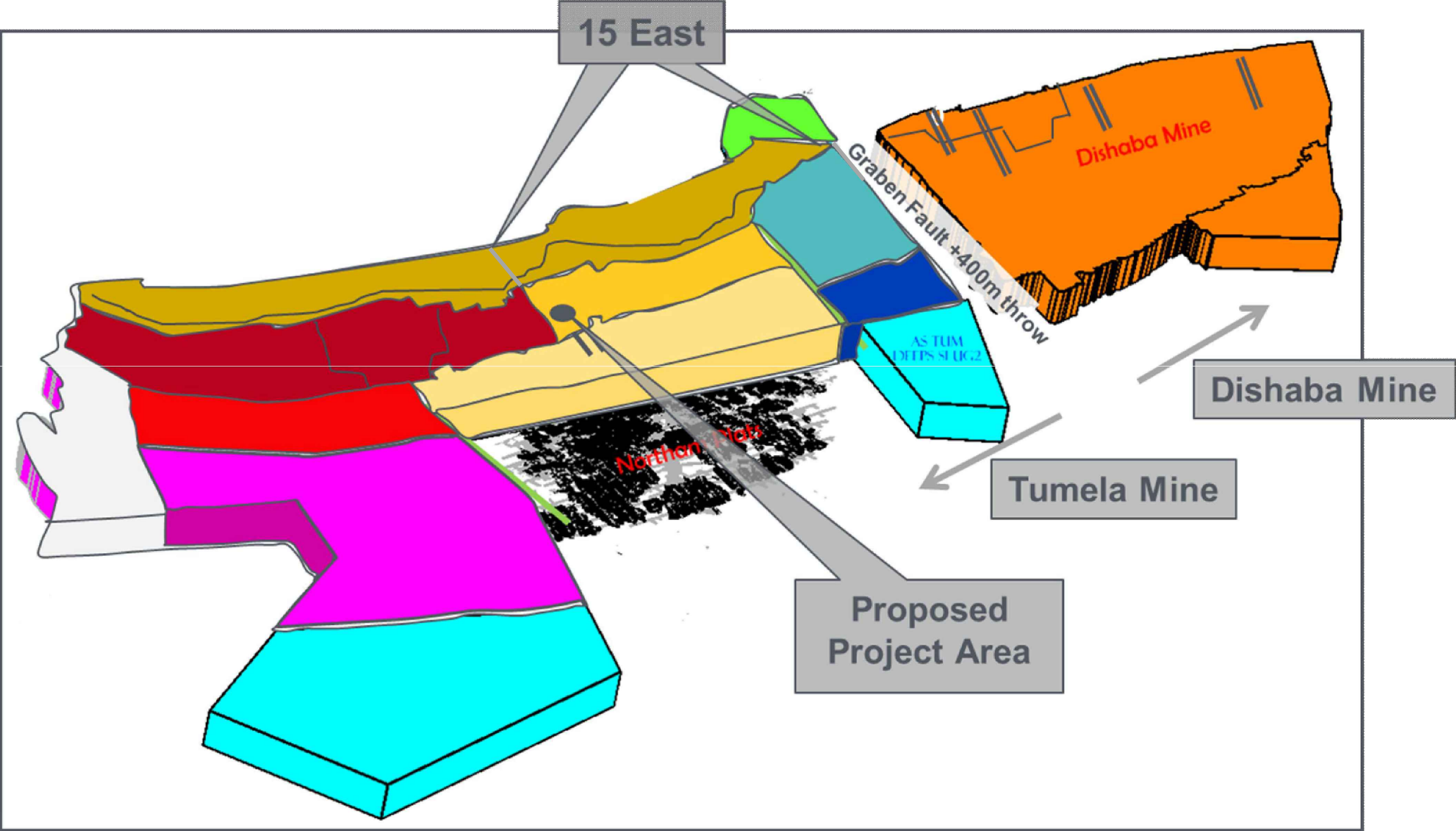


Mametelelo A: Mmapalefelo





Mametelelo B: Mmapa wa Karolo ya15 East



Newspaper Advert

---

**Public Notification Advert**

**Advert**

## ANGLO AMERICAN PLATINUM NOTICE OF ENVIRONMENTAL AUTHORISATION

**Notice of the environmental authorisation processes for the proposed Tumela Central Shaft Project located at Amandelbult Section north of Northam, Limpopo Province.**

Notice is hereby given in accordance with the National Environmental Management Act (No. 107 of 1998) as amended (NEMA), Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) Regulations 2010, Government Notice Regulation (GN. R) 543, Section 21 of the National Water Act (No. 36 of 1998) (NWA), and the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (No 28 of 2002) (MPRDA) for the proposed Tumela Central Shaft Project at the Rustenburg Platinum Mines Limited – Amandelbult Section.

### DESCRIPTION AND LOCATION

Tumela Mine is an operational mine located north of Northam in the Limpopo Province. Rustenburg Platinum Mines Limited – Amandelbult Section proposes to develop a new shaft and associated infrastructure. The Tumela Mine has revised its Business Plan to access resources on both the Merensky and the UG2 reef horizons, located on the farm Schildpadnest 385 KQ via a new shaft (the Tumela Central Shaft). The envisaged activities include a Main shaft with headgear and surface infrastructure, 2 ventilation shafts (downcast & upcast), a waste rock dump, refrigeration plant(s), water management infrastructure and a main Eskom substation. WSP Environmental (Pty) Ltd has been appointed as the Environmental Assessment Practitioner (EAP) whom will undertake the authorisation process on behalf of Rustenburg Platinum Mines Limited – Amandelbult Section.

### ENVIRONMENTAL APPLICATION

In accordance with the NEMA GN. R 543, the undertaking of certain listed activities requires an environmental authorisation. The activities associated with the proposed project listed in GN. R 544 could include, but are not limited to: activity 9, 12, 13, and 23. Additionally, activity 5 of GN. R 545 was identified as being potentially applicable which require a Scoping and EIA Process to be undertaken. An application for authorisation was submitted to the Limpopo Economic Development, Environment and Tourism on 11/02/2013. The Rustenburg Platinum Mines Limited – Amandelbult Section is furthermore required to undertake an Environmental Management Programme Report Amendment process, in line with the MPRDA and its associated Regulations of 2004. Relevant water use licenses in terms of Section 21 of the National Water Act (No. 36 of 1998) will be applied for.

### AVAILABILITY OF SCOPING REPORT

The Scoping report will be made available from 22/02/2013 to 03/04/2013 for public review at the following locations:

- Tumela Mine Main Office;
- Office of traditional authorities (Mantserre);
- Amandelbult Recreation Club;
- Northam Library; and
- WSP's website ([www.wspenvironmental.com/publicreview](http://www.wspenvironmental.com/publicreview)).

### PUBLIC MEETING

A Public Meeting will be held at Amandelbult Recreation Club (11/03/2013, 16:00 – 17:00) to inform the public of the proposed project. Should you wish to attend the Public Meeting, please respond to Jared O'Brien by 8 March 2013.

### NAME OF PROPONENT

Rustenburg Platinum Mines Limited – Amandelbult Section

### NAME OF CONSULTANT

**WSP Environment and Energy**

**Contact Person: Jared O'Brien**

**T** 011 361 1396

**F** 086 505 3939

**E** [Jared.O'Brien@WSPgroup.co.za](mailto:Jared.O'Brien@WSPgroup.co.za)

PO Box 5384, Rivonia, 2128

### REGISTER AS A STAKEHOLDER

To register as a stakeholder, please submit your name, contact information and interest in the matter to the Consultant.



---

**Rustenburg Herald Publication Proof**

**EMAIL:** [NEWS@RUSTENBURGHERALD.CO.ZA](mailto:NEWS@RUSTENBURGHERALD.CO.ZA)  
**NEWS TIP-OFFS, PHOTOS, ETC**

# Fotofinaliste - nou jou kosfoto's

## GRANTING OF ENVIRONMENTAL AUTHORISATION - RESIDENTIAL DEVELOPMENT ON PORTION 363 OF THE FARM WATERKLOOF 305 JQ, RUSTENBURG.

REF NWP/EIA/151/2011  
 In terms of regulation 10(2) of the Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations, 2010, you are hereby notified that the North West Department of Economic Development, Environment, Conservation & Tourism has, on the 13th of February 2013, **authorised** this development.  
 Kindly note that you may appeal any aspect of the decision as per Annexure 1 of the authorisation and in terms of Chapter 7 of the Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations of 18 June 2010 under the National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act 107 of 1998) as amended. A notice of intention to appeal must be lodged before 6 March 2013 with:  
 The Member of the Executive Council  
 Department of Economic Development, Environment, Conservation and Tourism  
 North West Development Corporation Building  
 Corner University Drive and Provident Street  
 Private Bag X15 Mmabatho 2735  
 Tel: 018 387 7995-7  
 Fax: 086 666 0148  
 An appeal must be lodged in writing by completing Notice of Intention to Appeal Form.  
 Should you require a copy of the authorisation, kindly contact HydroScience.  
 Address: P.O. Box 1322, Ruimsig, 1732  
 Tel: 082 850 5482 Fax: 086 692 8620.  
 Email: [paulette@hydroscience.co.za](mailto:paulette@hydroscience.co.za)



**R**USTENBURG - Die 18 finaliste in Bonus se "Holiday Memories" fotokompetisie kan in vandeeweek se uitgawe van Bonus gesien word. Amateurfotografie is nou reeds welkom om hul inskrywings in ons volgende kompetisie: "Food" in te stuur. Wat ook al u idee van die onderwerp is - solank dit reg laat geskied aan die tema oor kos ("food") staan u 'n goeie kans om met die prysgeld van R1 000 weg te stap. Onthou - dit kan by die braaivuur, u jongste gereg, nagereg of watter lekkerny ook al wees. Stuur u foto's na [waldie@rustenburgherald.co.za](mailto:waldie@rustenburgherald.co.za) of [cecile@rustenburgherald.co.za](mailto:cecile@rustenburgherald.co.za). Onthou - prysgeld van R1 000 in kontant is nie te versmaai nie - ons sien uit na u inskrywings!



## JIC Mining Training Academy

### Presents ICDL International Computer Driver Licence

1. Concepts of Information Technology
2. Use a Computer & Managing Files
3. Word Processing (Microsoft Word)
4. Spreadsheets (Microsoft Excel)
5. Presentations (Microsoft Powerpoint)
6. Database (Microsoft Access)
7. Internet & Email

Packaging to suit your needs: One Module – Four Modules – Seven Modules

Starting @  
 R1400 per one Module\*  
 R4000 for four Modules\*  
 R6000 for seven Modules\*  
 \*Discount for groups

For More Information Please Contact  
 JIC Mining Training Academy  
 68 Molen Street  
 Rustenburg 0300  
 Tel: 014 596 7791  
 Email: [icdl@jic.co.za](mailto:icdl@jic.co.za)

**PRC PLUMBING & GENERAL MAINTANANCE**

- Geyser Installation
- Pump Installation and Repairs
- General Plumbing on pipes and valves
- Irrigation System

We also do Repairs on Couplings and Pulleys.  
 Qualified Artisan for 10 years ensuring Excellent Service and Affordable prices.  
**Cell: 071 621 6008**  
**ALL HOURS.**



### ANGLO AMERICAN PLATINUM NOTICE OF ENVIRONMENTAL AUTHORISATION

Notice of the environmental authorisation processes for the proposed Tumela Central Shaft Project located at Amandelbult Section north of Northam, Limpopo Province.

Notice is hereby given in accordance with the National Environmental Management Act (No. 107 of 1998) as amended (NEMA), Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) Regulations 2010, Government Notice Regulation (GN, R) 543, Section 21 of the National Water Act (No. 36 of 1956) (NWA), and the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (No 28 of 2002) (MPRDA) for the proposed Tumela Central Shaft Project at the Rustenburg Platinum Mines Limited – Amandelbult Section.

**DESCRIPTION AND LOCATION**  
 Tumela Mine is an operational mine located north of Northam in the Limpopo Province, Rustenburg Platinum Mines Limited – Amandelbult Section proposes to develop a new shaft and associated infrastructure. The Tumela Mine has revised its Business Plan to access resources on both the Merensky and the UG2 reef horizons, located on the farm Schildpadnest 385 KQ via a new shaft (the Tumela Central Shaft). The envisaged activities include a Main shaft with headgear and surface infrastructure, 2 ventilation shafts (downcast & upcast), a waste rock dump, refrigeration plant(s), water management infrastructure and a main Eskom substation. WSP Environmental (Pty) Ltd has been appointed as the Environmental Assessment Practitioner (EAP) whom will undertake the authorisation process on behalf of Rustenburg Platinum Mines Limited – Amandelbult Section.

**ENVIRONMENTAL APPLICATION**  
 In accordance with the NEMA GN, R 543, the undertaking of certain listed activities requires an environmental authorisation. The activities associated with the proposed project listed in GN, R 544 could include, but are not limited to: activity 9, 12, 13, and 23. Additionally, activity 3 and 5 of GN, R 545 were identified as being potentially applicable which require a Scoping and EIA Process to be undertaken. An application for authorisation was submitted to the Limpopo Economic Development, Environment and Tourism on 11/02/2013. The Rustenburg Platinum Mines Limited – Amandelbult Section is furthermore required to undertake an Environmental Management Programme Report Amendment process, in line with the MPRDA and its associated Regulations of 2004. Relevant water use licenses in terms of Section 21 of the National Water Act (No. 36 of 1998) will be applied for.

**AVAILABILITY OF SCOPING REPORT**  
 The Scoping report will be made available from 22/02/2013 to 03/04/2013 for public review at the following locations:  
 • Tumela Mine Main Office;  
 • Office of traditional authorities (Mantseere);  
 • Amandelbult Recreation Club;  
 • Northam Library; and  
 • WSP's website ([www.wspenvironmental.com/publicreview](http://www.wspenvironmental.com/publicreview)).

**PUBLIC MEETING**  
 A Public Meeting will be held at Amandelbult Recreation Club (11/03/2013, 16:00 – 17:00) to inform the public of the proposed project. Should you wish to attend the Public Meeting, please respond to Jared O'Brien by 8 March 2013.

**NAME OF PROPONENT**  
 Rustenburg Platinum Mines Limited – Amandelbult Section

**NAME OF CONSULTANT**  
 WSP Environment and Energy  
 Contact Person: Jared O'Brien  
 T 011 361 1396  
 F 086 505 3939  
 E [Jared.O'Brien@WSPgroup.co.za](mailto:Jared.O'Brien@WSPgroup.co.za)  
 PO Box 5384, Rivonia, 2128

**REGISTER AS A STAKEHOLDER**  
 To register as a stakeholder, please submit your name, contact information and interest in the matter to the Consultant.

**Platinum Weekly Publication Proof**



## A Career at Implats

### Senior Planned Maintenance Officer/ Planning Officer

Impala - Rustenburg  
(Ref. 95499)

The ideal candidate will meet the following requirements:

- Grade 12 with Maths is essential
- Previous experience on trackless fleet will be advantageous
- Exposure in the planning and underground environment will be advantageous
- Ability to work under pressure
- Trade Certificate will be an advantage
- Computer literacy (MS Office Package + SAP) is essential
- English literate with good communication skills
- Valid Medical Certificate or be medically fit in order to obtain such a certificate

The successful candidate will be responsible to:

- Update and maintain master data and warranties in SAP
- Update and maintain maintenance schedules
- Compile and update routine maintenance task lists
- Update and control the Fuel Management System (Transport-specific)
- Compile management data and reports
- Notify responsible persons of changes in Planned Maintenance activities
- Update and maintain scrap equipment beyond economical repair in SAP
- Conduct on-the-job training and coaching
- Monitor individual and team performance
- Supervise the work unit to achieve work unit objectives (individuals and teams).

In addition to challenging opportunities, the Company offers a competitive remuneration package and the normal large-company benefits.

Company details can be found at <http://www.implats.co.za>

Preference will be given to candidates from the designated groups. Short-listed candidates may be subjected to psychometric assessment.



Applications can be sent to:

Central Employment Centre, Impala

Platinum Limited, PO Box 5683,

Rustenburg 0300, or fax:

(014) 569-9840 or e-mail in

MS Word format to

[pearl.moitse@implats.co.za](mailto:pearl.moitse@implats.co.za) for

attention: Pearl Moitse

OR

Register online - visit our website

at [www.implats.co.za](http://www.implats.co.za) click on

"Careers" then "Job Applications

and Vacancies" and then "Job

Search".

Closing date: 1 March 2013

## Vakante Pos BEEFMASTER (Christiana Voerkraal)

**WERKSWINKELBESTUURDER**  
Gekwalifiseerde werktuigkundige met maatskappy ondervinding word gesoek met kennis in ou en nuwe generasie Cummins-, ADE-, INTERNATIONAL-, MAN- en MBENZ-enjins. Asook goeie ondervinding in Vlooi-koördinerings-, CAT-grondverskuivingsmasjinerie, auto-elektriese en hidroliese kennis. Uitstekende personeelhantering en rekenaaraardigheid is 'n vereiste.

CV's en kwalifikasies kan gestuur word na [hr@beefmaster.co.za](mailto:hr@beefmaster.co.za) of faks na 086 656 3067.

## Temp / Contract

**PA / Reception / Admin ladies needed to work in Rustenburg. R neg.**  
Call (018) 462-4547 or e-mail cv to [cv@primepersonnel.co.za](mailto:cv@primepersonnel.co.za)



PLATINUM

### ANGLO AMERICAN PLATINUM NOTICE OF ENVIRONMENTAL AUTHORIZATION

Notice of the environmental authorisation processes for the proposed Tumbula Central Shaft Project located at Amantsoeb Section north of Northam, Limpopo Province.

Notice is hereby given in accordance with the National Environmental Management Act (Act No. 107 of 1998) and the Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) Regulations, 2010, Government Notice Regulation (GN, R) 543, Section 21 of the National Water Act (No. 36 of 1956) (NWA), and the Minerals and Petroleum Resources Development Act (No. 28 of 2007) (MPRDA) for the proposed Tumbula Central Shaft Project at the Rustenburg Platinum Mines Limited - Amantsoeb Section.

#### DESCRIPTION AND LOCATION

Tumbula Mine is an operational mine located north of Northam in the Limpopo Province. Rustenburg Platinum Mines Limited - Amantsoeb Section proposes to develop a new shaft and associated infrastructure. The Tumbula Mine has received its Business Plan to access resources on both the Merensky and the UG2 reef horizons. Located on the farm Schalkoort 608, 609, 610, 611, 612, 613, 614, 615, 616, 617, 618, 619, 620, 621, 622, 623, 624, 625, 626, 627, 628, 629, 630, 631, 632, 633, 634, 635, 636, 637, 638, 639, 640, 641, 642, 643, 644, 645, 646, 647, 648, 649, 650, 651, 652, 653, 654, 655, 656, 657, 658, 659, 660, 661, 662, 663, 664, 665, 666, 667, 668, 669, 670, 671, 672, 673, 674, 675, 676, 677, 678, 679, 680, 681, 682, 683, 684, 685, 686, 687, 688, 689, 690, 691, 692, 693, 694, 695, 696, 697, 698, 699, 700, 701, 702, 703, 704, 705, 706, 707, 708, 709, 710, 711, 712, 713, 714, 715, 716, 717, 718, 719, 720, 721, 722, 723, 724, 725, 726, 727, 728, 729, 730, 731, 732, 733, 734, 735, 736, 737, 738, 739, 740, 741, 742, 743, 744, 745, 746, 747, 748, 749, 750, 751, 752, 753, 754, 755, 756, 757, 758, 759, 760, 761, 762, 763, 764, 765, 766, 767, 768, 769, 770, 771, 772, 773, 774, 775, 776, 777, 778, 779, 780, 781, 782, 783, 784, 785, 786, 787, 788, 789, 790, 791, 792, 793, 794, 795, 796, 797, 798, 799, 800, 801, 802, 803, 804, 805, 806, 807, 808, 809, 810, 811, 812, 813, 814, 815, 816, 817, 818, 819, 820, 821, 822, 823, 824, 825, 826, 827, 828, 829, 830, 831, 832, 833, 834, 835, 836, 837, 838, 839, 840, 841, 842, 843, 844, 845, 846, 847, 848, 849, 850, 851, 852, 853, 854, 855, 856, 857, 858, 859, 860, 861, 862, 863, 864, 865, 866, 867, 868, 869, 870, 871, 872, 873, 874, 875, 876, 877, 878, 879, 880, 881, 882, 883, 884, 885, 886, 887, 888, 889, 890, 891, 892, 893, 894, 895, 896, 897, 898, 899, 900, 901, 902, 903, 904, 905, 906, 907, 908, 909, 910, 911, 912, 913, 914, 915, 916, 917, 918, 919, 920, 921, 922, 923, 924, 925, 926, 927, 928, 929, 930, 931, 932, 933, 934, 935, 936, 937, 938, 939, 940, 941, 942, 943, 944, 945, 946, 947, 948, 949, 950, 951, 952, 953, 954, 955, 956, 957, 958, 959, 960, 961, 962, 963, 964, 965, 966, 967, 968, 969, 970, 971, 972, 973, 974, 975, 976, 977, 978, 979, 980, 981, 982, 983, 984, 985, 986, 987, 988, 989, 990, 991, 992, 993, 994, 995, 996, 997, 998, 999, 1000.

#### ENVIRONMENTAL APPLICATION

In accordance with the NEMA GN R 543, the undertaking of certain listed activities requires an environmental authorisation. The activities associated with the proposed project listed in GN R 544 (and include, but are not limited to, activity 9, 12, 13, and 25. Accordingly, activity 9, 12, 13, and 25 of the proposed project are applicable which require a Scope 1 and EA Phases to be undertaken. An application for authorisation was submitted to the Limpopo Economic Development, Environment and Tourism on 11/07/2013. The Rustenburg Platinum Mines Limited - Amantsoeb Section is furthermore required to undertake an Environmental Management Programme (EMP) in accordance with the Environmental Management Regulations of 2004. Section 21 of the National Water Act (No. 36 of 1956) will be applied for.

#### AVAILABILITY OF SCOPING REPORT

The Scoping report will be made available from 22/02/2013 to 03/03/2013 for public review at the following locations:  
• Impala Mine Office  
• Christiana Voerkraal (Christiana)  
• Amantsoeb Recreation Club  
• Northern Limpopo and  
• WSP's website ([www.environmental.com](http://www.environmental.com)) (public review)

#### PUBLIC MEETING

A public meeting will be held at Amantsoeb Recreation Club (11/05/2013, 15:00 - 17:00) to inform the public of the proposed project and to receive public comments. Written objections should be submitted by 8 March 2013.

#### NAME OF PROPONENT

Rustenburg Platinum Mines Limited - Amantsoeb Section

#### NAME OF CONSULTANT

WSP Environment and Energy  
Contact Person: Jared O'Brien  
T 011 381 1399  
F 081 505 3959  
E [jared@wspenergy.co.za](mailto:jared@wspenergy.co.za)  
PO Box 5584, Roosendaal, 2198

#### REGISTER AS A STAKEHOLDER

To register as a stakeholder, please submit your name, contact information and consent in the matter to the Consultant.

## 72y Man burnt to Death

Madikwe – In a case that has left the community of Madikwe shocked, a 72-year-old man was set alight, and burnt to death by unknown suspects between 17 and 19 February. The incident occurred at Motedi Village (North West). Police have opened a case of

murder, kidnapping, common robbery and defeating the ends of justice. According to police investigations, the victim was reported missing by his brother. The motive of the murder is unknown. No arrests have been made.

## 6 accused of murder conspiracy

Klerksdorp – Six men charged with conspiracy to the murder of ANC North West official Obuti Chika, appeared in the Klerksdorp Magistrate's Court on Tuesday (19 February 2013). The matter was postponed to February 27 for bail application. The accused are Jeffrey Letuka (28), North West provincial ANC Youth League chairman Papiki Baboije, ward Secretary Paul Molomonyane (33), Councillor Itumeleng Molebatsi (50), Municipal worker William Malefo (46), and taxi driver Kgotso Kali (36). They all faced a charge of premeditated murder and two charges



of conspiracy to commit murder. Chika (33) was shot at point-blank range in the driveway of his home in Alabama, Klerksdorp, on December 14, 2012. He died at the Klerksdorp Hospital shortly after his arrival. Chika was the ANC's regional secretary in the Dr Kenneth Kaunda District Municipality.

### PAINT SHOP FLATTER & FINISHER NEEDED

Experience in: Flattening, Polishing, Primer & strip and assemble essential.

**SALARY NEGOTIABLE**

**Call: 072 386 3028**

Please forward you CV to [MarlieseH@plazaboard.co.za](mailto:MarlieseH@plazaboard.co.za)  
No chance takers please.

### Vacancy

Plaza Board Centre has a position open for a self motivated and disciplined Salesperson. We need someone that has had previous experience in sales and must be computer literate. Knowledge of Pastel is an advantage.

### SALES REP. NEEDED

AT LEAST 2 YEARS REP EXPERIENCE WITH FULL REFERENCE WITH MINES, ENGINEERS, CONTRACTING ETC. OWN CAR. ALLOWANCE + PETROL

**Fax CV to: 014 592 8761**

---

**Public Meeting Update Advert**



**Advert**

# **NOTICE OF THE ENVIRONMENTAL AUTHORISATION PROCESSES FOR THE PROPOSED TUMELA CENTRAL SHAFT PROJECT LOCATED NORTH OF NORTHAM, LIMPOPO PROVINCE**

Notice is hereby given in accordance with the National Environmental Management Act (No. 107 of 1998) as amended (NEMA), Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) Regulations 2010, Government Notice Regulation (GN. R) 543, Section 21 of the National Water Act (No. 36 of 1998) (NWA), and the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (No 28 of 2002) (MPRDA) for the proposed Tumela Central Shaft Project at the Anglo American Platinum Limited: Rustenburg Platinum Mines - Amandelbult Section (RPM-AS).

## **PUBLIC MEETING**

The Public Meeting for the proposed project has been postponed to the following time/date: Amandelbult Recreation Club (14/05/2013, 16:00 – 17:30). Should you wish to attend the Public Meeting, please respond to Jared O'Brien by 13 May 2013.

## **NAME OF PROPONENT**

Anglo American Platinum Limited: Rustenburg Platinum Mines – Amandelbult Section

## **NAME OF CONSULTANT**

WSP Environment and Energy (Pty) Ltd  
Contact Jared O'Brien for further info on 011 361 1396

## **REGISTER AS A STAKEHOLDER**

To register as a stakeholder, please submit your name, contact information and interest in the matter to the Consultant.

---

**Rustenburg Herald Publication Proof**

# NW Pitbull Club battles it out

RUSTENBURG - The NW Pitbull Club took part in the Undertakers Pitbull Club show in Heidelberg on 6 April 2013.

Dogs from the NW Pitbull Club obtained the following results: Holts Bullies "Boesman" - 1st Place Conformation, 2nd Place Weight

Pull 540 kg (24.77 times his own weight); Prinsloo's "Rocco" - 1st Place Conformation; Law Kennels "Granite" - 1st Place Weight Pull 560 kg (34.4 times his own weight), 3rd Place Conformation, 2nd Place Iron Dog; Theron's "Calibra" - 1st Place Weight Pull 860 kg (34.26 times her own weight), 3rd Place Conformation, 3rd Place Long Hang - 6 min 8.45 sec; Midnights "Killer" - 1st Place Long

Hang - 29 min 51.38 sec; Miss "Molly" - 2nd Place Weight Pull 540 kg (27.14 times her own weight); Theron's "Dozer" - 3rd Place Weight Pull 1020 kg (27.42 times his own weight); Theron's "Dutchess" - 2nd Place Weight Pull 540 kg (36 times her own weight).

The next show will be taking place on 1 June and is the Union Show in Vereeniging, 6 July at NW Pitbull Club in Rustenburg, 3

Aug at Pretoria Pitbull Club in Pretoria, 7 September at Legends Pitbull Club, 5 October at Undertakers in Secunda, 2 November - SA Championships in Vereeniging (only qualifying dogs).

Please contact Dewald Prinsloo (Chairman) at 082 573 4219 or aprinsloo9@live.com, Hennie Sadie (Vice Chairman) at 073 565 8164 for more information.



## NOTICE OF THE ENVIRONMENTAL AUTHORISATION PROCESSES FOR THE PROPOSED TUMELA CENTRAL SHAFT PROJECT LOCATED NORTH OF NORTHAM, LIMPOPO PROVINCE

Notice is hereby given in accordance with the National Environmental Management Act (No. 107 of 1998) as amended (NEMA), Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) Regulations 2010, Government Notice Regulation (GNR) 543, Section 21 of the National Water Act (No. 36 of 1998) (NWA) and the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (No. 28 of 2002) (MPRDA) for the proposed Tumela Central Shaft Project at the Anglo American Platinum Limited: Rustenburg Platinum Mines - Amandabult Section (RPM-AS).

### PUBLIC MEETING

The Public Meeting for the proposed project has been postponed to the following times/dates: Amandabult Recreation Club (14/05/2013, 16:00 - 17:30). Should you wish to attend the Public Meeting, please respond to Jared O'Brien by 13 May 2013.

### NAME OF PROPONENT

Anglo American Platinum Limited: Rustenburg Platinum Mines - Amandabult Section

### NAME OF CONSULTANT

WSP Environmental and Energy (Pty) Ltd  
Contact: Jared O'Brien for further info on 011 361 1396

### REGISTER AS A STAKEHOLDER

To register as a stakeholder, please submit your name, contact information and interest in the matter to the Consultant.



## NOTICE OF AN EMPR ALIGNMENT AND CONSOLIDATION PROCESS AT ANGLO AMERICAN PLATINUM: RUSTENBURG PLATINUM MINES - RUSTENBURG SECTION

Notice is hereby given in terms of the Minerals and Petroleum Resources Development Act (No. 28 of 2002) (MPRDA) of the intent to notify stakeholders of the aligned and consolidated Environmental Management Programme Report (EMPR) for Anglo American Platinum Limited: Rustenburg Platinum Mines - Rustenburg Section (RPM-RS).

### DESCRIPTION

RPM-RS was requested by the North West Department of Mineral Resources to align their existing Mining Right and associated EMPR, and subsequent amendments previously awarded under the Minerals Act (No. 51 of 1996), to the requirements of the MPRDA.

RPM-RS appointed WSP Environmental (Pty) Ltd (WSP) to manage the EMPR alignment process. WSP has compiled one comprehensive consolidated EMPR for the entire mine lease area (including all mining and process operations for RPM-RS). The consolidated and aligned EMPR took cognisance of the original RPM-RS EMPR and numerous amendments in accordance with the MPRDA. The final document represents commitments already approved in the current RPM-RS EMPR and numerous amendments - the only change is related to the requirements of the MPRDA.

### PUBLIC REVIEW

The draft EMPR document is available for public review for a period of 30 days from 8 May until 7 June 2013. All registered stakeholders will have an opportunity to review the report and submit comments to WSP for incorporation into the final EMPR document. The draft EMPR will be available on WSP's website ([www.wspenvironmental.co.za](http://www.wspenvironmental.co.za)) and electronic copies will be made available to stakeholders on request.

### NAME OF PROPONENT

Anglo American Platinum: Rustenburg Platinum Mines - Rustenburg Section

ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT PRACTITIONER:  
WSP Environmental (Pty) Ltd

### CONTACT PERSON

Name: Brent Holme  
Tel: 011 361 1389  
Fax: 086 532 8685  
E-mail: [Brent.Holme@wspgroup.co.za](mailto:Brent.Holme@wspgroup.co.za)  
Address: PO Box 5384, Rivonia, 2128



Holts Bullies Boesman.



Miss Molly.



Theron's Calibra in Long Hang event.



Granite.

*"A world-class city where all communities enjoy the high quality of life"*

## Invitation to Bid

Bid No	Description	Doc Fees (non-refundable)	Availability of Bid Doc	Evaluation System	CIDB Grading	Compulsory Briefing Session	Enquiries	Closing Date
RLM/DI/0148/2012/13	Supply and Delivery of various Water and Sewer Materials for Rustenburg Local Municipality	R500	13 May 2013 at 12:00	90/10	N/A	N/A	Mr P Motswasele, tel. (014) 590-3324/3085	21 June 2013 at 11:00
RLM/DLED/0021/2012/2013	Proposal to Conduct the Feasibility Study on the Rustenburg Development Agency	R250	13 May 2013 at 12:00	80/20	N/A	16 May 2013 at 11:00 at Rustenburg Local Municipal Offices, cnr Beyers Naude and Nelson Mandela Drives	Mrs OK Matshidiso, tel. (014) 590-3054	29 May 2013 at 11:00
RLM/DPS/0150/2012/2013	Supply and Delivery of Two 4x4 Bush Pumps	R500	13 May 2013 at 12:00	90/10	N/A	N/A	Mr BE Mfolve or Mr MD Mufloane, tel. (014) 590-3813/3814	30 May 2013 at 11:00
RLM/BTO/0051/2012/13	Water, Electricity, Refuse Removal and Sanitation Service Audit	R500	13 May 2013 at 12:00	90/10	N/A	17 May 2013 at 11:00 at Rustenburg Local Municipal Offices, cnr Beyers Naude and Nelson Mandela Drives	Ms L Mokotedi or Mr W Senne, tel. (014) 590-3125/3101	21 June 2013 at 12:00

Sealed documents marked with the relevant reference and description, must be placed in the bid box situated in the foyer of the Municipal Offices, Missionary Mpheni House, corner Nelson Mandela and Beyers Naude Drives, Rustenburg by no later than the prescribed closing date and time, whereafter the bids will be opened in public in the Municipal Offices. Bids may also be posted to the Directorate: Budget and Treasury, PO Box 550, Rustenburg 0300 before the aforementioned date and time. The Municipality will not accept any bid received late.

Please note that no bid documents will be given to couriers unless the courier company is in possession of a letter on an official letterhead confirming, on behalf of the company, the full details of the specific bid document to be collected, as well as the payment of the full amount payable for the bid documents required.

All bids will be evaluated in accordance with the Supply Chain Policy of the Rustenburg Local Municipality, PPPFA and other related legislation.

Bids will remain valid for 90 days.

An updated record of payment of rates, taxes and services to the relevant municipality must be attached. Failure to do so will invalidate the bid submitted.

The lowest or any bid will not necessarily be accepted and the Municipality reserves the right to accept the whole or part of any bid. The Municipality reserves the right to increase or decrease quantities as indicated in the technical specifications.

Bid documents must include the B-BBEE Status Level of Contributors verified by accredited agencies.

Dr MK Mako  
Municipal Manager  
Rustenburg Local Municipality,  
Missionary Mpheni House,  
PO Box 16, Rustenburg 0300

Notice No: 33/2013



E-MAIL us all your: NEWS TIP-OFFS PHOTO'S news

[rustenburgherald.co.za](http://rustenburgherald.co.za)

**Platinum Weekly Publication Proof**



# ROAD RANTS



## Taxi ploughs into building When Cars & Scooters Collide

**Rustenburg** – Two vehicles, a minibus taxi and a blue Ford, were involved in a collision at the corner of Thabo Mbeki Drive and Von Wieligh Street on Friday, causing the taxi to plough through the wall of a building close to the intersection.

Four people sustained minor injuries in the accident, which occurred at around 15h00, and were treated on scene by Trauma Rescue Services. They were taken to hospital for observation. The cause and circumstances leading up to the accident are not yet clear at this stage, but according to eye witnesses, both drivers accused each other of jumping the red traffic light. The police are investigating the accident.

Damage to the second car involved in the accident with a taxi on Friday.



Rubble tells the story of a taxi that ploughed through the wall.

## When Cars & Scooters Collide

Damage to the car involved in a collision with a scooter



**Rustenburg** – A scooter rider sustained facial injuries, a fractured arm and a fractured leg in a collision with a blue Opel on Friday, 3 May. The accident occurred on the corner of Bosch and Zending Streets in the late afternoon, and the circumstances surrounding it are not yet clear. Weyland Bothma reports that paramedics of the Trauma Rescue Services and Net-care911 treated the injured rider on the scene, and transported him to hospital for observation and care. The driver of the Opel was not injured. Bothma thanked the Trauma staff and bystanders for their assistance. Police are investigating the accident.

### R&D FENCING

YOUR SAFETY IS OUR CONCERN

ROBBIE DOUGLAS

CELL: 082 601 1588

E-MAIL: robbie@rdfencing.co.za



### samancor

Samancor Chrome is a progressive, innovative company with an enviable reputation for being an employer of choice. We have a clearly defined commitment to provide growth and development opportunities and these are evident at our two mines, three production plants and our corporate head office.



The following opportunities have become available at Western Chrome Mines in the North West Province.

### FA Superintendent (Finance)

The successful candidate will provide a full financial accounting service in accordance with accepted financial and accounting policies and procedures. This will include administering and providing support for the SAP (FICO) module, identifying and managing risks, compiling financial reports, and reconciling final product figures. Managing financial management processes such as CAPEX, accounts payable/receivable and payroll, managing year-end processes, compiling management reports and forecasting cash flow will also be required.

Candidates must have a relevant degree or diploma with at least 3 years' experience in a managerial position. Knowledge of SAP is essential. Ref. No. SAM17982

### SHEQ Specialist (Standards, Research and Development)

The incumbent will be accountable for standards, research and development as well as implementation of benchmarking principles within the mining, engineering, plant and shared services. This will include conducting risk assessments on current and future mining activities, ensuring compliance with SHEQ requirements, analysing health and safety as well as the environmental impact related to the introduction of standardised/new practices, and leading the revision or establishment of mine standards. Identifying alternative options related to new/standardised practices earmarked for possible implementation will be required, as will participating in the development of training material, engaging with stakeholders to determine operational requirements, defects and deficiencies, developing policies, procedures and standards to govern newly revised practices, and highlighting all non-compliance aspects.

Candidates must hold a relevant SHEQ degree or Technikon Diploma, a Mine Overseers Certificate or equivalent qualification and at least 8 years' related underground, engineering and plant experience. A certificate in Risk Management and COMSOC 1 and 2 is also required. Ref. No. SAM17992

*In making the final selection, consideration will be given to achieving the Samancor Chrome's employment equity and the mining charter objectives.*

All candidates may submit their CV, quoting the relevant Ref. No. by email to [wcmhrcv@samancorcr.com](mailto:wcmhrcv@samancorcr.com) or by fax to (014) 574-6131. Closing date: 17 May 2013.

*If you have not been contacted within 3 weeks after the closing date, please assume that your application has been unsuccessful.*



PLATINUM

### NOTICE OF THE ENVIRONMENTAL AUTHORISATION PROCESSES FOR THE PROPOSED TUMELA CENTRAL SHAFT PROJECT LOCATED NORTH OF NORTHAM, LIMPOPO PROVINCE

Notice is hereby given in accordance with the National Environmental Management Act (No. 107 of 1998) as amended (NEMA), Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) Regulations 2010, Government Notice Regulation (GN, R) 543, Section 21 of the National Water Act (No. 36 of 1998) (NWA), and the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (No 28 of 2002) (MPRDA) for the proposed Tumela Central Shaft Project at the Anglo American Platinum Limited: Rustenburg Platinum Mines - Amandelbult Section (RPM-AS).

#### PUBLIC MEETING

The Public Meeting for the proposed project has been postponed to the following time/date: Amandelbult Recreation Club (14/05/2013, 16:00 – 17:30). Should you wish to attend the Public Meeting, please respond to Jared O'Brien by 13 May 2013.

#### NAME OF PROPONENT

Anglo American Platinum Limited: Rustenburg Platinum Mines – Amandelbult Section

#### NAME OF CONSULTANT

WSP Environment and Energy (Pty) Ltd  
Contact Jared O'Brien for further info on 011 351 1396

#### REGISTER AS A STAKEHOLDER

To register as a stakeholder, please submit your name, contact information and interest in the matter to the Consultant.



---

## Letters of Notification

WSP Reference No: 36015  
LEDET ref no.: To be determined

22/02/2013

Dear Stakeholder

## **NOTICE OF THE ENVIRONMENTAL AUTHORISATION PROCESSES FOR THE PROPOSED TUMELA CENTRAL SHAFT PROJECT, TUMELA MINE LOCATED AT AMANDELBULT SECTION NORTH OF NORTHAM, LIMPOPO PROVINCE**

Rustenburg Platinum Mines - Amandelbult Section (Amandelbult Section) comprises two mines; Tumela Mine and Dishaba Mine. In addition, Amandelbult Section also includes a concentrator plant at which the ore extracted from the Dishaba and Tumela Mines is processed. Amandelbult Section is an operational mine located north of Northam in the Limpopo Province. The Tumela Mine has revised its Business Plan to access resources on both the Merensky and the UG2 reef horizons, located on the farm Schildpadnest 385 KQ via a new shaft (the Tumela Central Shaft). The new shaft will be located in the Limpopo Province within the Thabazimbi Local Municipality (NP 361) and the Waterberg District Municipality (DC 36), approximately 40 km south of Thabazimbi, 15 km north of Northam and 100 km north of Rustenburg (see **Appendix A** for a locality map).

The Tumela Upper Mine comprises a series of small incline shafts and shallow raise bored shafts. The Merensky and UG2 Reefs on this shallower infrastructure will be depleted within the next five years. The ore body on both Merensky and UG2 around this shallower infrastructure are being depleted and necessitates additional hoisting capacity from depths exceeding 800 metres below surface. An additional Central Shaft is required in order to supplement the depleting production rate at the Tumela Mine. It is proposed that the Central Shaft Project will increase production to above 4 Mega tons per annum for the Tumela Mine. The objective of the Central Shaft Project will be to install infrastructure to access the 15 East mining area (refer to **Appendix B**), to greater depths on both the Merensky and UG2 reef horizons (rock layers containing mineral deposits), which will ensure production of ore from the 15 East mining area by 2019. The infrastructure will be designed for a capacity of 250 kilo tons per month (ktpm) however, only 125 ktpm will be handled during the first eight years of operation.

The envisaged activities/ infrastructure include: a Main shaft headgear and surface infrastructure, two ventilation shafts (downcast and upcast), a waste rock dump, refrigeration plant(s), additional electrical reticulation and instrumentation (including a main Eskom substation); compressed air infrastructure, emergency power generation infrastructure, mine stores (including: explosives shed, timber yard, winder house, lamp house, salvage yard, and workshops), water management infrastructure, offices (including change-houses), waste management systems, and security systems (including access control).

In order for the proposed activities to commence the Amandelbult Section requires authorisation in line with the relevant environmental legislation. The Limpopo Economic Development, Environment and Tourism (LEDET), the Department of Mineral Resources (DMR), and the Department of Water Affairs (DWA) will be responsible for authorising the Scoping and Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) process in accordance with the National Environmental Management Act (No. 107 of 1998) (NEMA), the Environmental Management Programme Report amendment (EMPR) process in accordance with the Minerals and Petroleum Resource Development Act (No 28 of 2002) (MPRDA) and the Water use License Application (WULA) process in accordance with the National Water Act (No. 36 of 1998) (NWA), respectively.

WSP Environment and Energy (WSP) has been appointed as the independent environmental assessment practitioner to undertake the environmental authorisation process for the project and to facilitate stakeholder engagement.

In accordance with NEMA, Government Notice Regulation (GN. R) 544 and 545, the undertaking of certain listed activities requires environmental authorisation.

The activities listed in GN. R 544 associated with the proposed project include (but not limited to):

- Activity 9: The construction of facilities or infrastructure exceeding 1000 metres in length for the bulk transportation of water, sewerage or storm water-
  - With an internal diameter of 0.36 metres or more; or
  - With a peak throughput of 120 litres per second or more,
- Activity 12: The construction of facilities or infrastructure for the off-stream storage of water, including dams and reservoirs, with a combined capacity of 50000 cubic metres or more, unless such storage falls within the ambit of activity 19 of Notice 545 of 2010;
- Activity 13: The construction of facilities or infrastructure for the storage, or for the storage and handling, of a dangerous good, where such storage occurs in containers with a combined capacity of 80 but not exceeding 500 cubic metres; and

**WSP Environmental (Pty) Ltd**  
WSP House  
Bryanston Place  
199 Bryanston Drive  
Bryanston, 2021  
Tel: +27 (0)11 361 1380  
Fax: +27 (0)11 361 1381  
<http://www.wspenvironmental.co.za>  
Reg. No: 1995/08790/07

WSP Group plc  
Offices worldwide

- Activity 23: The transformation of undeveloped, vacant or derelict land to-
  - Residential, retail, commercial, recreational, industrial or institutional use, inside an urban area, and where the total area to be transformed is 5 hectares or more, but less than 20 hectares, or
  - Residential, retail, commercial, recreational, industrial or institutional use, outside an urban area, and where the total area to be transformed is bigger than 1 hectare but less than 20 hectares.

The activities listed in GN. R 545 associated with the proposed project include (but not limited to):

- Activity 5: The construction of facilities or infrastructure for any process or activity which requires a permit or license in terms of national or provincial legislation governing the generation or release of emissions, pollution or effluent and which is not identified in Notice No. 544 of 2010 or included in the list of waste management activities published in terms of section 19 of the National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act No. 59 of 2008) in which case that Act will apply.

Application for environmental authorisation (in the form of a Scoping and EIA process) for activities listed in GN. R 544 and 545 was submitted to the LEDET on the 11th of February 2013.

The following water use activities listed under Chapter 4, Section 21 of NWA are considered relevant and will require authorisation in the form of an amendment to the existing Integrated Water Use License Application (WULA) or alternatively the submission of a separate WULA:

- 21 (g): Disposal (storage) of water containing waste.

A meeting with the DWA has been scheduled to detail the way forward and to confirm the relevant legislated activities.

Furthermore, Amandelbult Section is required to undertake an EMPR amendment process, in line with the MPRDA due to the alteration/ expansion of activities within the mine lease area. A notification letter has been submitted to the DMR to indicate the commencement of the environmental authorisation process.

A Public meeting will be held in order to outline the details of the project to stakeholders and provide an opportunity for stakeholders to raise questions and indicate potential issues or risks associated with the project. The Public Meeting will be held at the Amandelbult Recreation Club on Monday the 11 March 2013 from 16:00pm to 17:00pm.

Should you wish to attend the Public Meeting, please respond to Jared O'Brien by 8 March 2013. Furthermore, if you require directions to the public meeting venue please do not hesitate to contact the undersigned.

In addition, please note that the draft scoping report will be on public and department review between the 23<sup>rd</sup> of February and the 4<sup>th</sup> of April 2013, at the following locations:

- Tumela Platinum Mine Main Office reception;
- Montserre Traditional Authorities office;
- Amandelbult Recreation Club;
- Northam Library; and
- WSP Environment and Energy website ([www.wspenvironmental.co.za](http://www.wspenvironmental.co.za)).

Should you wish to register as a stakeholder, please submit your details to Jared O'Brien.

Regards,

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read 'Jared O'Brien', is written over a horizontal line.

**Jared O'Brien**  
**Consultant**

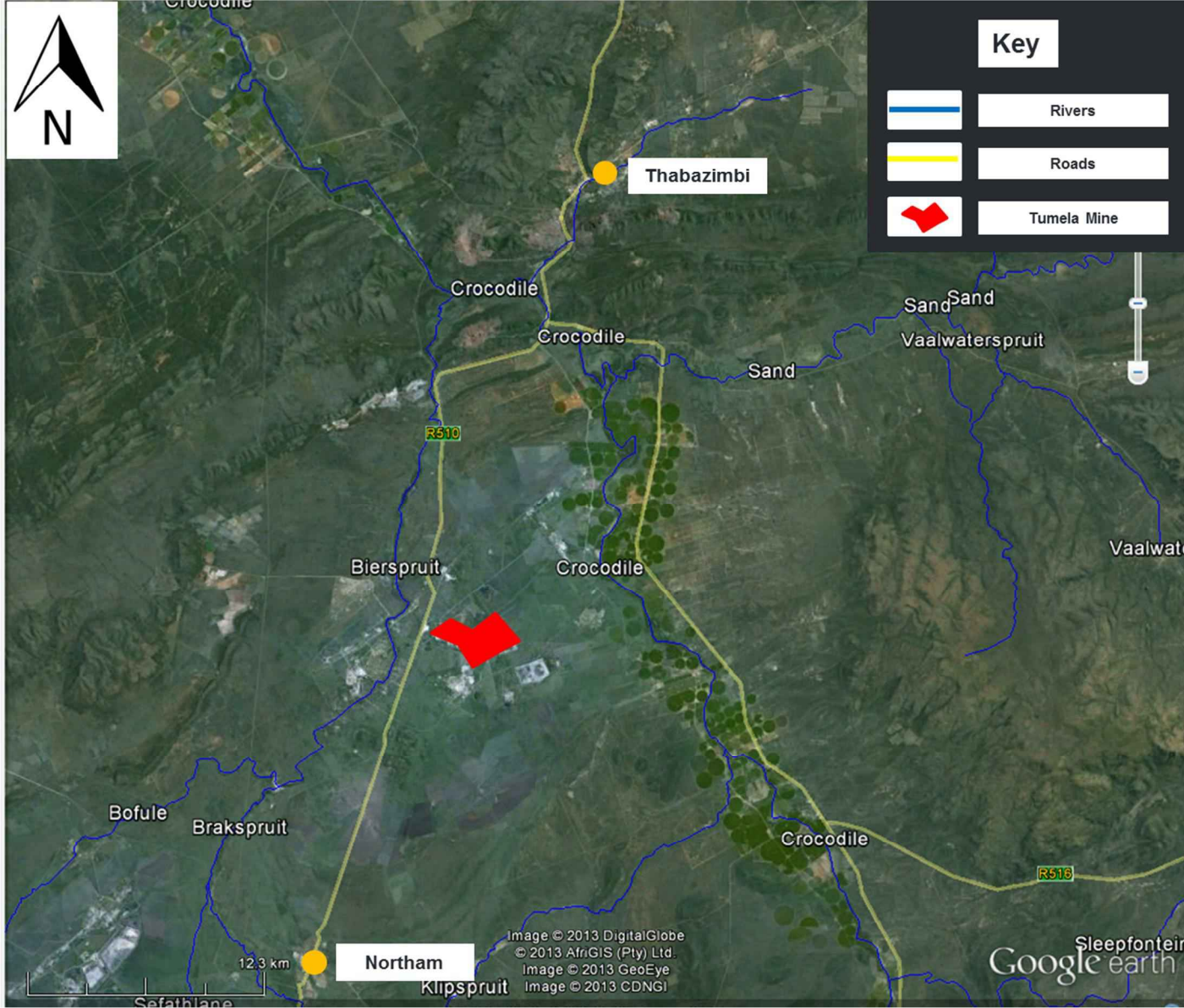
Tel: 011 361 1396

Fax: 086 505 3939

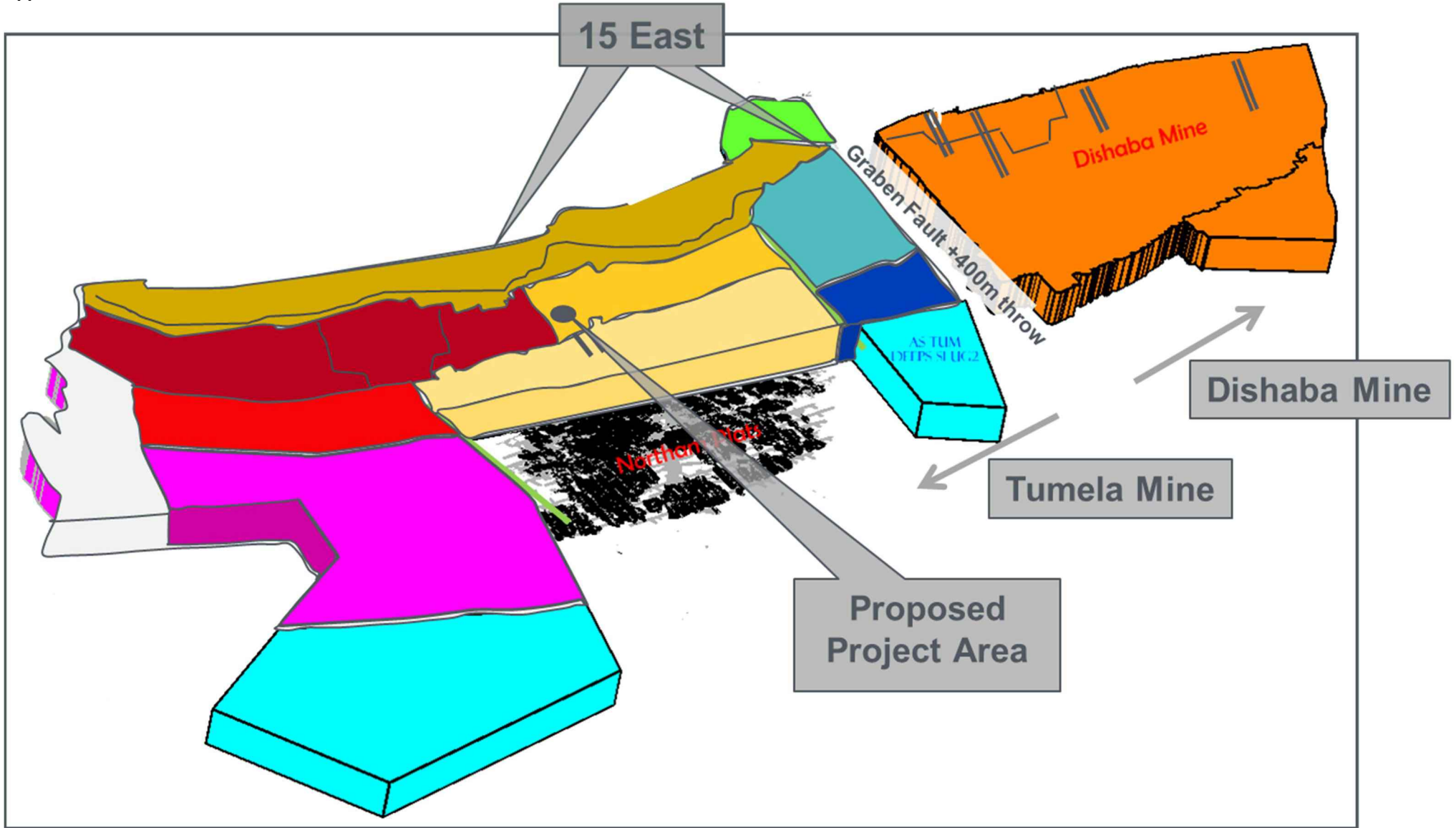
Email: [Jared.O'Brien@wspgroup.co.za](mailto:Jared.O'Brien@wspgroup.co.za)



Appendix A







---

Issues Trail

# RUSTENBURG PLATINUM MINES: THE PROPOSED TUMELA CENTRAL SHAFT PROJECT LOCATED IN THE LIMPOPO PROVINCE

## ISSUES RAISED BY VARIOUS STAKEHOLDERS (INCLUDING AUTHORITIES) AND ASSOCIATED MANAGEMENT RESPONSES - SCOPING PHASE.

ISSUES AND RESPONSES							
Issue reference	Stakeholder	Issue	Source	Date	Responses	Action Plan	
						Plan	Responsible person and completion date
1.	WSP	WSP requested a notification meeting with the DMR to confirm the department's content with the process.	Azwihangwisi Mulaudzi (Limpopo DMR) – Telephone call	04/02/2013	WSP have submitted a signed project notification letter to the DMR which was received via email (delivery receipt is on record). WSP have requested a meeting with the DMR however, the Department indicated that WSP is to send a notification of the project to the DMR followed by the final scoping report.	WSP to monitor any communication received from the DMR.	WSP (on-going)
2.	LEDET	The application submitted to the LEDET by WSP does not have a sufficient project locality map and the activities in the application are not put into the project context correctly. The LEDET thus rejected the application.	LEDET (TA Kubaye)	18/02/2013	WSP in response to the rejection submitted an updated application form which met the requirements of GNR 543 which was subsequently accepted by the LEDET and issued to WSP.	WSP to make up the lost time during the process by ensuring regular follow ups with the authorities during the review process.	WSP (on-going)
3.	(Mantsere Traditional Council)	A Mantsere community member questioned if the project will result in an increased opportunity of employment for communities in the area.	Community Engagement Forum Meeting	08 March 2013	<p>Tom van den Berg (TvdB) indicated the following: At the current trend on the mine other shafts will reach depletion in the coming years which will result in job losses. The Tumela Central Shaft project is the only project which can avoid the loss of a great number of jobs at the mine. The project will replace many existing shafts which only have 5 years of mining remaining. All the resources currently dedicated to the existing shafts will be shifted to the Proposed Central Shaft Operation.</p> <p>TvdB emphasised that should this project not be granted by the Department, approximately 4,000 people's jobs will be at risk. The mine is investigating the use of Rustenburg Platinum Mines (RPM) employees from the Rustenburg operation in order to run the Central Shaft project construction phase. The employees are trained and skilled in the development of a new shaft. The Rustenburg operations employees living in close proximity to the Amandelbult section will be targeted.</p> <p>During the tender process of the project planning phase the tender documents will include a requirement to employ local labour where possible. Furthermore, the tenderers will be rated according to the number of local labourers utilised.</p>	Tender documents to include a scoring system which includes the awarding of points based on the number of local labourers employed during the construction phase. RPM to consider the feasibility of the transferring of skills from Rustenburg operations which have since closed down or the training of locals. To be further investigated in the Environmental Impact Assessment Phase (EIA) phase.	RPM/Hatch (on-going)
4.	Local Municipality member	A Local municipality member queried which communities will be affected and targeted during the public participation process. In addition, what	Community Engagement Forum Meeting	08 March 2013	It is unlikely that the project will have significant negative social impacts on nearby communities however a Social Desktop Assessment is being undertaken to identify if any communities will be affected by the project.	WSP to ensure one ward councillor from each community is informed of the transport to ensure that the 20 nominated stakeholders per community are allocated to each bus.	WSP/RPM (days leading up to the 30 <sup>th</sup> of April 2013)

RUSTENBURG PLATINUM MINES: THE PROPOSED TUMELA CENTRAL SHAFT PROJECT LOCATED IN THE LIMPOPO PROVINCE

ISSUES AND RESPONSES							
Issue reference	Stakeholder	Issue	Source	Date	Responses	Action Plan	
						Plan	Responsible person and completion date
		arrangements are in place in terms of transport for these members to attend the public meeting.			<p>For the public participation process the project identified the communities closest to the mine which includes Northam; Smashblock; Rethabile Location; Mantserre; and Thabazimbi. First question is not addressed: "Will the project cover all affected communities?"</p> <p>Are the 5 communities in the zone of influence! Some might be outside. Please articulate this?</p> <p>RPM will provide 5, 20 seater buses for transport of community nominated stakeholders to the scoping phase public meeting on the 30th of April 2013. A bus will be provided to the following 5 surrounding communities: Northam; Smashblock; Rethabile Location; Mantserre; and Thabazimbi. The buses will collect 20 stakeholders from each community following which the attendees will be taken on a site visit to the proposed Tumela Central Shaft location. The buses will then transport the stakeholders to the public meeting following which they will be transported back to the collection points. All other stakeholders are free to attend the scoping phase public meeting.</p>		
5.	Local municipality member	A local municipality member asked why RPM cannot take the existing employment (Social & Labour Plan) plan and expand employment on the mine instead of creating additional documents for this project such as the EMPR.	Community Engagement Forum Meeting	08 March 2013	The environmental authorisation process is a legal requirement and thus the undertaking by RPM. The Social and labour plan (SLP) will be consulted during the operational phase of the project.	The environmental authorisation process to take place as planned.	WSP (end November 2013)
6.	Mantserre community member	A Mantserre community member queried who the owners of the project land are? In addition, he questioned whether or not the land owner will receive any preference in the public participation process and during the project operational phase.	Community Engagement Forum Meeting	08 March 2013	The team responded indicating that the Mantserre community is the land owner. RPM and the Mantserre trust are currently undertaking discussions to reach a mutually beneficial lease agreement which will benefit Mantserre. Mantserre management/leadership will be informed of the outcome and involved in the process where necessary.	RPM to continue with lease agreement negotiations with the Mantserre trust.	RPM (on-going)
7.	Municipal representative	A Municipal representative questioned whether there is any alignment between Project Alchemy and this project? She further explained that Project Alchemy indicated the year	Community Engagement Forum Meeting	08 March 2013	Alchemy is an empowerment transaction and not linked to this project. It does not replace the SLP or other CSI initiatives. Roll out of alchemy has started with the establishment of the technical working group where members are represented by their respective municipalities.	RPM to continue with project Alchemy as well as the mine SLP and other CSI initiatives undertaken by the mine. Project Alchemy is not part of this project and is dealt with as part of operational procedures on the mine.	RPM CED (on-going during mine operations)

**RUSTENBURG PLATINUM MINES: THE PROPOSED TUMELA CENTRAL SHAFT PROJECT LOCATED IN THE LIMPOPO PROVINCE**

ISSUES AND RESPONSES							
Issue reference	Stakeholder	Issue	Source	Date	Responses	Action Plan	
						Plan	Responsible person and completion date
		2013 and not 2027 as indicated by TvdB?					
8.	Municipal representative	The community indicated that they do not want to allocate jobs to people from Rustenburg but instead the mine must train people from the local communities in the period leading up to the construction phase so the locals are ready for the start date of the project. This will prevent the community from missing out on potential jobs.	Community Engagement Forum Meeting	08 March 2013	TvdB indicated that currently the living quarters on the mine have an allocation of 1.5 employees per room. The mine plans to reduce this to one person per room in order to meet the requirement of the Social and Labour Plan. If the mine contracts Rustenburg employees they will need to live at the mine living quarters which creates a capacity issue. TvdB further explained that the mine would like to employ people from the surrounding communities as this would avoid having to house the Rustenburg residents. He indicated that there are currently people living in the surrounding communities who travel a long distance to the Rustenburg operations each day. In order to avoid the current situation the mine is to investigate which individuals are commuting between provinces and subsequently investigate re-assigning them to work in the closest operation. This will save on transport costs as well as solve the living quarter's capacity issues.	RPM to ensure that community members are made aware of the potential job opportunities via the local municipality and the ward councillors. Furthermore, RPM to include local labour condition in the tender documentation. RPM to undertake investigations into the employee commuting scenario to rectify and create efficiency in the operation. RPM to investigate the possibility of hiring miner cadets from the communities who can be trained to operate mining machinery during construction and operation of the proposed shaft.	RPM (on-going)
9.	Ward Councillor	A ward councillor questioned the outsourcing of general labourers and indicated that he views it as a current issue in the municipality's perspective. He further described that people living in these communities are poor and that the mine is not benefiting the municipality. We need to ensure that RPM localise the job opportunities on the mine.	Community Engagement Forum Meeting	08 March 2013	Please refer to the response issued in issue reference 8.	Please refer to the response issued in issue reference 8.	RPM (on-going)
10.	Municipal representative	A Municipal representative requested tangible examples of local enterprises which have been developed by AAP in the past.	Community Engagement Forum Meeting	08 March 2013	A RPM Contractor who was present at the meeting responded saying yes, there are a number of examples. The contractor indicated that local Small, Medium and Micro-sized Enterprises (SMME's) are encouraged to tender for work on the mine however the contractor cannot force the locals to participate in the process.	RPM are to monitor future efforts on the training and development front to ensure that the programmes/efforts are successful.	RPM and contractors (on-going during construction and operation)
11.	Chief of Mantserre	The Chief of Mantserre indicated that last year he had a meeting at the recreational club where the land lease agreement was discussed. He requested that	Community Engagement Forum Meeting	08 March 2013	RPM are in the process of undertaking a land evaluation which will form the basis of the re-negotiation exercise. The chief will be informed of the findings and subsequently consulted.	RPM to follow up with the progress of the land survey and provide feedback to the relevant individuals.	RPM (on-going)



**RUSTENBURG PLATINUM MINES: THE PROPOSED TUMELA CENTRAL SHAFT PROJECT LOCATED IN THE LIMPOPO PROVINCE**

ISSUES AND RESPONSES							
Issue reference	Stakeholder	Issue	Source	Date	Responses	Action Plan	
						Plan	Responsible person and completion date
		the lease agreement issues are to be closed out prior to the undertaking of the proposed project. As land owner he does not agree to the project until the said lease agreement is re-negotiated. The chief was planning a march (strike) in months gone by however RPM indicated that they want to discuss the agreement prior to taking evasive action. He emphasised that it is now 1 year later and nothing has been done by RPM to resolve the issue.					
12.	Stephen Lerumo	Stephen Lerumo stated the following: "Are we going to meet at each and every community during the EIA phase for the public meetings, e.g. in Mantserre community hall which is more accessible to all".	Tumela Central Shaft Project Public Meeting	11 March 2013	WSP to consider the request during the EIA phase. Please refer to issue reference number 4 for scoping phase public meeting arrangements. The approach taken in the scoping phase may be altered during the EIA phase however, this will be determined during the EIA phase.	Please refer to issue reference number 4. WSP to confirm the EIA public meeting and notify stakeholders of the venue(s).	WSP (EIA phase)
13.	Community member	A community member requested the date of the next meeting as she was not available for the present one. She further requested that the attendees fill in the register so that WSP can notify all of the date/time of the upcoming events.	Tumela Central Shaft Project Public Meeting	11 March 2013	WSP have not yet confirmed the time, date and venue of the upcoming EIA phase venue however, the stakeholders who register on WSPs database will be notified as and when the details are confirmed.	WSP to notify the registered stakeholders of the EIA phase public meeting as well as the third meeting associated with the scoping phase.	WSP
14.	Stephen Lerumo	Stephen Lerumo queried the surface water pollution that he believes is created by the mining activities in the area, specifically referring to the Bierspruit. He further explained that we need to determine how to avoid the problem or fix (mitigate) the impact.	Tumela Central Shaft Project Public Meeting	11 March 2013	WSP responded indicating that there will be a hydrological specialist study undertaken to determine the expected impact however, the team does not foresee a significant impact due to proximity of the new project area of development and the Bierspruit.	WPS to undertake a hydrological assessment of the proposed project area and issue mitigation measures to prevent any significant pollution from taking place as a result of the proposed project.	WSP (EIA phase)
15.	Stephen Lerumo	Stephen Lerumo queried the statement in Background Information Document (BID) referring to possible	Tumela Central Shaft Project Public Meeting	11 March 2013	Danie van Aswegen (DvA) explained that the mine does not desire to create the expectation that there will be an extensive number of jobs created as a result of the project because that is not likely due to	RPM are to endeavour to understand the skills available for potential further local SMME contracts.	RPM (EIA phase)

**RUSTENBURG PLATINUM MINES: THE PROPOSED TUMELA CENTRAL SHAFT PROJECT LOCATED IN THE LIMPOPO PROVINCE**

ISSUES AND RESPONSES							
Issue reference	Stakeholder	Issue	Source	Date	Responses	Action Plan	
						Plan	Responsible person and completion date
		opportunities for SMME's in the area. He further explained that it is important to inform the local prospective entrepreneurs of how they can exploit the opportunities to make sure they don't miss the opportunity. He emphasised that RPM are not to give all the work to Johannesburg businesses.			the scale of the project however, the main positive factor which will result from the project is the avoidance of job losses in the current Tumela work force due to potential mine closure should the project not go-ahead. The Mine production manager emphasised the need for the mine to understand what skills are available in the communities to make sure that the mine can make use of the skills when required.		
16.	The mine production manager and local community member	The mine production manager raised the need for an interpreter to facilitate the meeting discussions post presentation. The communities are not familiar with the English language. He further emphasised that a Tswana translator would help the community understand the project.	Tumela Central Shaft Project Public Meeting	11 March 2013	LR stated that Segale (CED representative) was meant to be in attendance during the first notification meeting however, they were not able to attend. LR requested the assistance of Bengie (RPM representative) in order to provide translation during this meeting. WSP will arrange the presence of a translator during the public meeting to be held on the 30th of April 2013.	WSP to arrange for the presence of a translator for the next scoping phase meeting and for the public meeting to take place in the EIA phase.	WSP
17.	Community member	A community member raised the concern of lack of transport provided to go to these public meetings. Stephen Lerumo suggested that Mantserre be the best location/venue for these meetings.	Tumela Central Shaft Project Public Meeting	11 March 2013	Please refer to the response issued in issue reference 8.	Please refer to the response issued in issue reference 8.	Please refer to the response issued in issue reference 8.
18.	Mabusela Maphuti (Northam Parliamentary Constituency)	Mabusela mentioned that the youth should be empowered for this project and that women should also be considered. The project should be useful to the communities in surrounding areas and to improve the environmental condition of surrounding areas. Mabusela wants the project to have positive feedback to RPM so they can continue with other projects that will assist the communities.	Tumela Central Shaft Project Public Meeting	11 March 2013	Please refer to the response issued in issue reference 10 & 15.	Please refer to the response issued in issue reference 10 & 15.	Please refer to the response issued in issue reference 10 & 15.
19.	Stephen Lerumo (Smashblock ward Councillor)	Polluting river near Smash block also bursting of pipes passing Trollope Residential	Tumela Central Shaft Project Public Meeting	11 March 2013	Please refer to the response issued in issue reference 14.	Please refer to the response issued in issue reference 14.	Please refer to the response issued in issue reference 14

**RUSTENBURG PLATINUM MINES: THE PROPOSED TUMELA CENTRAL SHAFT PROJECT LOCATED IN THE LIMPOPO PROVINCE**

ISSUES AND RESPONSES							
Issue reference	Stakeholder	Issue	Source	Date	Responses	Plan	Responsible person and completion date
		community from contractor plant. A waste water plan may be erected to reduce contamination of water. Employment to be in place addressing social labour plan (SLP) within our communities.					
20.	Madibela Johannes (Thabazimbi Municipalities)	The community has a high unemployment rate in Thabazimbi sub-district, will the project assist with this? In addition, will the project assist women and young people?	Tumela Central Shaft Project Public Meeting	11 March 2013	Please refer to the response issued in issue reference 10 & 15.	Please refer to the response issued in issue reference 10 & 15.	Please refer to the response issued in issue reference 10 & 15.
21.	Ephraim Sekhu (Mantserre community)	Requested that WSP set up a meeting with the Mantserre Trust in order to discuss the project. However, he acknowledged that a discussion after the public meeting on the 30 <sup>th</sup> of April will suffice.	Phone call	27 March 2013	WSP to consult the stakeholder after the public meeting on the 30th of April 2013.	WSP to meet with the stakeholder during public meeting.	WSP (9 <sup>30h</sup> April)
22.	Kate Kekana (Northam)	I will love to be part of the project because I have no job and we don't have a breadwinner in our house, so I will love to have that job because I would love to help provide for mother and my family.	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	The project will ensure that current jobs on the mine are retained. If the project does not receive authorisation many jobs on the mine will be at risk. The project will thus have a positive impact on employment in the surrounding communities by maintaining existing employment.	The mine will endeavour to obtain authorisation and go-ahead with the project to maintain the production rate at the mine and associated jobs. Should additional job opportunities become available, the mine management will determine what skills are available in the surrounding communities however, the sinking of a new shaft requires very specialised labour which is often not available in the surrounding communities.	RPM (pre-construction phase and operational phase)
23.	Johannes Mokgaetsi	Interested in skills development and employment opportunities created from the project. He would like the mine to make training opportunities available to the communities.	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	Training is provided to employees on the mine as per commitments in the social and labour plan (SLP) and community engineering programme. The mine continues to provide training through the community engineering programme but cannot accommodate everyone due to budgetary constraints.	RPM to continue providing training for communities as per the approved SLP. Furthermore, RPM to identify any additional feasible training programmes.	RPM (on-going, prior to the construction phase)
24.	Thabiso Khumalo (Northam)	How can we benefit? How can we get access to a donation? RPM had previously indicated that any donations in terms of services must be approved by the relevant departments prior to being undertaken by the mine as per the MPRDA	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	Community members must write motivations for their request and submit these to the RPM CED coordinator who will record the submission and facilitate where relevant.	RPM to re-approach the municipality to attempt to expedite the approval process. Community members are to submit written motivation in line with their donation requests.	RPM (on-going)

**RUSTENBURG PLATINUM MINES: THE PROPOSED TUMELA CENTRAL SHAFT PROJECT LOCATED IN THE LIMPOPO PROVINCE**

ISSUES AND RESPONSES							
Issue reference	Stakeholder	Issue	Source	Date	Responses	Action Plan	
						Plan	Responsible person and completion date
		requirements. She is pleased with the WSP presentation. So far it has brought light to the communities understanding.					
25.	Precious Mpunzi (Northam)	<p>Please help with the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The sport ground.</li> <li>■ The community project that was not completed.</li> <li>■ Job opportunities for youth.</li> </ul> <p>My interest in the above is to get money to open my own business.</p>	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	The project team is unaware of the unfinished project or who the donor was at the time. The undertaking of the Central Shaft project will ensure that current jobs are maintained on the mine to prevent retrenchment. If additional jobs become available, RPM will ensure the surrounding communities are considered. There are opportunities for training through the cadet programme and engineering programme as well as bursaries.	RPM are to retain current jobs on the mine through the Tumela Central Shaft Project and consulting the community if the skills required by the mine are available in the communities surrounding the mine.	RPM (on-going)
26.	Bosney Meslas (Northam)	<p>He will be happy to see sustainable development opportunities to improve the lives of the people. He is Worried that the job opportunities will be transferred to Northam ward 7 residents only and that the other wards will not benefit from the mine. Overall, he strongly supports the project.</p>	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	The RPM Human Resources (HR) department will deal with all labour related questions. The community members are welcome to contact the CED to obtain a way forward.	Community members to consult with the mine CED.	RPM (on-going)
27.	Morgan Mcube (Mantserre)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ How will the project benefit the communities?</li> <li>■ How will the project develop the youth of our communities?</li> <li>■ How will the project give the community opportunities?</li> </ul>	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	<p>RPM indicated that the SLP includes, but is not limited to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Which community projects the mine will be involved in;</li> <li>■ Where employment must be sourced from; and</li> <li>■ How local suppliers/contractors are to be used by the mine.</li> </ul> <p>RPM acknowledges that there is room for improvement in terms of local economic development initiatives at the mine. The SLP as authorised by the DMR, governs the process and dictates how such issues are dealt with.</p> <p>Furthermore, the commissioning of this project will ensure job security in terms of the current employment on-site however, the number of additional employment opportunities will be limited.</p>	RPM are to undertake projects in line with the approved SLP. RPM to undergo the project authorisation process in order to ensure job security.	RPM (on-going) WSP to ensure sound authorisation process to obtain authorisation.
28.	Beauty Nokuzola (Cllr of Thabazimbi Municipality)	<p>He is happy about the project because of the following reasons:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ No jobs are available in the communities;</li> <li>■ Jobs that may be created for children in the communities one day in</li> </ul>	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	Noted	-	-

**RUSTENBURG PLATINUM MINES: THE PROPOSED TUMELA CENTRAL SHAFT PROJECT LOCATED IN THE LIMPOPO PROVINCE**

ISSUES AND RESPONSES							
Issue reference	Stakeholder	Issue	Source	Date	Responses	Action Plan	
						Plan	Responsible person and completion date
		the future; ■ Smash block has been included in this process; ■ This project may assist Smash Block in terms of gravel for roads, electricity and water supply.					
29.	Thandy Qibi	The community needs the mine/shaft as the shaft will result in jobs or retain jobs.	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	Noted and appreciated.	-	-
30.	R.B Morare	How do you help small business	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	SMME's may be utilised for removing material from the WRDs and transport to the community to use as infill for roads. This is to be confirmed in the Mine Closure Plan. Furthermore, the RPM SLP stipulates conditions in terms of the use of local contractors which should be met by the mine.	RPM to develop a database of skills availability in the area (including local contractors).	RPM (on-going)
31.	Tshepo (Mantserre)	To fight unemployment, because RPM is retrenching people.	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	The mine is undertaking the environmental authorisation process in order to commence with construction activities and ensure ore production from the shaft in order to retain jobs.	WSP to undertake authorisation process and RPM to begin construction in June 2014 (based on the outcome of the authorisation process).	WSP (2013/2014) RPM (on-going)
32.	Elizabeth Mokoka (Mantserre)	My wish is the involvement of the community for this project. If possible, workshops are to be held to train the community.	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	RPM will utilise local SMME's and local labour where possible however the job opportunities are very limited on this project. A community workshop will be considered by the mine and notifications will be distributed to stakeholders if approved.	Utilise SMME's and local labour where viable.	RPM (project duration)
33.	Evidence Baloyi (Smash Block)	The creation of jobs, skills development and obtaining working experience will change the communities for the good. He does not want a hostel to be built. He would prefer to live in his own house in the community.	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	Hostels are now referred to as 'single accommodations villages'. Yes, new single accommodations villages would be constructed for project. Currently the mine is housing employees at 1.5 people per room which is in exceedance of the mines SLP condition. A community workshop will be considered by the mine and notifications will be distributed to stakeholders if approved. Training programmes are undertaken in accordance with the SLP.	RPM are working towards reducing this number of persons per room to 1 person as required by the SLP. Community members are to submit training motivations to the CED which the department will then record and consider.	RPM (project duration)
34.	Bongiwe Mamba (Smash Block)	The project is good, it will create more jobs and end poverty. The project has to provide skills for unskilled people. Appreciates the fact that WSP/RPM involved the community as the community would like to have their say.	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	Noted.	-	-
35.	Mavis Muyeni	Acknowledged that the mine is required in order to secure jobs for the children in the future.	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	The mine is undergoing the environmental authorisation process in order to commission the project to stabilise the production rate of ore at the mine and retain existing employment.	RPM to continue with the project planning and design.	RPM (all phases of the project)



**RUSTENBURG PLATINUM MINES: THE PROPOSED TUMELA CENTRAL SHAFT PROJECT LOCATED IN THE LIMPOPO PROVINCE**

ISSUES AND RESPONSES							
Issue reference	Stakeholder	Issue	Source	Date	Responses	Action Plan	
						Plan	Responsible person and completion date
36.	Mary Mogorosi (Northam)	It is good to sustain and protect jobs but it should be an upscale project.	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	The mine is currently attempting to sustain current capacity, not increasing in size due to market related factors.	RPM to continue with the central shaft project to sustain current labour force.	RPM (project duration)
37.	Tshepo (Northam)	Please reduce unemployment in Northam	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	The mine is currently attempting to sustain current capacity, not increasing in size due to market related factors. Should the project go ahead current employees living in Northam will retain their jobs.	RPM to continue with the central shaft project to sustain current labour force.	RPM (project duration)
38.	Nteboheng Nkhoesa (Smash Block)	<u>Bierspruit pollution</u> Need to reduce the pollution rate of the Bierspruit passing through the Tumela Mine and through Smash Block. She suggested a waste water treatment or sewer for water reticulation, to address water quality impacts.	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	<u>Bierspruit pollution</u> RPM expressed concern and indicated that mine management would respond immediately to the Bierspruit pollution matter and that the mine, until this point, was unaware of the occurrence. The extent of the pollution needs to be understood and an appropriate plan is to be put in place to resolve the issue. The environmental co-ordinator added that currently the mine has a comprehensive monitoring programme to assess any impact the mine may have on the water courses surrounding the mining area. The monitoring plan includes both groundwater and surface water monitoring. The monitoring plan forms part of the Water use License at the Amandelbult Section.	RPM to understand the source of pollution to the Bierspruit as detailed by the community member.	RPM (immediately)
39.	Nteboheng Nkhoesa (Smash Block)	<u>Interests in the project</u> The implementing of the SLP and corporate investment plans within the communities. She wants the employees to reside within a decent residential area. Also wants to eradicate escalations of informal housing settlements.	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	<u>Interests in the project</u> RPM indicated social projects are part of an integrated benefits model. This includes the Corporate Social Investment (CSI) fund, SLP and project Alchemy. Members of the community were asked to get in contact directly with the RPM CED regarding such projects, as this did not form part of this project scope. RPM detailed project Alchemy as follows: The project is based on allowing the communities to decide how the mines CSI fund is allocated. RPM will give the decision making power to local leaders whom have the best interest of the communities at heart to ensure the projects are effective at alleviating pressure on communities. The municipality must approve any RPM projects prior to the project being undertaken in terms of the Municipal Integrated Development Plan as they need to be aligned.	Furthermore, RPM to continue with the current social benefit projects as per the SLP.	RPM (on-going)
40.	Margaret Nkotso	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The project will create a lot of opportunities to those who are unemployed.</li> <li>■ Keep mine clean all the time.</li> </ul>	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	The mine follows strict mine health and safety regulations and are audited against these standards on a regular basis to ensure compliance. A mine is a risky environment to work in and thus precautions are taken.	RPM to continue with strict health and safety hazards according to the EMS procedure.	RPM (on-going)

RUSTENBURG PLATINUM MINES: THE PROPOSED TUMELA CENTRAL SHAFT PROJECT LOCATED IN THE LIMPOPO PROVINCE

ISSUES AND RESPONSES							
Issue reference	Stakeholder	Issue	Source	Date	Responses	Action Plan	
						Plan	Responsible person and completion date
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mine workers to live in healthy environment to remain healthy</li> </ul>					
41.	Catherine Semaraleng Sikwane (Northam)	The project will have a positive benefit on the community as they will not lose their jobs. This way the mine will continue to be operational and can provide jobs for the youth one day. The community will benefit because they need infrastructure skills development for youth.	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	Noted	-	-
42.	Joseph Letageng	Why when we go to the mine looking for jobs, do they tell us we need a years' worth of work experience? Where will you get a year's experience if you are fresh from college?	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	The mine recruitment department will deal with this statement. The community is to please raise the issue formally with the recruitment department at the mine.	Community to approach the recruitment department.	Community members and the mine recruitment department.
43.	Katrena (Northam)	As we are attending these meetings, are we going to be called at the end when the mine is being opened? How will we know when there are vacancies available? Can we volunteer at the mine?	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	The opportunities (limited number) will be advertised by the mine according to the SLP procedures.	RPM to follow approved procedures to notify prospectors.	RPM (project duration)
44.	Lemogang Moabi (Northam)	Youth at Northam have a problem of recruiting in our community. Mostly we have basic certificates as their training records. The youth require help with their studies. Furthermore, they need assistance with roads and community grounds.	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	The mines recruitment department have specific standards that must be met prior to accepting a new recruit. Due to strict health and safety requirements the mine cannot accept any applicants. There are opportunities for training through the cadet programme and engineering programme through as well as bursaries.	Community members to apply to the cadet programmes to obtain training and expertise from the mine. Following this the recruitment department may commission the cadet.	RPM (on-going)
45.	Margaret Knots	Happy with the project because of the following: It will create work for communities and the children. Many women don't get jobs because of they are above 40 years and are not suitable to work in the mines. Usually the mines need people who passed matric	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	Unfortunately due to health and safety regulations, workers on the mine must be fit and capable of working underground and as such RPM cannot risk the safety record on the mine by hiring people unfit for the type of work.	-	-

**RUSTENBURG PLATINUM MINES: THE PROPOSED TUMELA CENTRAL SHAFT PROJECT LOCATED IN THE LIMPOPO PROVINCE**

ISSUES AND RESPONSES							
Issue reference	Stakeholder	Issue	Source	Date	Responses	Action Plan	
						Plan	Responsible person and completion date
		(grade 12) majority of the residents do not have this certificate.					
46.	Johanna R Moshaba	I am thankful for what the mine is doing, because now our children will have work and the nation will not struggle as much anymore with unemployment. May God bless it to proceed so that we and our families will live.	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	Noted.	-	-
47.	Mama Ditsele (Womanslike Chairperson)	I am very happy as we and our children will have work now. This project will help the poor. The women above 40 years are struggling to find employment. The mine indicates that the women are too old to work in the environment. how are these women meant to live/	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	Unfortunately due to health and safety regulations, workers on the mine are to fit and capable of working underground and as such RPM cannot risk the safety record on the mine by hiring people unfit for the type of work.	-	-
48.	Community member	What is the proposed footprint of the proposed project?	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	Hatch engineer indicated that the project footprint of the shaft area is approximately 600 m x 400 m (i.e. 240,000m <sup>2</sup> ).	-	-
49.	Community member	Concern was raised regarding safety during construction. Will there be risks to health and safety of people and animals crossing the project area.	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	Mine management indicated that the construction area will be fenced off prior to construction commencing in order to prevent access and in doing so prevent potential injury to animals and humans.	Mine to ensure the area is fenced off prior to construction.	RPM (prior to construction activities)
50.	Community member	A community member indicated that he is concerned with the possible dust and noise generation during the construction phase. Specifically emphasising the impact on nearby communities such as the Trollope Farm area (contractor residential area).	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	WSP indicated that the negative impacts will be managed in accordance with the air quality and noise specialist studies that have been completed for the project. These recommendations and mitigation measures will be included in the EMPR which RPM is required to comply with in accordance with legislation.	The mine to ensure that the mitigation measures are implemented on-site.	RPM (project duration)

RUSTENBURG PLATINUM MINES: THE PROPOSED TUMELA CENTRAL SHAFT PROJECT LOCATED IN THE LIMPOPO PROVINCE

ISSUES AND RESPONSES							
Issue reference	Stakeholder	Issue	Source	Date	Responses	Action Plan	
						Plan	Responsible person and completion date
51.	Community member	According to several members of the representative communities, the Bierspruit is being polluted by the mine and is unfit for animals or people to drink.	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	The mine expressed concern and indicated that mine management would respond immediately to the matter and that the mine, until this point, was unaware of the occurrence. The extent of the pollution needed to be understood and an appropriate plan would be put in place to resolve the issue. LM added that currently the mine has a comprehensive monitoring programme to assess any impact the mine may have on the water courses surrounding the mining area. The monitoring plan includes both ground water and surface water monitoring. The monitoring plan forms part of the Water use License at the Amandelbult Section.	Mine management to determine the cause of the problem and rectify this. The monitoring requirements as stipulated in the Amandelbult IWUL are to be upheld.	RPM (immediate and on-going)
52.	Community member	When is construction to commence for the Proposed project?	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	Should the financial and environmental processes proceed successfully and within the current time frames, the mine is aiming to commence underground workings in June 2013 and surface workings in June 2014. This timeline is however influenced by both Anglo American Platinum (AAP) approval processes as well as the environmental authorisation legal process.	Underground workings in June 2013 and surface workings in June 2014.	WSP & RPM (obtain authorisation and begin construction)
53.	Community member	What benefits will the community receive from the proposed project?	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	RPM indicated that the Social and Labour Plan (SLP) includes (but is not limited to): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Which community projects the mine will be involved in;</li> <li>■ Where employment must be sourced from; and</li> <li>■ How local suppliers/contractors are to be used by the mine.</li> </ul> RPM acknowledges that there is room for improvement in terms of social aspects at the mine. The SLP as authorised by the DMR governs the process and dictates how such issues are dealt with. <p>Furthermore, the commissioning of this project will ensure job security in terms of the current employment on-site however, the number of additional employment opportunities will be limited to a small number of people.</p>	RPM to continue to implement the SLP on-site.	RPM (on-going)
54.	Community member	Can't the WRD material be transferred back into the	Tumela Central Shaft Project public	14 May 2013	RPM has an approved EMP in place which governs the activities undertaken on-site to ensure	RPM to rehabilitate the mine as per the approved rehabilitation plan. RPM to investigate the donation of the material to	RPM (on-going, closure phase of the mine)

RUSTENBURG PLATINUM MINES: THE PROPOSED TUMELA CENTRAL SHAFT PROJECT LOCATED IN THE LIMPOPO PROVINCE

ISSUES AND RESPONSES							
Issue reference	Stakeholder	Issue	Source	Date	Responses	Action Plan	
						Plan	Responsible person and completion date
		ground as infill material?	meeting		environmental sustainability. As part of this EMP, RPM have a rehabilitation plan in place which is focused on the closure and rehabilitation of the mine. The aim of this plan is to recover the land to its original state (natural state). The manner in which this is undertaken can be obtained from the detailed plan.	the surrounding communities as construction material for the dust roads (i.e. to fill the potholes)	
55.	Community member	A community member queried the fact that he did not believe enough Mantserre community members were present.	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	WSP & RPM responded indicating that the main contact person at the village is the chief whom WSP contact to invite to the public meeting. Furthermore, WSP erected a site notice in the community with the time, date and venue of the meeting to inform members.	WSP to continue with the PPP as currently undertaken to ensure all relevant stakeholders are informed.	WSP (throughout the authorisation process)
56.	Community member	A community member requested training for community members as they cannot find employment.	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	Training is provided to employees on the mine as per commitments in the social and labour plan. The mine continues to provide training through the community engineering programme but cannot accommodate everyone due to budgetary constraints.	RPM to continue with current training programme to satisfy the requirements of the community.	RPM (on-going)
57.	Community member	The DMR must be notified of the project.	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	RPM indicated that the DMR is aware of the project. Furthermore, during the presentation, WSP indicated that the DMR had been notified via notification letter.		
58.	Community member	What community specific sustainable development projects RPM would be providing for the surrounding communities?	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	RPM indicated such projects were part of an integrated benefits model. This includes the Corporate social investment fund, the social and labour plan and project Alchemy. Members of the community are requested to get in contact directly with RPM LED regarding such projects, as this does not form part of the proposed project. RPM detailed project Alchemy during the public meeting as follows: The project is based on allowing the communities to decide how the mines CSI fund is allocated. RPM will give the decision making power to local leaders whom have the best interest of the communities at heart to ensure the projects are effective at alleviating pressure on communities. The municipality must approve any RPM projects prior to the project being undertaken in terms of the	RPM to continue with their current CSI projects as well as the implementation of Project Alchemy.	RPM (on-going)



**RUSTENBURG PLATINUM MINES: THE PROPOSED TUMELA CENTRAL SHAFT PROJECT LOCATED IN THE LIMPOPO PROVINCE**

ISSUES AND RESPONSES							
Issue reference	Stakeholder	Issue	Source	Date	Responses	Action Plan	
						Plan	Responsible person and completion date
					Municipal Integrated Development Plan (needs to be aligned).		
59.	Community member	What opportunities there will be particularly for the youth in terms of training and up-skilling?	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	There are opportunities for training through the cadet programme and engineering programme through as well bursaries.	Community members are to approach the CED to obtain details on the cadet programmes and the engineering programme. Bursaries are also available for the communities to apply for.	Community members (on-going)
60.	Community member	Have the Thabazimbi municipality been notified of the process?	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	WSP indicated yes, the local and district municipalities form commenting authorities in the authorisation process undertaken by WSP.	WSP to continue including the district municipality in future communications.	WSP (on-going throughout the process)
61.	Community member	What opportunities were available for the removing of material within the Waste Rock Dumps (WRD) for SMME's? Furthermore, a request was made to donate the aggregate material to the communities in order for them to use the material on the roads within communities to fill the potholes.	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	Removal and rehabilitation of the site (including WRDs) will be included in the Mine Closure Plan, and the possibility of SMME's removing material from the WRDs would be investigated as a mitigation measure as indicated by RPM.	RPM management to approach the community to investigate mutually beneficial project.	RPM (date not defined)
62.	Community member	A storm water trench running from the concentrator is running into the Bierspruit. What is being done to prevent this from happening in future projects?	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	The mine expressed concern and indicated that mine management would respond immediately to the matter and that the mine, until this point, was unaware of the occurrence. The extent of the pollution needed to be understood and an appropriate plan would be put in place to resolve the issue. RPM added that currently the mine has a comprehensive monitoring programme to assess any impact the mine may have on the water courses surrounding the mining area. The monitoring plan includes both ground water and surface water monitoring. The monitoring plan forms part of the Water use License at the Amandelbult Section.	Mine management to determine the cause of the problem and rectify this. The monitoring requirements as stipulated in the Amandelbult IWUL are to be upheld.	RPM (immediate and on-going)
63.	Community member	The Mantserre community believes they should receive priority for improvements to their community, as they are	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	RPM noted that the HR Department at the mine should respond to the questions as they are aware of the criteria for recruitment. Unfortunately no personnel from the recruitment department were	RPM to continue with community beneficiation as per current plans in place in terms of the SLP, CSI projects and project Alchamy.	RPM (on-going)

RUSTENBURG PLATINUM MINES: THE PROPOSED TUMELA CENTRAL SHAFT PROJECT LOCATED IN THE LIMPOPO PROVINCE

ISSUES AND RESPONSES							
Issue reference	Stakeholder	Issue	Source	Date	Responses	Action Plan	
						Plan	Responsible person and completion date
		the landowners. They would also like to understand how recruitment is undertaken on the mine.			available to provide responses to the community members. A response to the question would however be provided. RPM asked the Mantserre community to be cognisant of the needs of their neighbours and other nearby and surrounding communities. Mantserre is not the only community impacted by the mine.		
64.	Community member	What is required to apply for funding of community projects? (What does RPM CED require from the community in order to obtain approval for the social benefit projects).	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	Community members must write motivations for their request and submit these to the CED coordinator who will facilitate.	Community to submit motivations and RPM to consider motivations going forward.	Community members (on-going) & RPM (on-going)
65.	Community member	Smash Block has no basic services. Can RPM assist in supplying such basic needs?	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	The Mine SLP had originally budgeted for projects in Smash Block. RPM has previously been in discussion with the government regarding these services, but as Smash Block is outside the Mine Lease area, it is up to government to provide such services. According to government, the area still needs to be registered by the Surveyor General, and until that process is completed, services cannot be provided. It is regrettably beyond RPM's control to be involved with the supplying of such services at this point in time.	The municipality is to deal with the issue as currently out of the control of RPM.	Municipality (on-going)
66.	Community member	What does WSP stand for?	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	No specific abbreviation merely a company name. According to legislation, the environmental authorisation process is to be run by an independent environmental assessment practitioner which is WSP's role in the project.	-	-
67.	Community member	Can WSP provide 'peace jobs' to the community during the project?	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	WSP have a sufficient number of employees to deal with the current workload and as such do not require any further assistance. However, if WSP require any further assistance on-site, the community may be approached by WSP.	WSP to contact ward councillors if employment is required.	WSP (during the authorisation process)
68.	Community member	A community leader from Smash Block asked if RPM could give the community	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	RPM added that the Waste rock is a liability to the mine and as such the option of providing the communities with this material will be investigated	RPM to discuss with the relevant community representatives to plan the handover of the material (potential).	RPM (no date defined)

RUSTENBURG PLATINUM MINES: THE PROPOSED TUMELA CENTRAL SHAFT PROJECT LOCATED IN THE LIMPOPO PROVINCE

ISSUES AND RESPONSES							
Issue reference	Stakeholder	Issue	Source	Date	Responses	Action Plan	
						Plan	Responsible person and completion date
		some WRD material to fix a dongo/pothole on a community road.			by RPM. RPM asked that the issue could be discussed with the mine management away from this public meeting, this notion was agreed with by the community member.		
69.	Community member	The mine is currently building mine houses in Northam. Can members of the community purchase them?	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	Unfortunately not due to the houses being built for the mine employees or the municipality therefore ownership will lie with RPM.	-	-
70.	Community member	Which Mineral Rights will the Proposed project fall under?	Tumela Central Shaft Project public meeting	14 May 2013	AAP owns the Mineral Right for the entire area. Both Dishaba and the Tumela mining areas fall under the same permit.	-	-

---

## Stakeholder Meeting Records

---

**CEF Meeting Minutes**



# MEETING NOTES



Project Title	
Date	08/03/2013
Time	09:00 am - 11:00 am
Venue	Amandelbult Recreational club
Subject	Community Engagement Forum Meeting (Proposed project notification platform)
Project Present	Team Danilla Breedt (DB); Jared O'Brien (JO); Libby Redding (LR); Segale Pilane (SP); Thomas van Den Burg (TvdB) & Lebang Gaobepe (LG)
Apologies	N/A
Attachments	Appendix A: Attendance Register Appendix B: Meeting Agenda Appendix C: Project presentation

WSP Environment & Energy South Africa  
WSP House  
Bryanston Place  
199 Bryanston Drive  
Bryanston  
2191  
Tel: +27 11 361 1384  
Fax: +27 86 556 9717  
[www.wspenvironmental.co.za](http://www.wspenvironmental.co.za)

MATTERS ARISING	ACTION
<b>Welcome and Team Introductions</b>	
SP welcomed all present. LG indicated that WSP will be using the meeting as a platform to inform the various stakeholders of the proposed Tumela Central Shaft.	N/A
<b>Project presentation</b>	
<p>DB emphasised that the purpose of the meeting is to inform the local leaders and local authorities of the proposed project and the project specific public meeting which is to take place on Tuesday the 30<sup>th</sup> of April 2013. DB encouraged the attendees to join the meeting on Monday in order to obtain more information about the project. LG then opened the floor to any questions which the community members had regarding the project.</p> <p>*Please refer to <b>Appendix C</b> for the detailed project presentation.</p>	N/A
<b>Issues Raised and Discussed</b>	
<p>1. <u>A Mantserre community member raised the following question: "Will the project result in an increased opportunity of employment for communities in the area? Furthermore the member questioned the reconfiguration of four shafts in Rustenburg and the subsequent proposal of a new shaft construction project at Amandelbult".</u></p> <p>The following response was indicated by TvdB in order to give the attendees a background to the Tumela mine:</p> <p>Prior to the global economic down turn Amandelbult planned to sink four additional shafts. One of the Tumela shafts is located at Tumela lower mine. The lower mine operation was operating until it reached the end of the Merensky reef which pinched out (disappeared) as it reached the Graben fault. This resulted in the loss of lots of potential mining. As a result the Tumela Mine then looked at 4 shaft to replace the production which was lost at Shaft 1 in order to keep the mills on the mine full which in turn would keep the mine feasible (profitable). Following this, investors retracted the finance in order to complete the project and thus the Tumela Mine had to consider other alternatives in order to replace the Shaft 4 proposal.</p> <p>The 10 West project was then voted in favour of to replace a certain level of production from Shaft 1. Mine management have 4-5 years to replace production to keep the mine profitable. As it stands the production profile of the mine is heading for close down by 2027 unless the mine establishes new investments to access the available ore. The 10 west project would have only arrested production for a short period therefore the project was discarded.</p> <p>Anglo American Platinum (AAP)'s net debt has increased from R9 billion to R13 billion due to strike issues on the AAP mines. The Rustenburg Operation is a loss making operation due to low grade ore mined hence the shutdown of the loss making operations in order to avoid losses currently being experienced at the operation. If AAP is to spend money, the money needs to be spent where profits can be made (high return on ore). Therefore AAP decided to reinvest at Amandelbult where a 5.5 grams per ton return can be obtained at the Tumela mine. The Amandelbult Mine has a 1.8 metre reef compared to the reef at the Rustenburg operation where a reef of only 0.8 metres can be exploited thus the Amandelbult operation is far more feasible.</p> <p>The Tumela Central Shaft project is the only project which can avoid the loss of a</p>	N/A

MATTERS ARISING	ACTION
<p>great number of jobs at the mine. The project will replace many existing shafts which only have five years of mining remaining. All the resources currently dedicated to the existing shafts will be shifted to the Proposed Central Shaft Operation.</p> <p>The Merensky reef has been mined out therefore the mine was forced to convert to the UG2 reef. The mine is currently investigating the P1 reef however, to date the mine has not yet identified a method of extracting the P1 reef. Tumela may possibly employ additional projects in future in order to abstract the reef (unknown at this stage).</p> <p>DvdB emphasised that should this project not be granted by the authorities approximately 4,000 people's jobs will be at risk. The mine is investigating the use of Anglo employees from the Rustenburg operation in order to run the Central Shaft project. The employees are trained and skilled in the development of a new shaft.</p>	
<p>2. <u>A Local municipality member asked which communities will be affected by the project. In addition, he queried whom WSP is targeting for the public meeting on Monday? Will there be transport arrangements for communities to reach the venue? The time allocation of 4 pm to 5 pm creates an issue for community members to attend the meeting which means transport is required.</u></p> <p>LR mentioned that as part of the scoping phase, WSP and AAP will determine the need for transport. LR explained that the recreational club was selected as the best venue as the venue is central to all the surrounding communities. TvdB indicated that AAP can arrange transport if applicable. He further explained that he would follow up with AAP to determine if transport is relevant to the project. DB indicated that the Monday public meeting will target who ever has interest in the project. DB referred to the presentation hand-out to further explain location of the project in relation to the proposed activity (she emphasised that the project does not directly border any of the communities). The comment was noted and a formal response will be provided in due course. The issue will be included in the project issues trail.</p>	WSP/Anglo
<p>3. <u>A local municipality member indicated that Anglo have an established Social and Labour Plan which can be used for this project. Why can't Anglo take the existing plan and expand employment on the mine instead of creating additional documents for this project such as the EMPR which she believes is wasting Anglo's money which could be used elsewhere for community development.</u></p> <p>The issue/comment will be included in the issues trail and an answer will be provided in due course. The environmental authorisation process is a legal requirement and thus the undertaking by AAP.</p>	N/A
<p>4. <u>A Mantserre community member asked who the owners of the project land are? In addition, he questioned whether or not the land owner will receive any preference as they are landowners.</u></p> <p>The team responded indicating that the Mantserre community is the land owner. A response regarding preference to the landowner is to be provided in the Issues and Responses trail.</p>	N/A
<p>5. <u>A Local Municipal representative questioned whether there is any alignment between project Alchemy and this project? She further explained that Alchemy indicated the year 2013 and not 2027 as indicated by TvdB?</u></p>	Anglo (CED)

MATTERS ARISING		ACTION
	A response is to be provided in the Issues and Responses trail.	
6.	<p><u>Employees coming to Tumela from the Rustenburg Operation will affect jobs in the area.</u></p> <p>TvdB indicated that around 500 people are required to sink and develop the central shaft and often specialist people are required for the task. During the construction phase of the project (5 - 6 years) additional jobs may be created however the jobs will be temporary in nature. And therefore these jobs will be lost within 5-6 years of commissioning. On average 500 people are replaced on the mine per year due to death, retrenchment, and many other reasons. Following the loss of the individuals, the mine recruits cadets from the surrounding areas and trains them in order to replace the employees.</p>	N/A
7.	<p><u>The community indicated that they do not want to allocate jobs to people from Rustenburg but instead the mine must train people from the local communities in the period leading up to the construction phase so the locals are ready for the start date of the project. This will prevent the community from missing out on potential jobs.</u></p> <p>TvdB indicated that currently the living quarters on the mine have an allocation of 1.5 employees per room. The mine plans to reduce this to one person per room in order to meet the requirement of the Social and Labour Plan. If the mine contracts Rustenburg employees they will need to live at the mine living quarters which creates a capacity issue. TvdB further explained that the mine would like to employ people from the surrounding communities as this would avoid having to house the Rustenburg residents. He indicated that there are currently people living in the surrounding communities who travel all the way to the Rustenburg operation each day. In order to avoid this the mine needs to find out who the individuals are whom commute between provinces and subsequently re-assign them to work in the closest operation. This will save on transport costs as well as solve the living quarter's capacity issues.</p>	WSP & Anglo
8.	<p><u>A Municipal representative questioned the outsourcing of general labourers and indicated that he views it as an issue. He further described that people living in these communities are poor and that the mine is not benefiting the municipality. We need to ensure that we localise the job opportunities on the mine.</u></p> <p>TvdB indicated that 80,000 people are currently employed by the mine. The Mine's sending areas are people in the surrounding communities. All the contractors previously hired by the mine, except for a small number were sent off site. The contractors currently working on the mine do employ locals. A contractor representative indicated that he and his team always make the opportunities available to the communities however if there is no response from the community then unfortunately there is nothing more that can be done by the contractor or the mine. The community needs to understand that the employment is often short term in nature.</p>	N/A
9.	<p><u>A Municipal representative asked for tangible examples of local enterprises which have been developed by AAP in the past.</u></p> <p>The procurement officer present at the meeting said yes there are a number of examples. TvdB passed the question onto a contractor whom presently operates on the mine. The contractor indicated that yes local SMME's are encouraged to tender for work on the mine however the contractor cannot force the locals to</p>	Anglo

MATTERS ARISING		ACTION
	participate in the process.	
10.	<p><u>The Chief of Mantserre indicated that last year he had a meeting at the recreational club where the land lease agreement was discussed. He requested that the lease agreement issues are to be completed prior to the undertaking of the proposed project. As land owner he does not agree to the project until the said lease agreement is re-negotiated. The chief was previously planning a March (strike) however Anglo indicated that they want to discuss the agreement prior to taking action. He emphasised that it is now one year later and nothing has been done by Anglo to resolve the issue.</u></p> <p>LG indicated that the negotiation process involves the reviewing of the value of the land (currently underway). He further explained that the agreement made during the last meeting held between AAP and the Mantserre community resulted in the decision to tackle the lease issue separately (i.e. not let the lease issue affect this project). LG indicated that the issue will be discussed after this meeting. The chief emphasised that he wants the agreement in writing. TvdB indicated that the issue should be resolved shortly as the Mine will be sitting with land evaluator shortly following which he will put together an agreement in writing.</p>	Anglo
MEETING CLOSE OUT		ACTION
The meeting at this point continued without WSP (Please see <b>Appendix B</b> to view the meeting agenda). LG excused WSP from the meeting and thanked WSP for the presentation.		
Distribution: Project team		

## **Appendices:**








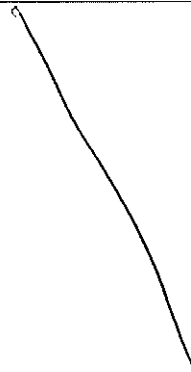
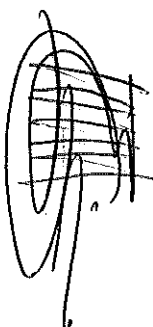

Appendix A: Attendance Register



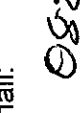


# CEF MEETING 08 MARCH 2013

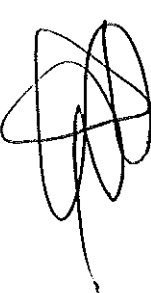


## THE PROPOSED TUMELA MINE CENTRALSHAFT PROJECT

### ATTENDANCE REGISTER

Name & Surname	Company/Community	Contact details (Tel/Fax/Email)	Signature
Sareed O'Brien	WSP	Tel: 011 361 1396 Fax: 086 505 3939 Email: jared.obrien@wspgroup.co.za	
Nozipho Gumede	Anglo Plat	Tel: 011 628 2260 Fax: Email: nozipho.gumede@angloamerican.com	
Libby Redding	AAP	Tel: 011 373 6744 Fax: Email: libby.redding@angloamerican	
Bafedile Moselane	Moses Kotane Local Municipality	Tel: 014 555 1407 Fax: 086 508 1879 Email: moselaneb@moseskotane.gov.za	

Name & Surname	Company/Community	Contact details (Tel/Fax/Email)	Signature
SYLVIA MATSIETSA	THABAZIMBI LOCAL Municipalities	Tel: 014 777 1525 ext 195 Fax: Email: smaticetia@gmail.com Cell: 0789452569	
BEAUTY Mphuea	THABAZIMBI LOCAL PR Councilor	Tel: Fax: Email: Cell: 0823278865	BN Mphuea
<del>ENOCK Mhete</del>	<del>ANGLO AFRICAN</del>	<del>Tel: Fax: Email:</del>	<del></del>
ENOCK Mhete	ANGLO AFRICAN	Tel: 014 784 2573 Fax: Email: enockm@angloafr.com	
AMANDA Mweny	PRIME RESOURCES	Tel: 011 477 4588 Fax: Email: amanda.mweny@resources.co.zi	

Name & Surname	Company/Community	Contact details (Tel/Fax/Email)	Signature
Karen Koen	Prime Resources	Tel: 011 447 4888 Fax: Email: Karen@resources.co.za	
Nomsa Lamberts	Ward Community	Tel: Fax: Email: 073061 9661	
PERCY CHAKE	WARD COMMUNITY LOUTH COUNCIL SMASH BROCK	Tel: 0785755904 Fax: Email: 082 434 9505	
Mabasa Mabasa	I-D-C	Tel: 0827673939 Fax: Email:	
heberg Goochope	Amplabs	Tel: 014 784 1746 Fax: Email:	

Name & Surname	Company/Community	Contact details (Tel/Fax/Email)	Signature
Segele Pilane	AMPASS	Tel: 014 784 1869 Fax: 086 760 0183 Email: segele.pilane@ampass.com	
Lesego Manzini	ANGLO	Tel: 014 784 1832 Fax: - Email: lesego.manzini@angloafrica.com	
KRRYSZAK Stryczak Jozel	LOCALMAN KRESTA	Tel: 011 011 9260 Fax: - Email: kstryczak@localman.co.za	
Simon Diale	Kopeta Mantsese	Tel: - Fax: 0767178812 Email: -	S.M. Diale

Appendix B: Meeting Agenda



REF NO:	FRM-CED-0002	DATE OF IMPLEMENTATION:	2009/12/07
VERSION NO:	0.2	LAST REVISION DATE:	2009/11/30

## COMMUNITY ENGAGEMENT FORUM AGENDA

### REPORT INFORMATION

<b>Operation/Area</b>	Amandelbult Section (Tumela and Dishaba)		
<b>Meeting Convened by:</b>	Segale Pilane/Lebang Gaobepe		
<b>Meeting Date</b>	08 March 2013	<b>Tel</b>	014 784 1746
		<b>Cell:</b>	083 707 9879
<b>CHAIRPERSON: Lebang Gaobepe</b>			
<b>AGENDA ITEMS</b>	<b>SPEAKER</b>		
Welcome and Opening	Segale Pilane		
Introduction & Apologies	All		
Accreditation (circulation of attendance register)	All		
Opening Remarks	Lebang Gaobepe		
Tumela Mine Central Shaft Project	Jerad O'Brien		
Progress Report – SLP Projects	Lebang Gaobepe		
Tumela Mine Chrome Plant Project	Karen Koen		
Procurement Opportunities	Greyling Jan/Molazi Muzi		
Announcements & Closer	Lebang Gaobepe		

Appendix C: Project presentation



Community Engagement Forum  
**Public Participation  
Process  
Scoping Phase**

**ANGLO AMERICAN PLATINUM,  
RUSTENBURG PLATINUM MINES,  
AMANDELBULT SECTION:**

**PROPOSED TUMELA MINE  
CENTRAL SHAFT PROJECT**

**Venue:** Amandelbult  
Recreational Club  
**Date:** 08 March 2013  
**Time:** 10h00

UNITED  
BY OUR  
DIFFERENCE



# Presentation Overview



- Introduction & Objective
- Project Description
- Project Location
- Public Participation & Authorisation Process
- Potential Impacts
- PUBLIC MEETING



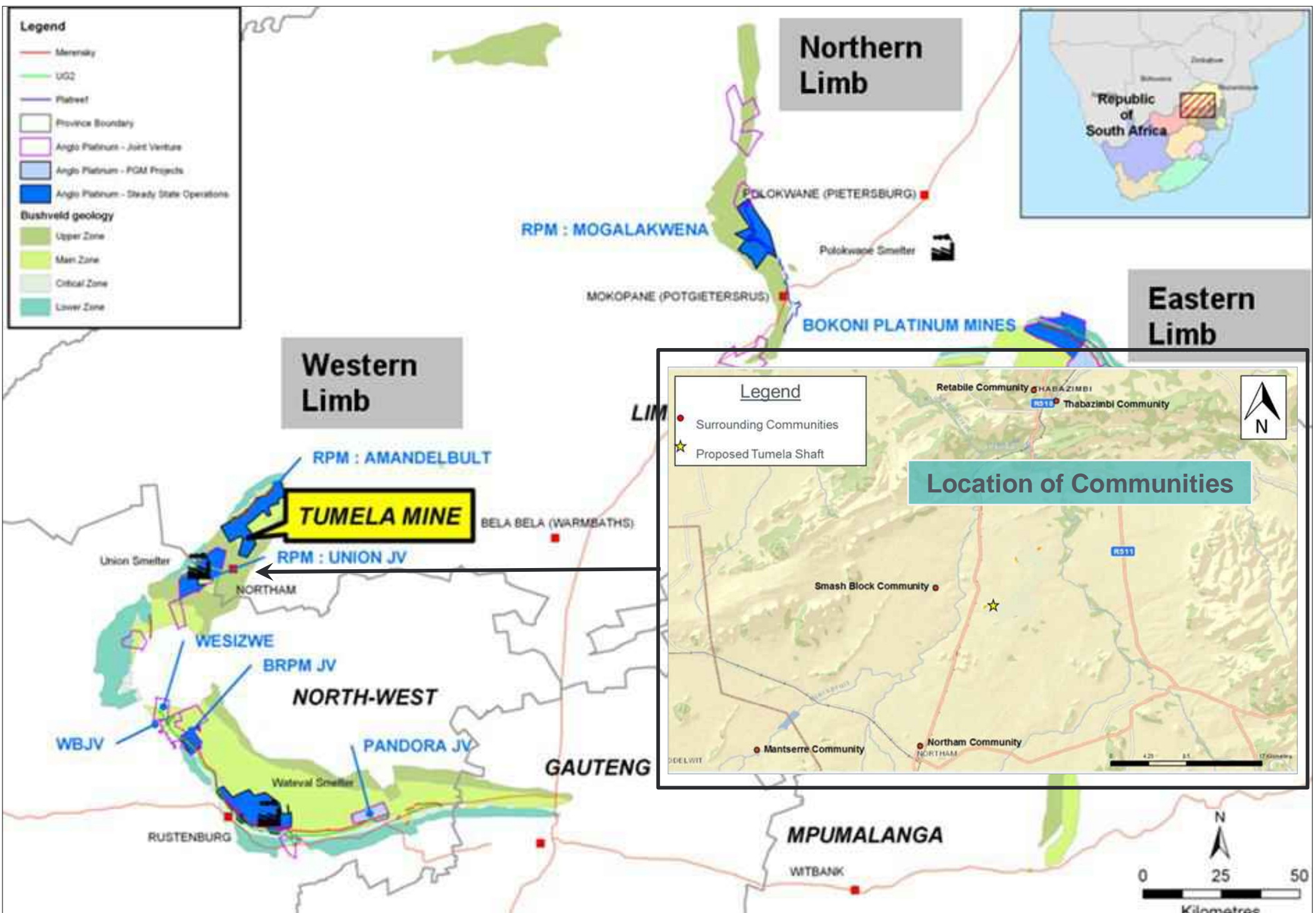
# Introduction & Objective



- Proponent
  - Anglo American Platinum Limited: Rustenburg Platinum Mines Limited (RPM)
- Independent Environmental Assessment Practitioner (EAP)
  - WSP Environmental (WSP)
- Public Participation is a legal requirement, and is the process by which the views and concerns of Interested and Affected Parties (I&APs) are identified and incorporated into the decision-making process. The objective of this process is to:
  - Inform key stakeholders of the proposed project;
  - Provide detail, location and motivation for the project;
  - Provide an opportunity to the public to raise concerns and issues;
  - Incorporate the public's input into the decision-making process.





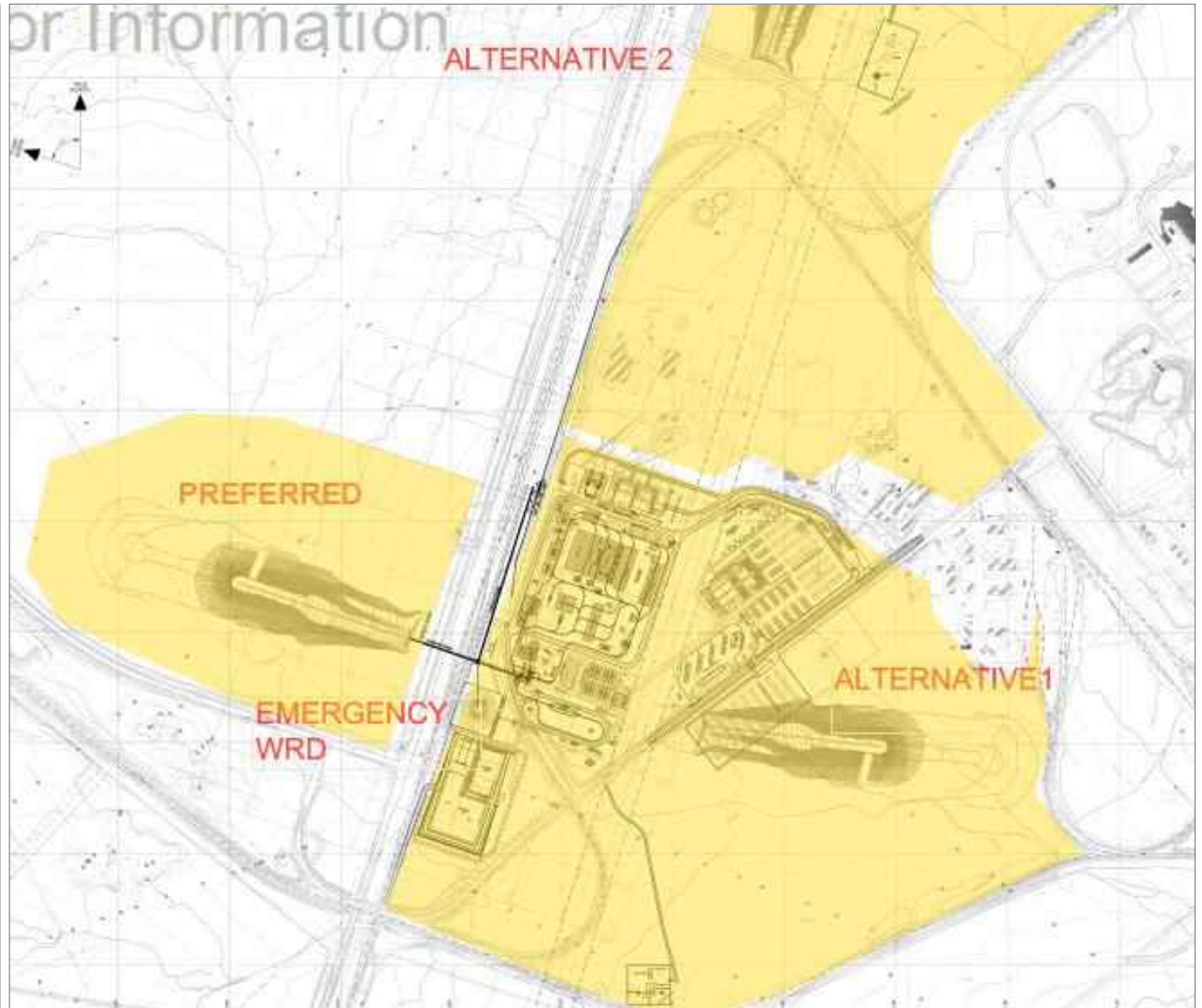


# Project Location



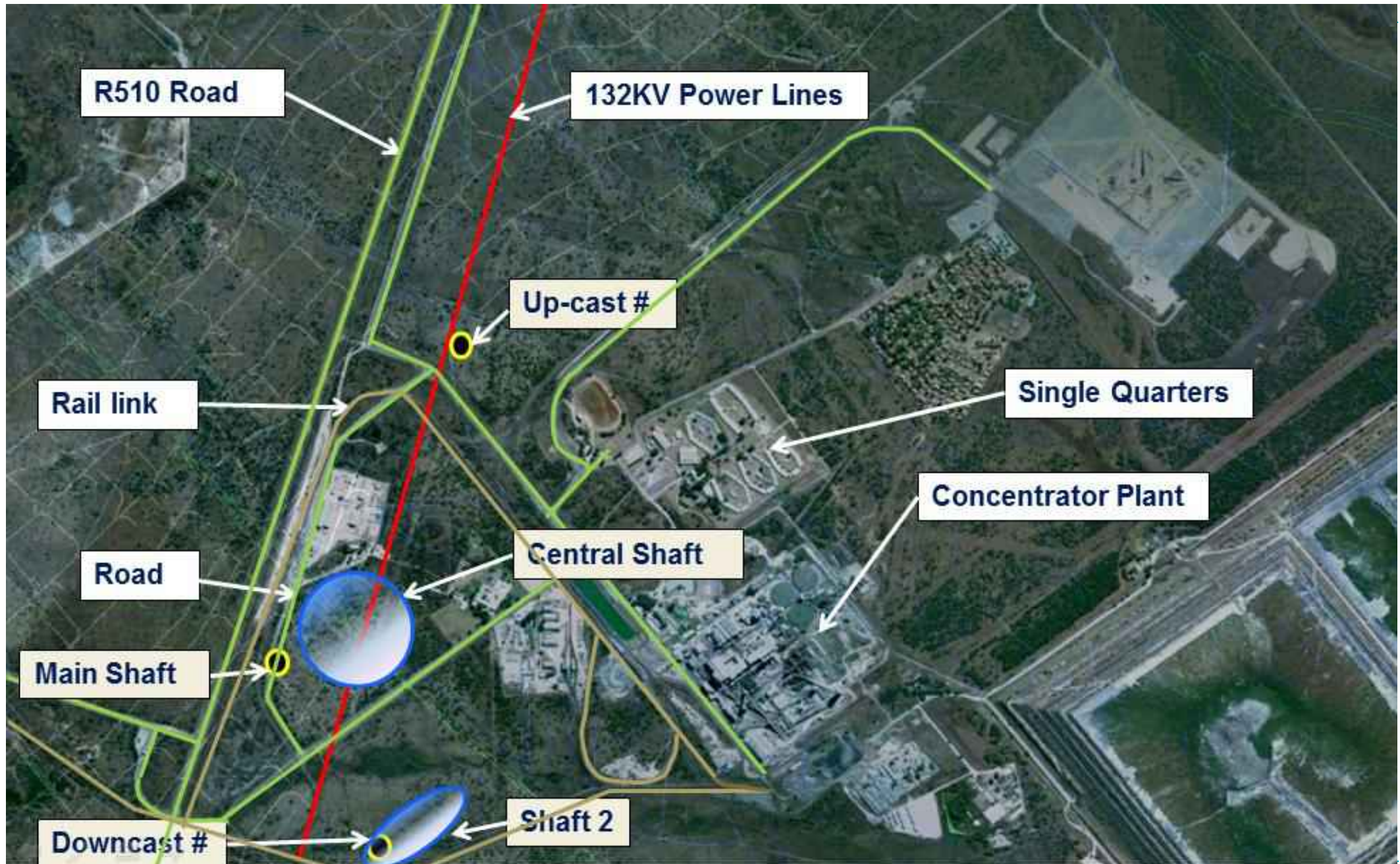
# Project Description

- Main shaft (incl. headgear),
- Down-cast Vent Shaft,
- Up-cast Vent Shaft,
- Waste Rock Dump,
- Refrigeration Plant,
- Additional electrical reticulation; (incl. main Eskom substation);
- Compressed air infrastructure,
- Emergency power generation infrastructure,
- Mine stores (incl. explosives shed, timber yard, winder house, lamp house, salvage yard, workshops),
- Water management infrastructure,
- Offices (incl. change-houses),
- Waste management systems, and
- Security systems (incl. access control).



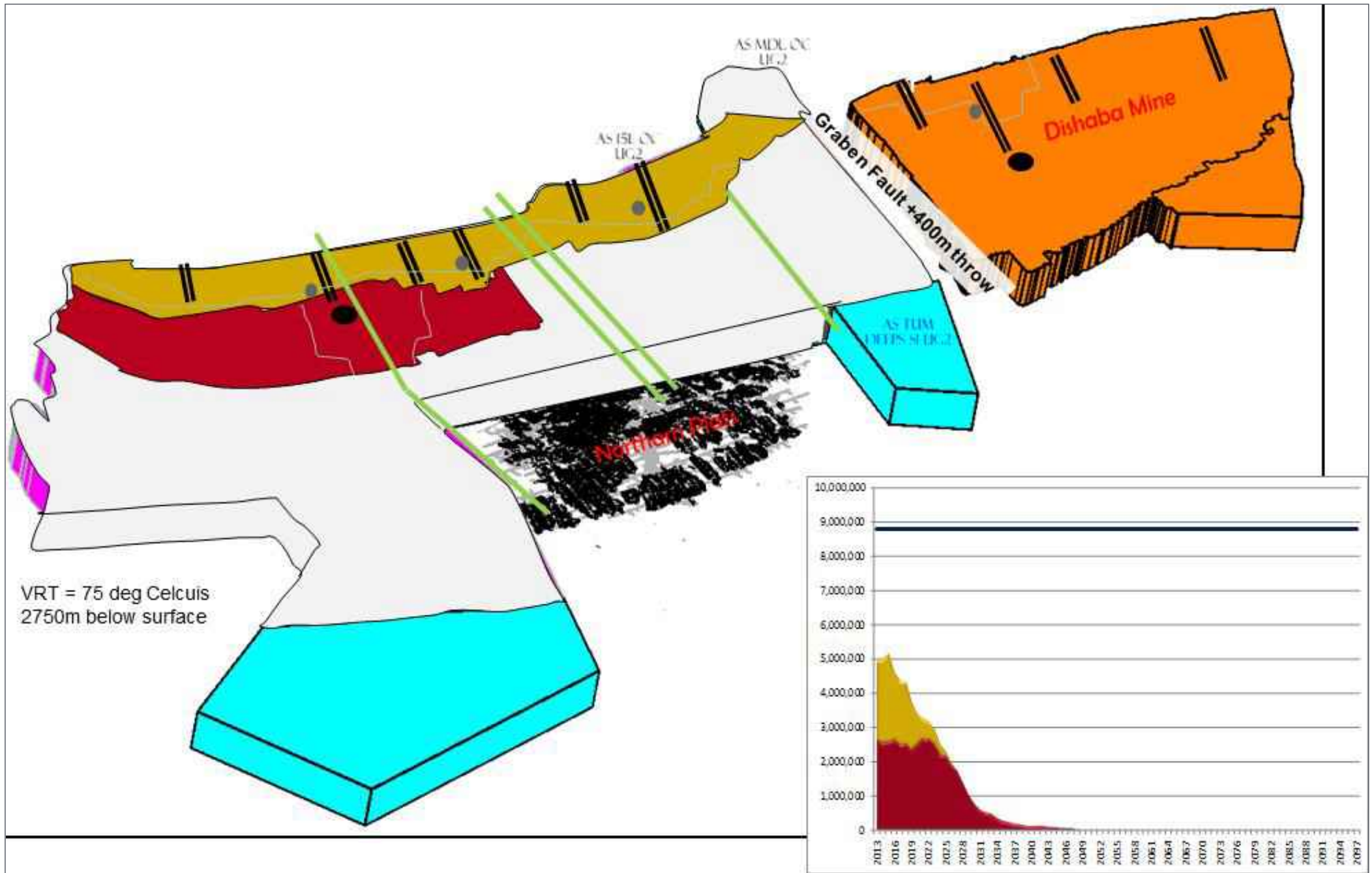


# Project Layout





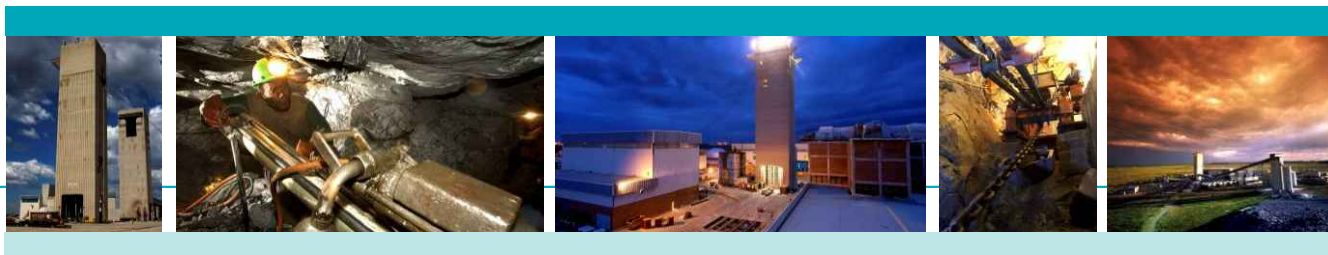
# Motivation for the project



# Public Participation & Authorisation Process



Application Form submission to LEDET	23 February 2013
Letter of Notification to DMR	08 February 2013
Draft Scoping Report on Public Review (40 days)	23 February 2013
Community Engagement Forum	<b>TODAY</b>
Public Meeting (Scoping Phase)	11 March 2013
Comments & Issues as received by public incorporated into Final Scoping Report and submitted to LEDET	Early April 2013
EIA Phase commences	April 2013
Public review of draft EIR / EMPR amendment (40 days)	Early May 2013
Public Meeting (EIA Phase)	May 2013
Comments & Issues as received by public incorporated into Final EIR / EMPR amendment submitted to LEDET & DMR	End June 2013
Planned authority approval date	End October 2013



# Assessment of Impacts



- As with any construction and / or mining related activity, there is a potential for environmental impacts.
- Impacts typically associated with developmental projects are often unavoidable consequences of construction / mining, however, with past teachings and the application of firm environmental principles, the significance of most expected impacts can effectively be reduced and ultimately eliminated.
- Environmental receptors / aspects which could possibly be affected, have been identified during a gap analysis process, and various Specialists have been appointed to assess these anticipated impacts.
- Once an impact has been detected, management measures will be proposed to reduce or completely eliminate the significance thereof.
- These mitigation measures will be included within the mine's management plan.
- The management plan, once approved by competent authorities, becomes a legally binding document and compliance audited annually.



# Potential Impacts



The possible impact on the environment will be further investigated and validated as part of the specialist studies on:

- Soils, land-use and land capability
- Habitat / biodiversity
- Water (surface- and groundwater)
- Dust & noise
- Traffic and aesthetic / visual status
- Geological / cultural / archaeological sites
- Safety hazards typical of construction activities





# Anticipated Project Benefits



## Positive outcomes include, but are not limited to:

- Potential surety in terms of existing employment;
- Potential employment & procurement opportunities (for individuals as well as small businesses, mostly during construction phase);
- Approval of this project would provide access to previously unreachable resources and would ultimately increase the life of the Amandelbult operations.



# Public Meeting



**Should you be interested in or affected by this proposed project, please attend the formal Public Meeting:**

Date: Monday, 11 March 2013

Time: 4pm – 5pm

Venue: Amandelbult Recreational Club (this venue)



For further queries please contact:  
**WSP Environmental**

<b>Danilla Breedt</b>	<b>Jared O'Brien</b>
Project Manager	Consultant
Tel: 011 361 1392	Tel: 011 361 1395
Fax: 086 240 0693	Fax: 086 240 0693
Danilla.breedt@wspgroup.co.za	Jared.obrien@wspgroup.co.za

---

## Stakeholder Notification Meeting Minutes

# MEETING NOTES



Project Title	
Date	11/03/2013
Time	16:00 pm-17:00 pm
Venue	Amandelbult Recreational club
Subject	Tumela Central Shaft Project Public Notification Meeting
Project Present	Team Danilla Breedt (DB); Jared O'Brien (JO); Vinesh Dilsook (VD); Libby Redding (LR); Danie van Asweging (DvA); and Tumela Mine Management. (Please note that this list is limited to the project team).
Apologies	Lesego Manzini; Segale Pilane & Lebang Gaobepe
Attachments	Appendix A: Attendance Register Appendix B: Public Meeting Presentation

WSP Environment & Energy South Africa  
WSP House  
Bryanston Place  
199 Bryanston Drive  
Bryanston  
2191  
Tel: +27 11 361 1384  
Fax: +27 86 556 9717  
[www.wspenvironmental.co.za](http://www.wspenvironmental.co.za)

MATTERS ARISING	ACTION
<b>Welcome and Team Introductions</b>	
DB and DvA welcomed all present and thanked everyone present for attending.	N/A
<b>Public meeting presentation</b>	
DB presented a presentation which described the project environmental authorisation process. In addition, DB indicated the public participation regulations governing the process.	N/A
DvA indicated the locality of the project and explained the technical detail of the project. DvA also mentioned the other Tumela projects required to keep the mine above the 4 000 000 threshold value which are important in terms of profitability and workforce.	N/A
DB highlighted the project progress in terms of the authorisation process. She emphasised the review period of the scoping report and encouraged all present to review the report within the 40 day review period (22/02/2013 to 03/04/2013).	N/A
DB explained the positive and negative impacts expected to be created by the project. She further explained that this is the scoping phase and hence it is the initial identification of the impacts. These impacts will be further investigated by the specialists appointed during the EIA phase of the project. The results of the various studies will be incorporated into the EIA report and again submitted to the public for comment prior to being submitted to the authorities. She mentioned what the studies will be undertaken during the EIA phase. She reiterated to all the attendees to review the scoping report within the allocated days and to subsequently pose any questions or comments to WSP through email/fax. All the issues/comments will be responded to in the issues and response trail and the stakeholder feedback will then be provided during the EIA phase of the project.  Please refer to <b>Appendix B</b> for the public meeting presentation.	N/A
<b>Issues Raised and Discussed</b>	
1. Stephen Lerumo stated the following: "Are we going to meet at each and every community during the EIA phase for the public meetings, e.g. in Mantserre community hall which is more accessible to all". LR responded: "We can consider going to different communities if the community has specific venues in mind." Stephen further stated that the community members must use the comments sheet contained within the Background Information Document (BID) to pose any additional questions to the project team.	WSP & Rustenburg Platinum Mines (RPM)
2. A community member stated the following: "When is the next public meeting date as he was not present for the duration of this meeting?" DB responded: "Within 21 days from now WSP will arrange another public meeting. She further requested that the attendees fill in the register so that WSP can notify all of the date/time of the upcoming events."	WSP



MATTERS ARISING	ACTION
<p>3. Stephen Lerumo queried the surface water pollution that he believes is created by the mining activities in the area, specifically referring to the Bierspruit. He further explained that we need to determine how to avoid the problem or fix (mitigate) the impact.</p> <p>DB responded indicating that there will be a hydrological specialist study undertaken to determine the expected impact however the team does not foreseen a significant impact due to proximity of the new project area of development and the Bierspruit (DB did not elaborate on current mining activities as the meeting is specifically focused on the proposed project).</p>	WSP
<p>4. Stephen Lerumo queried the statement in the BID referring to possible opportunities for SMME's in the area. He further explained that it is important to inform the local prospective entrepreneurs of how they can exploit the opportunities to make sure they don't miss the opportunity. He emphasised that RPM are not to give all the work to Johannesburg businesses.</p> <p>DvA explained that the mine does not want to create the expectation that there will be thousands of jobs created as a result of the project because that is not likely due to the scale of the project however, the main positive factor which will result from the project is the avoidance of job losses in the current Tumela work force due to potential mine closure should the project not go-ahead. The Mine production manager emphasised the need for the mine to understand what skills are available in the communities to make sure that the mine can make use of the skills when required. RPM is to endeavour to understand the skills available for potential further local SMME contracts.</p>	RPM (CED)
<p>5. The Mine production manager questioned the need for an interpreter to facilitate the meeting. A local community member stated: Yes, because the communities are not familiar with the English language.</p> <p>The Mine production manager further emphasised the need to ensure that all present fully comprehend what has taken place during the meeting. The community indicated that a Tswana translator is required. This will improve the communication during future stakeholder meetings. LR stated that Segale (CED representative) was meant to be in attendance however, they were not able to attend. LR requested the assistance of Bengie (Rustenburg Platinum Mines representative) in order to provide translation during this meeting.</p>	WSP
<p>6. A community member (Thabile community) raised the following issue: the lack of provision for transport creates an issue for communities as they cannot attend these types of public meetings due to a lack of sufficient funds to do so.</p> <p>The Mine production manager requested the communities to identify the best location(s) for the next meetings. Stephen Lerumo suggested Mantserre may be the best location/venue. He further described that the community members from Northam and smash block as well as other surrounding communities can be bussed through to the meeting point (translated by Bengie). Another suggestion involved the use of the Amandelbult venue which would accommodate a possible site visit to the proposed project area. The final decision made indicated that a site visit will be held prior to the public meeting at 2:00 pm, the public meeting would then begin at approximately 4:00 pm. DB raised the time issue indicating that the members may not be able to attend the site visit due to work commitments. A community member indicated that the majority of the people in the communities do not have employment therefore 2:00 pm, was not</p>	WSP & RPM

<b>MATTERS ARISING</b>		<b>ACTION</b>
<p>an issue.</p> <p>CED to arrange with the community leaders to co-ordinate when the buses will arrive, etc. LR indicated that WSP arranges the meetings however, RPM will liaise with the communities to arrange transport. Bengi proposed the use of five different buses (one from each community) which can transport the I&amp;AP's to the public meeting venue and subsequently take the members on a bus tour of the proposed project location. The Mine production manager agreed to the statement and committed to providing five, 20-seater buses from Northam, Smash block, Mantserre, Retabile community and Thabazimbi (one bus from each community). LR stated that WSP are responsible for arranging the public meetings and communications should be channelled through WSP. LR further indicated that the arrangements regarding buses and which individuals to allocate a spot on the buses would be arranged via the CED department and the local ward councillors in the respective areas. Stephen Lerumo indicated that the details of the various councillors are to be obtained from the house of the speaker at the local municipality (Tumisang Masilo).</p>		
<b>MEETING CLOSE OUT</b>		<b>ACTION</b>
<p>DB thanked all the attendees for making themselves available for the meeting. DvA thanked the attendees from an RPM point of view and declared the meeting closed.</p>		
<p>Distribution: All Present</p>		



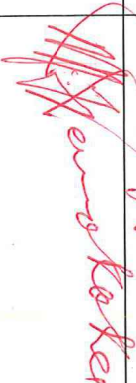

## **Appendices**



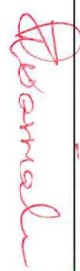
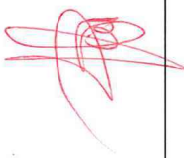
**Appendix A: Attendance Register**

# PUBLIC MEETING 11 MARCH 2013




## THE PROPOSED TUMELA MINE CENTRALSHAFT PROJECT

### ATTENDANCE REGISTER

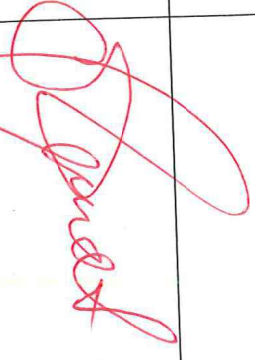

Name & Surname	Company/Community	Contact details (Tel/Fax/Email)	Signature
STEPHEN LERUMO	SMASH Block WARD 03 CLR	Tel: 0836219093 Fax: Email: stephenlexumo@gmail.com	
SATHIEL PAMOLELA	RAPPATHANE MANTISERRE	Tel: 0835299460 Fax: Email: sathiel@woteka@gmail.com	
M.I. KEMOKOTA	Kopatheleane Lanteme	Tel: 0731028696 Fax: Email:	
LUCAS BAHEISE MOGHE	BAMALANE BA- MANTSERRE	Tel: 0730378096 Fax: Email:	





Name & Surname	Company/Community	Contact details (Tel/Fax/Email)	Signature
Mthabisieng Shebe	Tunela Village	Tel: 014 284 2555 Fax: Email: aphyug. thebe@anglovaal.com	
Lorraine Zebe	Restek. go Village	Tel: 078 382 4589 Fax: Email: lorraine@gmail.com	
ZEDA MARACH	REHABILE VILLAGE	Tel: 082633923 Fax: Email:	
MARUPE RADITHALO	REHABILE	Tel: 071 22 44295 Fax: w/014 784 1660 Email:	
MADIBELA	Municipality	Tel: 073010 1523 Fax: Email: Madibela@gmail.com	

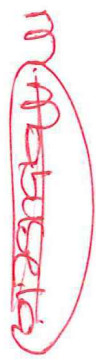





Name & Surname	Company/Community	Contact details (Tel/Fax/Email)	Signature
MOKOKA	BAPHALANA MARK TSEBÉ	Tel: Fax: Email: 0732541439	
PETER MONEGI	BARAHLANE BA KIMANTSEPE COMMUNITY	Tel: < Fax: 08303706 Email: -	
N.A. Tsebetse	ward 11 Rethabile Village	Tel: 0784717977 Fax: Email:	
KOKO ENZO- BETH LAMOLA	WARD 03 WARDS COMMITTEE Sengsh-Bhock	Tel: 078842 1446 Fax: - Email: -	K.E. Lemola
PATRICIA Ntombi- ZAMELE NONYANDA	WARD 03 WARD COMMITTEE SMASHBUCK	Tel: 0781850928 Fax: Email:	M.F. NONYANDA



Name & Surname	Company/Community	Contact details (Tel/Fax/Email)	Signature
Silvia Matsiwa	IBZ Municipality	Tel: Fax: Email: kometits@hlabzimb.gov.zw	
Benjamin Makoka	Anglo Tumela	Tel: 014-7841051 Fax: Email: benjamin.makoka@anglotumela.com	
David v. Asuppa	Aylo	Tel: 0834659899 Fax: Email: david@anglotpld.com	
Daniel Bwele	LDSF	Tel: Fax: 082 55 11774 Email:	
Joanna Mosiwa	SMUSH Blok word comm	Tel: 0730255607 Fax: Email:	

Name & Surname	Company/Community	Contact details (Tel/Fax/Email)	Signature
BEAUTY MHEUNEN	PR COUNCILOR SINETHABROEK	Tel: 0713382891 Fax: Email: 0823278868 -	Bv Mheunen
Ketumetse MOTHEGWE	Community Member Kethabile Village	Tel: 083 961 6224 / 082 685 3997 Fax: Email:	
Pretty MODISANE	COMMUNITY MEMBER KETHABILE VILLAGE	Tel: 078 1815 054 Fax: Email:	
Ketumetse Mokhubela	Community member Kethabile Village	Tel: 073 761 7910 Fax: Email: ketumetse.mokhubela@gmail.com	
Dikemetse MOTONA	Community member Kethabile Village	Tel: 075 237 2902 Fax: Email: ocmotona@gmail.com	

Name & Surname	Company/Community	Contact details (Tel/Fax/Email)	Signature
MABUSELA MAPHUTI	CONSTITUENCY OFFICE NORTHAM	Tel: 079 447 2482 Fax: 014 784 4217 Email: maphuti.mabusela@ netmail.com	
EPHRAIM SEKHU	Mankone Community	Tel: 071 460 2379 Fax: Email:	
Mansing Masile	Office of the speaker Ward Coordinator	Tel: 083 5529345 Fax: Email: masile6@webmail.co.za	
Libby Redding	Anglo American Platinum	Tel: 011 3736744 Fax: Email: libby.redding@angloamerican.com	
		Tel: Fax: Email:	

**Appendix B: Public Meeting Presentation**





Project Initiation & Information  
Sharing Session  
**Public Participation  
Process  
Scoping Phase**

**ANGLO AMERICAN PLATINUM,  
RUSTENBURG PLATINUM MINES,  
AMANDELBULT SECTION:**

**PROPOSED TUMELA MINE  
CENTRAL SHAFT PROJECT**

**Venue:** Amandelbult  
Recreational Club  
**Date:** 11 March 2013  
**Time:** 16h00 – 17h00

UNITED  
BY OUR  
DIFFERENCE



# Presentation Overview



- Introduction & Objective
- Project Location
- Project Motivation
- Project Description
- Public Participation & Authorisation Process
- Potential Impacts
- Way forward



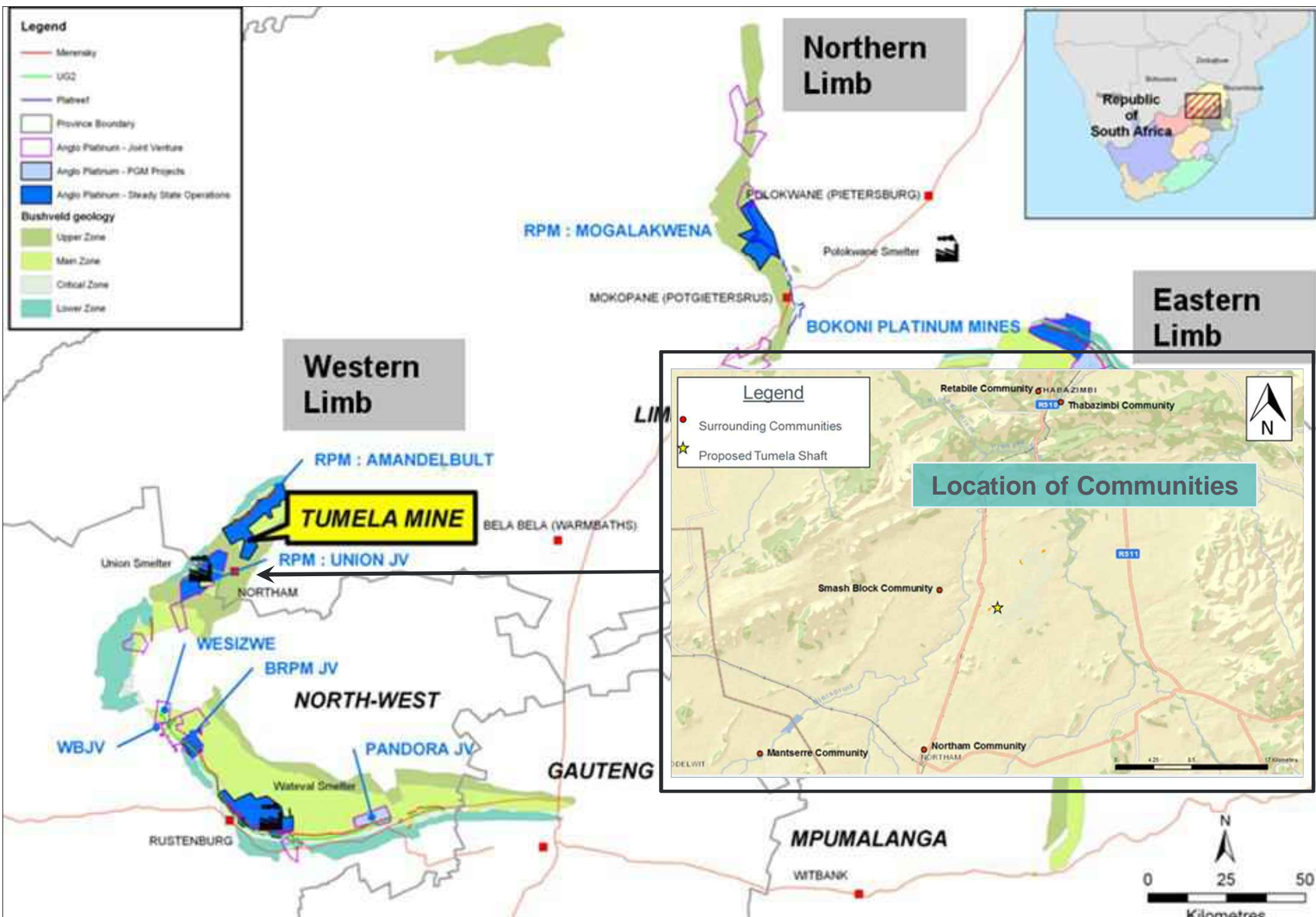


# Introduction & Objective



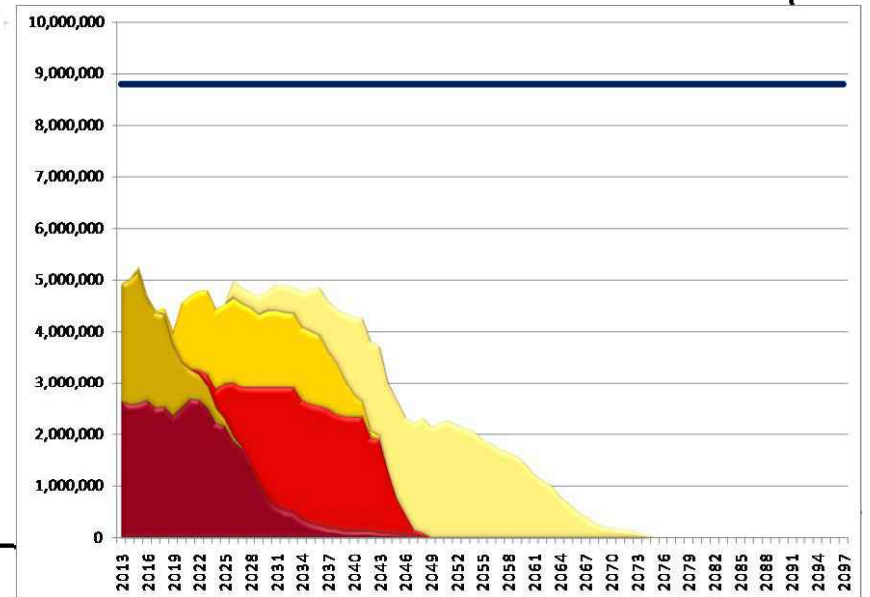
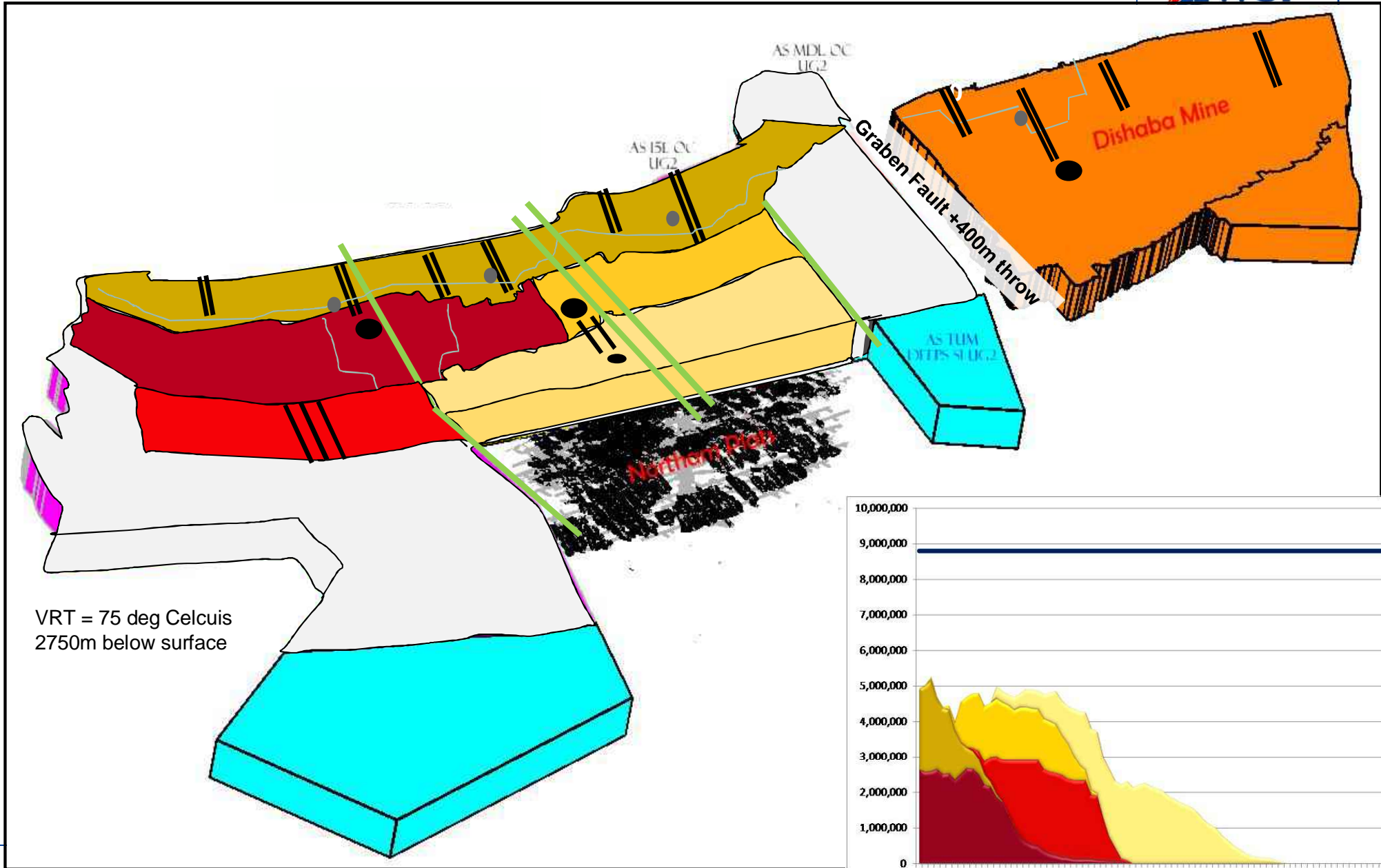
- Proponent
  - Anglo American Platinum Limited: Rustenburg Platinum Mines Limited (RPM)
- Independent Environmental Assessment Practitioner (EAP)
  - WSP Environmental (WSP)
- Public Participation is a legal requirement, and is the process by which the views and concerns of Interested and Affected Parties (I&APs) are identified and incorporated into the decision-making process. The objective of this process is to:
  - Inform key stakeholders of the proposed project;
  - Provide detail, location and motivation for the project;
  - Provide an opportunity to the public to raise concerns and issues;
  - Incorporate the public's input into the decision-making process.





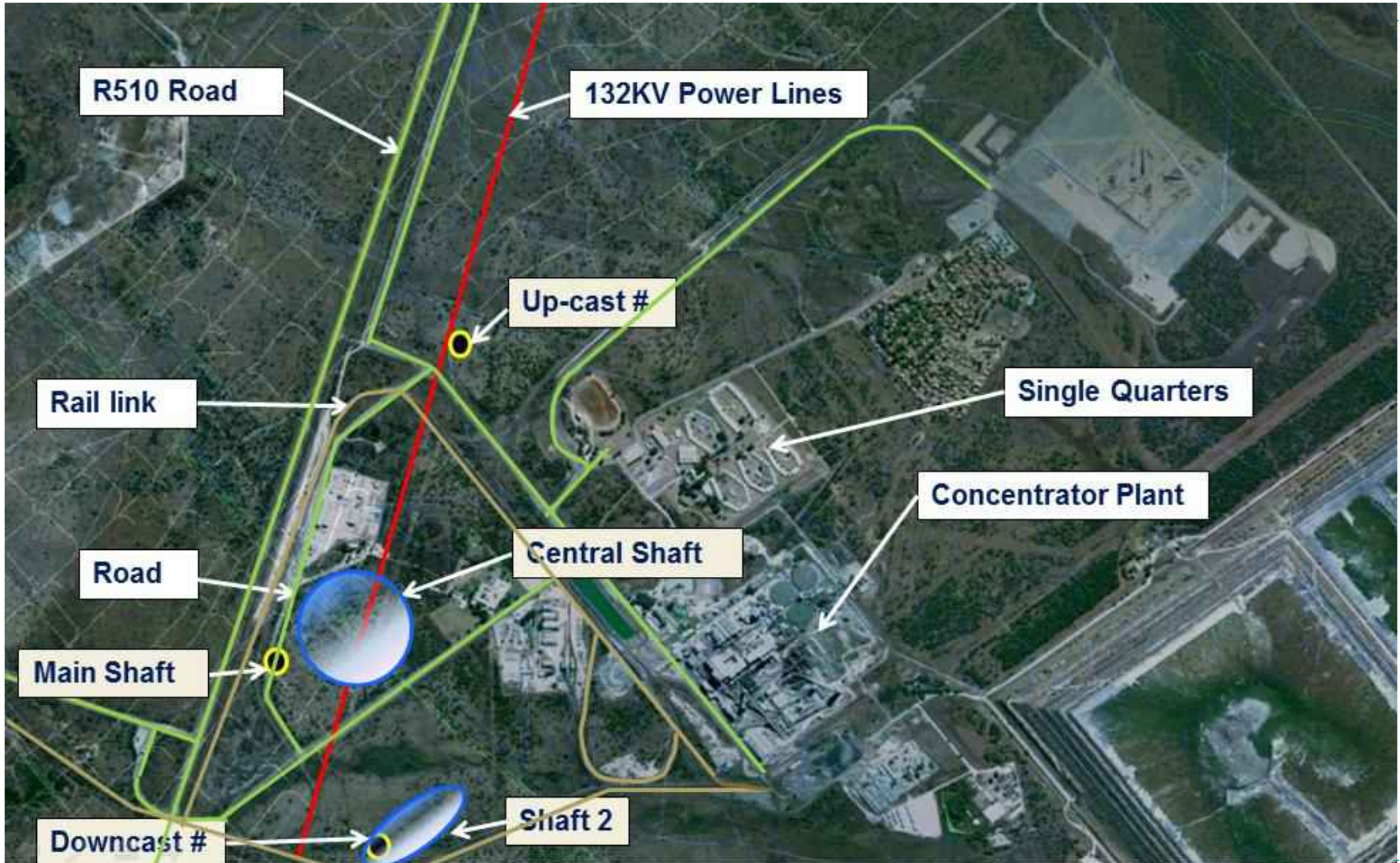
# Project Location

# MOTIVATION FOR THE PROPOSED PROJECT - Cont





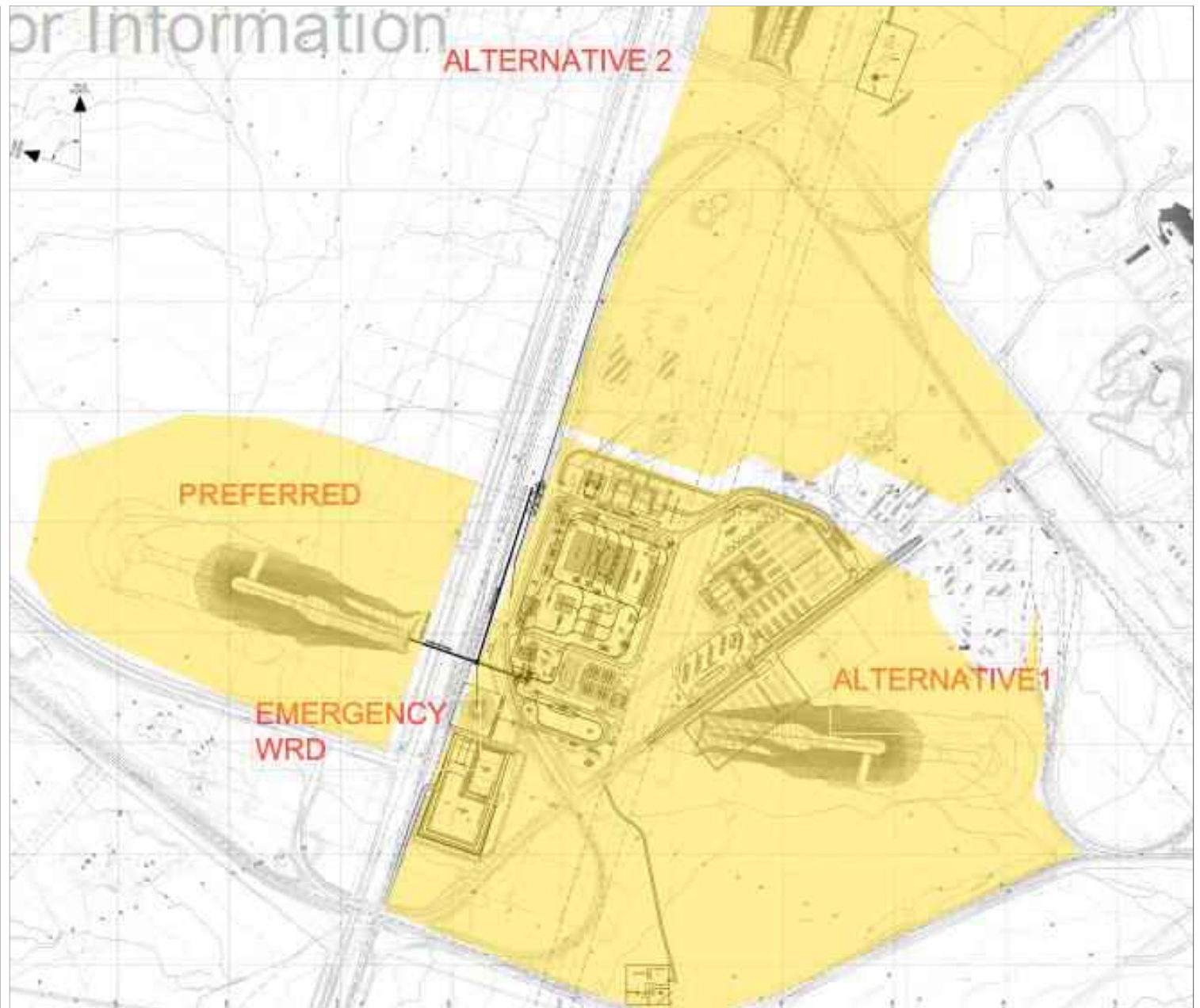
# Project Layout





# Project Description

- Main shaft (incl. headgear),
- Down-cast Vent Shaft,
- Up-cast Vent Shaft,
- Waste Rock Dump,
- Refrigeration Plant,
- Additional electrical reticulation; (incl. main Eskom substation);
- Compressed air infrastructure,
- Emergency power generation infrastructure,
- Mine stores (incl. explosives shed, timber yard, winder house, lamp house, salvage yard, workshops),
- Water management infrastructure,
- Offices (incl. change-houses),
- Waste management systems, and
- Security systems (incl. access control).





# Public Participation & Authorisation Process



<b>Application Form submission to LEDET</b>	23 February 2013
<b>Letter of Notification to DMR</b>	08 February 2013
<b>Draft Scoping Report on Public Review (40 days)</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Tumela Mine Main Office; <input type="checkbox"/> Office of traditional authorities (Montserre); <input type="checkbox"/> Amandelbult Recreation Club; <input type="checkbox"/> Northam Library; and <input type="checkbox"/> WSP's website ( <a href="http://www.wspenvironmental.com/publicreview">www.wspenvironmental.com/publicreview</a> ).	23 February 2013
<b>Community Engagement Forum</b>	08 March 2013
<b>Public Meeting (Scoping Phase)</b> (Additional Public Meeting – DATE TO BE CONFIRMED)	<b>TODAY</b>
<b>Comments &amp; Issues as received by public incorporated into Final Scoping Report and submitted to LEDET</b>	Early April 2013
<b>EIA Phase commences</b>	April 2013
<b>Public review of draft EIR / EMPR amendment (40 days)</b>	Early May 2013
<b>Public Meeting (EIA Phase)</b>	May 2013
<b>Comments &amp; Issues as received by public incorporated into Final EIR / EMPR amendment submitted to LEDET &amp; DMR</b>	End June 2013
<b>Planned authority approval date</b>	End October 2013



# Assessment of Impacts



- As with any construction and / or mining related activity, there is a potential for environmental impacts.
- Impacts typically associated with developmental projects are often unavoidable consequences of construction / mining, however, with past teachings and the application of firm environmental principles, the significance of most expected impacts can effectively be reduced and ultimately eliminated.
- Environmental receptors / aspects which could possibly be affected, have been identified during a gap analysis process, and various Specialists have been appointed to assess these anticipated impacts.
- Once an impact has been detected, management measures will be proposed to reduce or completely eliminate the significance thereof.
- These mitigation measures will be included within the mine's management plan.
- The management plan, once approved by competent authorities, becomes a legally binding document and compliance audited annually.



# Potential Impacts



The possible impact on the environment will be further investigated and validated as part of the specialist studies on:

- Soils, land-use and land capability
- Habitat / biodiversity
- Water (surface- and groundwater)
- Dust & noise
- Traffic and aesthetic / visual status
- Geological / cultural / archaeological sites
- Safety hazards typical of construction activities



# Anticipated Project Benefits



## Positive outcomes include, but are not limited to:

- Potential surety in terms of existing employment;
- Potential employment & procurement opportunities (for individuals as well as small businesses, mostly during construction phase);
- Approval of this project would provide access to previously unreachable resources and would ultimately increase the life of the Amandelbult operations.



# Way Forward



- Public to review draft Scoping Report placed at various locations
- Public to note down any comments, concerns, issues
- Next Public Meeting will be scheduled within the next 21 days
- Any comments, concerns, issues from the public will be discussed at the next Public Meeting and incorporated into the Final Scoping Report to be submitted to LEDET





For further queries please contact:  
**WSP Environmental**

<b>Danilla Breedt</b>	<b>Jared O'Brien</b>
Project Manager	Consultant
Tel: 011 361 1392	Tel: 011 361 1395
Fax: 086 240 0693	Fax: 086 240 0693
Danilla.breedt@wspgroup.co.za	Jared.obrien@wspgroup.co.za

# Tumela Central Shaft Project – Stakeholder Notification Meeting (Directional Board Photo Plate)



Directional Board 1



Directional Board 2



Directional Board 3



Directional Board 4





Directional Board 5



Directional Board 6



Directional Board 7



Directional Board 8



---

**Public Meeting Minutes**

# MEETING NOTES



Project Title	
Date	14/05/2013
Time	16:00 pm-18:35 pm
Venue	Amandelbult Recreational club
Subject	Tumela Central Shaft Project Public Meeting (Scoping Phase)
Project Present	Team Kerry Buchanan (KB); Jared O'Brien (JO); Vinesh Dilsook (VD); Libby Redding (LR); Danie van Asweging (DvA); Corne Strydom (CS); Lebang Gaobepe (LG); Lesego Manzini (LM); Segale Pilane (SP); Saligh Cader (SC); and Paul Muller (PM). (Please note that this list is limited to the project team).
Apologies	Tom van der Berg
Attachments	Appendix A: Attendance Register Appendix B: Public Meeting Presentation

WSP Environment & Energy South Africa  
WSP House  
Bryanston Place  
199 Bryanston Drive  
Bryanston  
2191  
Tel: +27 11 361 1384  
Fax: +27 86 556 9717  
[www.wspenvironmental.co.za](http://www.wspenvironmental.co.za)

## Welcome and Team Introductions

Lebang Gaobepe (LG) welcomed all to the meeting and requested all present to complete the attendance registers which were distributed to the meeting attendees. LG gave a brief introduction to the project in Setswana and outlined the public participation process (the reason behind the facilitation of this meeting). He further explained that this was the forum to discuss social and environmental concerns associated with the Central Shaft Project and not the forum to discuss general community related issues which do not relate directly to the project.

LG emphasised that community issues are to be raised in the existing Community Engagement Forum (a quarterly meeting held by the Community Engagement Department at the Tumela Mine).

Jared O'Brien (JO) indicated that translations would be provided during the course of the presentation by LG and/or (SP). He also requested that all questions be raised at the end of the presentation to ensure the presentation is not interrupted.

## Public meeting presentation

JOB and CS presented the Tumela Central Shaft Project (TCSP) presentation and LG and SP assisted with translations where required (refer to **Appendix B**). The project presentation included the following topics:

- Introduction & Objective of the meeting;
- Project Location;
- Project Motivation;
- Project Description;
- Public Participation & Authorisation Process; and
- Potential Impacts.

*Following the completion of the presentation JOB opened the floor to discussion.*

## Issues Raised and Discussed

Item	Comment	Response
1.	What is the proposed footprint of the TCSP?	PM indicated that the project footprint of the shaft area is approximately 600 m x 400 m (i.e. 240,000 m <sup>2</sup> ).
2.	Concern was raised regarding safety during construction. Will there be risks to health and safety of people and animals crossing the project area.	CS indicated that the construction area will be fenced off prior to construction commencing in order to prevent access and in doing so prevent potential injury to animals and humans.
3.	A community member indicated that he is concerned with the possible dust and noise generation during the construction phase. Specifically emphasising the impact on nearby communities such as the Trollope Farm area (contractor residential area).	WSP indicated that the negative impacts will be managed in accordance with the air quality and noise specialist studies that have been completed for the project. These recommendations and mitigation measures will be included in the EMPR which RPM is required to comply with in accordance with legislation.
4.	According to several members of the representative communities, the Bierspruit is	CS expressed concern and indicated that mine management would respond immediately to the

	being polluted by the mine and is unfit for animals or people to drink.	matter and that the mine, until this point, was unaware of the occurrence. The extent of the pollution needed to be understood and an appropriate plan would be put in place to resolve the issue. LM added that currently the mine has a comprehensive monitoring programme to assess any impact the mine may have on the water courses surrounding the mining area. The monitoring plan includes both ground water and surface water monitoring. The monitoring plan forms part of the Water use License at the Amandelbult Section.
5.	When is construction to commence for the TCSP?	Should the financial and environmental processes proceed successfully and within the current time frames, the mine is aiming to commence underground workings in June 2013 and surface workings in June 2014. This timeline is however influenced by both Anglo American approval processes as well as the environmental authorisation legal process.
6.	What benefits will the community receive from the proposed project?	<p>RPM indicated that the Social and Labour Plan (SLP) includes (but is not limited to):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Which community projects the mine will be involved in;</li> <li>■ Where employment must be sourced from; and</li> <li>■ How local suppliers/contractors are to be used by the mine.</li> </ul> <p>RPM acknowledges that there is room for improvement in terms of social aspects at the mine. The SLP as authorised by the DMR governs the process and dictates how such issues are dealt with.</p> <p>Furthermore, the commissioning of this project will ensure job security in terms of the current employment on-site however, the number of additional employment opportunities will be limited to a small number of people.</p> <p>In terms of road repairs or construction, the mine cannot alter the government owned roads without the approval of the roads Department. RPM maintain the mine owned roads however, do not alter the national roads around the area.</p>
7.	Can't the WRD material be transferred back into the ground as infill material?	RPM (Amandelbult section) has an Approved EMP in place which governs the activities undertaken on-site to ensure environmental sustainability. As part of this EMP, RPM have a rehabilitation plan in place which is focused on the closure and rehabilitation of the mine. The aim of this plan is to recover the land to its original state (natural state). The manner in which this is undertaken can be obtained from the detailed plan.

8.	A community member queried the fact that he did not believe enough Mantserre community members were present.	JO & LG responded indicating that the main contact person at the village is the chief whom WSP contact to invite to the public meeting. Furthermore, WSP erected a site notice in the community with the time, date and venue of the meeting to inform members.
9.	A community member requested training for community members as they cannot find employment.	Training is provided to employees on the mine as per commitments in the social and labour plan. The mine continues to provide training through the community engineering programme but cannot accommodate everyone due to budgetary constraints.
10.	The DMR must be notified of the project	LG indicated that the DMR is aware of the project. Furthermore, during the presentation, JO indicated that the DMR had been notified via notification letter.
11.	What community specific sustainable development projects RPM would be providing for the surrounding communities?	<p>LG indicated such projects were part of an integrated benefits model. This includes the Corporate social investment fund, the social and labour plan and project Alchemy. Members of the community were asked to get in contact directly with LG or SP regarding such projects, as this did not form part of the TCSP project.</p> <p>LG detailed project Alchemy as follows: The project is based on allowing the communities to decide how the mines CSI fund is allocated. RPM will give the decision making power to local leaders whom have the best interest of the communities at heart to ensure the projects are effective at alleviating pressure on communities.</p> <p>The municipality must approve any RPM projects prior to the project being undertaken in terms of the Municipal Integrated Development Plan (needs to be aligned).</p>
12.	What opportunities there were particularly for the youth in terms of training and up-skilling?	There are opportunities for training through the cadet programme and engineering programme through as well bursaries.
13.	Have the Thabazimbi municipality been notified of the process?	JO indicated yes, the local and district municipalities form commenting authorities in the authorisation process undertaken by WSP.
14.	What opportunities were available for the removing of material within the Waste Rock Dumps (WRD) for SMME's? Furthermore a request was made to donate the aggregate material to the communities in order for them to use the material on the roads within communities to fill the potholes.	Removal and rehabilitation of the site (including WRDs) will be included in the Mine Closure Plan, and the possibility of SMME's removing material from the WRDs would be investigated as a mitigation measure as indicated by CS.
15.	A storm water trench running from the concentrator is running into the Bierspruit. What is being done to prevent this from happening in future projects?	Refer to response contained in point 4.



16.	The Mantserre community believes they should receive priority for improvements to their community, as they are the landowners. They would also like to understand how recruitment is undertaken on the mine.	LG noted that the Human Resources Department at the mine should respond to the questions as they are aware of the criteria for recruitment. Unfortunately no personnel from the recruitment department were available to provide responses to the community members. A response to the question would however be provided. LG asked the Mantserre community to be cognisant of the needs of their neighbours and other nearby and surrounding communities. Mantserre is not the only community impacted by the mine.
17.	What is required to apply for funding of community projects? (What does LG require from the community in order to obtain approval for the social benefit projects)	Community members must write motivations for their request and submit these to the CED coordinator who will facilitate.
18.	Smash Block has no basic services. Can RPM assist in supplying such basic needs?	The Mine SLP had originally budgeted for projects in Smash Block. RPM has previously been in discussion with the government regarding these services, but as Smash Block is outside the Mine Lease area, it is up to government to provide such services. According to government, the area still needs to be registered by the Surveyor General, and until that process is completed, services cannot be provided. It is regrettably beyond RPM's control to be involved with the supplying of such services at this point in time.
19.	What does WSP stand for?	No specific abbreviation merely a company name. According to legislation, the environmental authorisation process is to be run by an independent environmental assessment practitioner which is WSP's role in the project.
20.	Can WSP provide 'peace jobs' to the community during the project?	WSP have a sufficient number of employees to deal with the current workload and as such do not require any further assistance. However, if WSP require any further assistance on-site, the community may be approached by WSP.
21.	A community leader from Smash Block asked if RPM could give the community some WRD material to fix a dongo/pothole on a community road.	DvA added that the Waste rock is a liability to the mine and as such the option of providing the communities with this material will be investigated by RPM. CS asked that the issue could be discussed with the mine management away from this public meeting, this notion was agreed with by the community member.
22.	The mine is currently building mine houses in Northam. Can members of the community purchase them?	Unfortunately not due to the houses being built for the mine employees or the municipality therefore ownership will lie with RPM.
23.	Will new hostels be built for the TCSP?	Hostels are now referred to as 'single accommodations villages'. Yes, new single accommodations villages would be built for

		TCSP. Currently the mine is housing employees at 2 people per room which is in exceedance of the mines SLP condition. As such, RPM are working towards reducing this number to 1 person per room as required by the SLP.
24.	Which Mineral Rights will the TCSP fall under?	Anglo American owns the Mineral Right for the entire area. Both Dishaba and the Tumela mining areas fall under the same permit.

#### MEETING CLOSE OUT

CS thanked all for attending the meeting on mine managements behalf and wished them a safe journey home. LG thanked all the community members for attending the meeting on behalf of the CED and encouraged the youth to remain in school, get educated and endeavour to find employment.

LG apologised to the community members from Northam who were unable to undertake the site visit, due the buses late arrival in fetching them from the collection point.

The meeting was adjourned at 18:35.

#### GENERAL

It is important to note that in addition to holding a public meeting for the project, RPM provided for transport for community members from the following communities:

- Thabazimbi;
- Mantserre;
- Northam;
- Smashblock;
- Rethabile Location; and
- Thabazimbi.

Furthermore, RPM made provision for a site visit around the proposed construction site to orientate the community members with the site in relation to surrounding roads and communities. RPM however, had to limit the number of stakeholders whom could attend the site visit due to the limited space on the buses provided. It is however very important to note that the public meeting was open to any stakeholders (i.e. not only those whom came via the buses supplied by RPM). The site visit took place prior to the public meeting. During the site visit no individual was allowed out of the buses due to health and safety risks associated.

**DISTRIBUTION: ALL PRESENT**

## Appendices

**Appendix A: Attendance Register**

**Appendix B: Public Meeting Presentation**

## Appendix A: Attendance Register

# PUBLIC MEETING 14 MAY 2013





## THE PROPOSED TUMELA MINE CENTRALSHAFT PROJECT ATTENDANCE REGISTER

Name & Surname	Company/Community	Contact details (Tel/Fax/Email)	Signature
E EVIDENCE BAGOY	THABANG CHILDREN'S P	Tel: Fax: Email: 0728378987	EMBOLOYI
BONGIWE MAMBA	THABANG (PLHIV)	Tel: Fax: Email: 0714321966	071032966
\$ Metlala	MANTSERE	Tel: Fax: Email: 0793918703	
TSTHE M Makgopole	Mankserc	Tel: Fax: Email: 076-8870642	


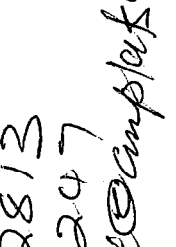



Name & Surname	Company/Community	Contact details (Tel/Fax/Email)	Signature
<p>Afikwe Bithwene</p>	<p>Montsore</p>	<p>Tel: <del>099 405 405</del> 0181306165 Fax: Email:</p>	<p>G. Bithwene</p>
<p>Boikumalo Ramokota</p>	<p>Montsore</p>	<p>Tel: 0733447552 Fax: Email:</p>	<p>BRamokota</p>
<p></p>	<p></p>	<p>Tel: Fax: Email:</p>	<p></p>
<p></p>	<p></p>	<p>Tel: Fax: Email:</p>	<p></p>










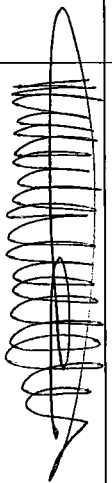
**PUBLIC MEETING 14 MAY 2013**  
**THE PROPOSED TUMELA MINE CENTRALSHAFT PROJECT**  
**ATTENDANCE REGISTER**

Name & Surname	Company/Community	Contact details (Tel/Fax/Email)	Signature
Diyibande Thandeka	Smash Block	Tel: 0810591069 Fax: Email:	
Mlisamen Phetoleli	Smash Block	Tel: 073 99 50 268 Fax: Email:	
Mstaps Sensimile	SMASH Block	Tel: 073 8042074 Fax: Email:	
Khetiso Kobela		Tel: <del>073 8042074</del> Fax: 078 269 4390 Email:	






Name & Surname	Company/Community	Contact details (Tel/Fax/Email)	Signature
MAMA DITSELE	Smashblock	Tel: 0728977001 Fax: Email:	MM DITSELE
Johana Mashaba	Smashblock	Tel: 0725397875 Fax: Email:	J.R. Mashaba NM MYEN.
MYENI NTOMBI	Smashblock	Tel: Fax: Email:	
Margaret Nkomo	SMASH block	Tel: 0737254013 Fax: 0790976105 Email:	M.L. Nkomo
Mandy GIBI	Smash Block	Tel: Fax: Email: j	M. GIBI




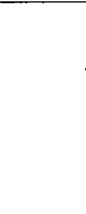
Name & Surname	Company/Community	Contact details (Tel/Fax/Email)	Signature
K. MOPSECHAUPOI	NORTHAM EX6 2362	Tel: 0727032321 Fax: Email:	
Matsi	Rethabile AMAZI DZURUO	Tel: 014 7842813 Fax: 014 7841247 Email: smatsi@comp.net.co.za	
MANKWA	Phumile	Tel: 0734991039 Fax: Email:	
REUBEN NOTHANGI	—	Tel: 078 534 2765 Fax: Email:	
Tepeta Mabe	—	Tel: 0781031131 Fax: Email:	

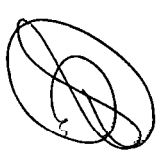

Name & Surname	Company/Community	Contact details (Tel/Fax/Email)	Signature
Morgyn Mhikani Mncube	Mankwato Village	Tel: 0780027053 Fax: Email:	
Tshosane Lethoqanolo Moneene	Mmanthoene	Tel: 073 396 2117 Fax: Email:	
S. Sifoe	Smexelok	Tel: 0710562198 Fax: Email:	
		Tel: Fax: Email:	
		Tel: Fax: Email:	



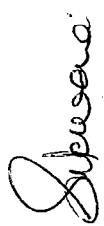


Name & Surname	Company/Community	Contact details (Tel/Fax/Email)	Signature
AUBREY Mokgosi	Retshabile	Tel: 0726149676 Fax: Email:	
Nkhosha Paloko	Retshabile	Tel: Fax: 0710 628470 Email:	
Retshabile Invest Molapo	Retshabile	Tel: 0781485876 Fax: Email:	
Kgisho Mabopola	Retshabile	Tel: 0710991330 Fax: Email:	
CORRY Mauritzus	Retshabile	Tel: 0710509949 Fax: Email:	

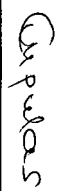

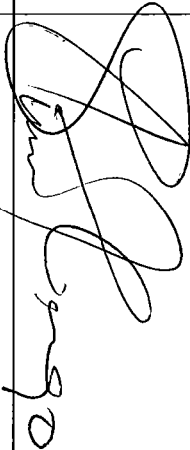




Name & Surname	Company/Community	Contact details (Tel/Fax/Email)	Signature
ONKEMETSE MOTONA	Rethabile	Tel: 0782372902 Fax: Email: Onkometse@gmail.com	
KEITUMETSE MATHUBELA	Rethabile	Tel: 0737617910 Fax: Email: Keitumetsemathubela@gmail.com	
LENA MABITSELA	Rethabile	Tel: 0733626387 Fax: Email:	
Keitumetse Mothegwe	Rethabile	Tel: 083 961 6224 / 082 685 3997 Fax: Email:	
Tsepo Mothomeho	Rethabile	Tel: 0786680469 Fax: Email:	



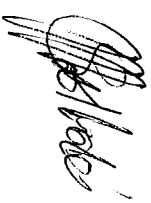
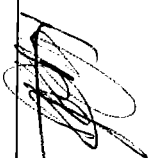

Name & Surname	Company/Community	Contact details (Tel/Fax/Email)	Signature
JOHANNES MOKGAELE	NORTHAM	Tel: 076 0812126 Fax: Email:	
S. Thelo Samson	NORTHAM	Tel: 073 8093 446 Fax: Email:	
HENRIK HANSEN	NORTHAM	Tel: 011 638 2605 Fax: Email:	
Savign Carter	Anglo American	Tel: Fax: Email:	
		Tel: Fax: Email:	



Name & Surname	Company/Community	Contact details (Tel/Fax/Email)	Signature
Lebanyo Gqoboka	Kumpikate.	Tel: 083 70 79879 Fax: Email: lqois@kumpikate.com	
Lesney Moshes	Community	Tel: 079 60220529 Fax: Email:	
THABISO KHUMASO	Community	Tel: 026 8740 746 Fax: Email:	T.T.O
Lerato Ndlovu	Community	Tel: Fax: Email:	
		Tel: Fax: Email:	





Name & Surname	Company/Community	Contact details (Tel/Fax/Email)	Signature
BEAUTY N MABUCHA 0733832891 0823278868	PR COUNCILOR FROM MUNICIPALITY THABAMUNIBI	Tel: 0823278868 Fax: 0733832891 Email: -	
STEPHEN LEKUNO	WARD 03 SMASH - Block CTR	Tel: 0836219093 Fax: Email: stephenlekuno@gmail.com Cell 082253 1013	
CATHERINE SIKWANE	WARD 08 THABA ZIMBI COUNCILOR	Tel: 074 482 8096 Fax: Email: sikwanes@gmail.com	
VINESH DILSOOK	ANGLO	Tel: 073 109 6126 Fax: Email: vinesh.dilsook@angloamerican.com	
Lesege Manzini	Anglo	Tel: Fax: Email: lesege.manzini@anglo-angloamerican.com	


Name & Surname	Company/Community	Contact details (Tel/Fax/Email)	Signature
Gumpu Morapala	Retractable	Tel: 078 8786 794 Email:	
Percy Coetzee	Youth Sec of Swasikhloko	Tel: 078 525 904 / 082 454 9505 Fax: Email: percy.stela@emwel.com	
Golden <del>FRANCO</del>	GOLDEN GENERAL TRADING	Tel: 076 453204 / 0835224931 Fax: Email: GOLDEN@GOLDEN.COM	
Polizinas RKHUMANE	Mmanthseme	Tel: Fax: 079 37 58619 Email:	
Sandile	Ritshelke	Tel: 0833945805 Fax: Email:	

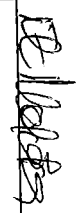

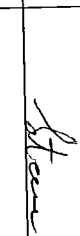







Name & Surname	Company/Community	Contact details (Tel/Fax/Email)	Signature
SUBONGISENI NOBHANGAYE	SMASH BLOCK	Tel: 0733343434 Fax: Email:	
GIDEON TUBSO TUECO	Northam	Tel: 0712153034 Fax: Email:	
John Mothobi	Northam	Tel: 0888 288 288 Fax: Email:	
SELLI Tshepiso	Northam	Tel: 07959 09 579 Fax: Email:	
P.B. Moore	SMESHABLOCK	Tel: Fax: Email: 07822 208957	

Name & Surname	Company/Community	Contact details (Tel/Fax/Email)	Signature
Karabo Komene	Notepocnem	Tel: Fax: Email: 0789272032	
Mrs Mbeme	Northam	Tel: Fax: Email: 0783872017	
Joseph Letogeng	Northam	Tel: Fax: Email: 074 6224968 / 0788787027	
Phelekezeli Phiso	Northam	Tel: 0644000881 Fax: Email: Phelekezeli@co.za	

Name & Surname	Company/Community	Contact details (Tel/Fax/Email)	Signature
Segale Pilane	AAP	Tel: 083 86 70650 Fax: 086 076 0183 Email: segale.pilane@angloamericon.com	
Lemogang Mabeni	Northern EDP	Tel: 0791504450 Fax: Email:	
KATBENA MOEBUDI	NORTHAM EDP	Tel: 0739172504 Fax: Email:	
Philly Mofomme		Tel: 014 7841656 Fax: Email: Philly.Mofomme@angloamericon.com	
KATE KETANA	NORTHAM R.B.P	Tel: 078 2078261 Fax: Email:	K. KETANA

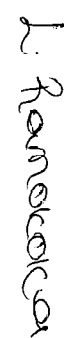



Name & Surname	Company/Community	Contact details (Tel/Fax/Email)	Signature
Precious Mpuzi	NORTHAM R.D.P	Tel: 0769073282 Fax: Email:	
		Tel: Fax: Email:	
		Tel: Fax: Email:	
		Tel: Fax: Email:	






Name & Surname	Company/Community	Contact details (Tel/Fax/Email)	Signature
ELIZABETH NOKOBA	MANTSERRE	Tel: Fax: Email: 0835454064	
JOHANNES NOKOBA	MANTSERRE	Tel: Fax: Email: 0926948451	
Siboniso Tona	Mantserre	Tel: Fax: Email: 0761192206	
ALFRED MONGI	MANTSERRE	Tel: Fax: Email: 0837297264	
Juta Dikshane	MANTSERRE	Tel: Fax: Email: 0769075266	Juta

Name & Surname	Company/Community	Contact details (Tel/Fax/Email)			Signature
Jimmy BARONE	NPA7SEARE	Tel: Fax: Email:	0718054234		
LILIAN SASSI	mmaseti	Tel: Fax: Email:	0781161948		
SENTINILE MORARO	SMASH BLOCK	Tel: Fax: Email:	0738042074		
Khasakhe	maseti	Tel: Fax: Email:	0758555201		



**PUBLIC MEETING 14 MAY 2013**  
 THE PROPOSED TUMELA MINE CENTRALSHAFT PROJECT  
**ATTENDANCE REGISTER**


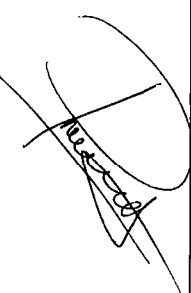



Name & Surname	Company/Community	Contact details (Tel/Fax/Email)	Signature
Ranokoka Jelepho	Mantseke	Tel: 0781109580 Fax: Email:	
Misses Ranokoka	Mantseke Rofat family	Tel: 0717180542 Fax: Email: Missesranokoka@gmail.com	
ROITUMELO CHIRWA	MANTSEKE MOTOKA	Tel: 0790681096 Fax: Email:	
R-1 Petrus Mabiladi	Mantseke tgotla	Tel: 0721898199 Fax: Email:	

Name & Surname	Company/Community	Contact details (Tel/Fax/Email)			Signature
Zemikheya Sikhunana	Smash Block <del>Metsetse</del>	Tel: 0834389752	Fax:	Email:	
BHEKAPHEZULU RPHIVOE	SMASH BLOCK	Tel: 078 272 7799	Fax:	Email:	
NELSON MHLWAGO	SMASH BLOCK	Tel: 073 766 8930	Fax:	Email:	
Cynthia Thandeka	Smash Block	Tel: 0910591069	Fax:	Email:	
Ellisemane Pholeli	Smash Block	Tel: 0739950268	Fax:	Email:	

# PUBLIC MEETING 14 MAY 2013

## THE PROPOSED TUMELA MINE CENTRALSHAFT PROJECT

### ATTENDANCE REGISTER

Name & Surname	Company/Community	Contact details (Tel/Fax/Email)	Signature
Libby Redding	AAR	Tel: 011 373 6744 Fax: Email: libby.redding@angloamerican.com	
Paul Muller	HATCH	Tel: 082 929 7981 Fax: Email: pmuller@hatch.co.za	
Danie van Aswegen	AAR-P	Tel: 082 455 9899 Fax: Email: danie.vanagswegen@angloamerican.com	
Jared O'Sullivan		Tel: 011 361 1396 Fax: 086 505 3939 Email: jared.o'sullivan@wspgroup.co.za	

## Appendix B: Public Meeting Presentation



Public Meeting

# Public Participation Process Scoping Phase

ANGLO AMERICAN PLATINUM,  
RUSTENBURG PLATINUM MINES,  
AMANDELBULT SECTION:

## PROPOSED TUMELA MINE CENTRAL SHAFT PROJECT

Venue: Amandelbult  
Recreational Club  
Date: 14 May 2013  
Time: 16h00 – 17h00

UNITED  
BY OUR  
DIFFERENCE



# Presentation Overview



- Introduction & Objective
- Project Location
- Project Motivation
- Project Description
- Public Participation & Authorisation Process
- Potential Impacts
- Discussion & Comments



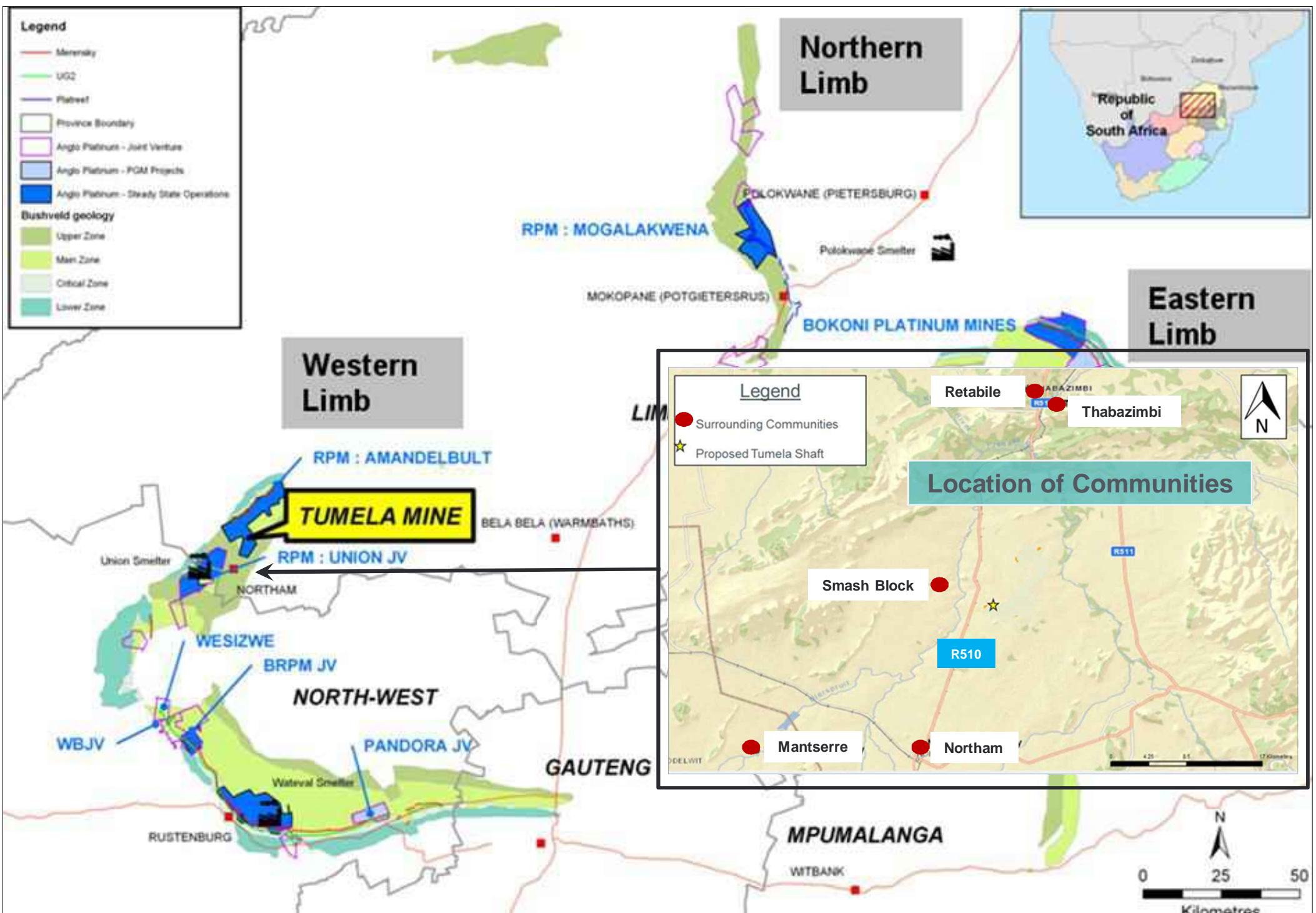


# Introduction & Objective



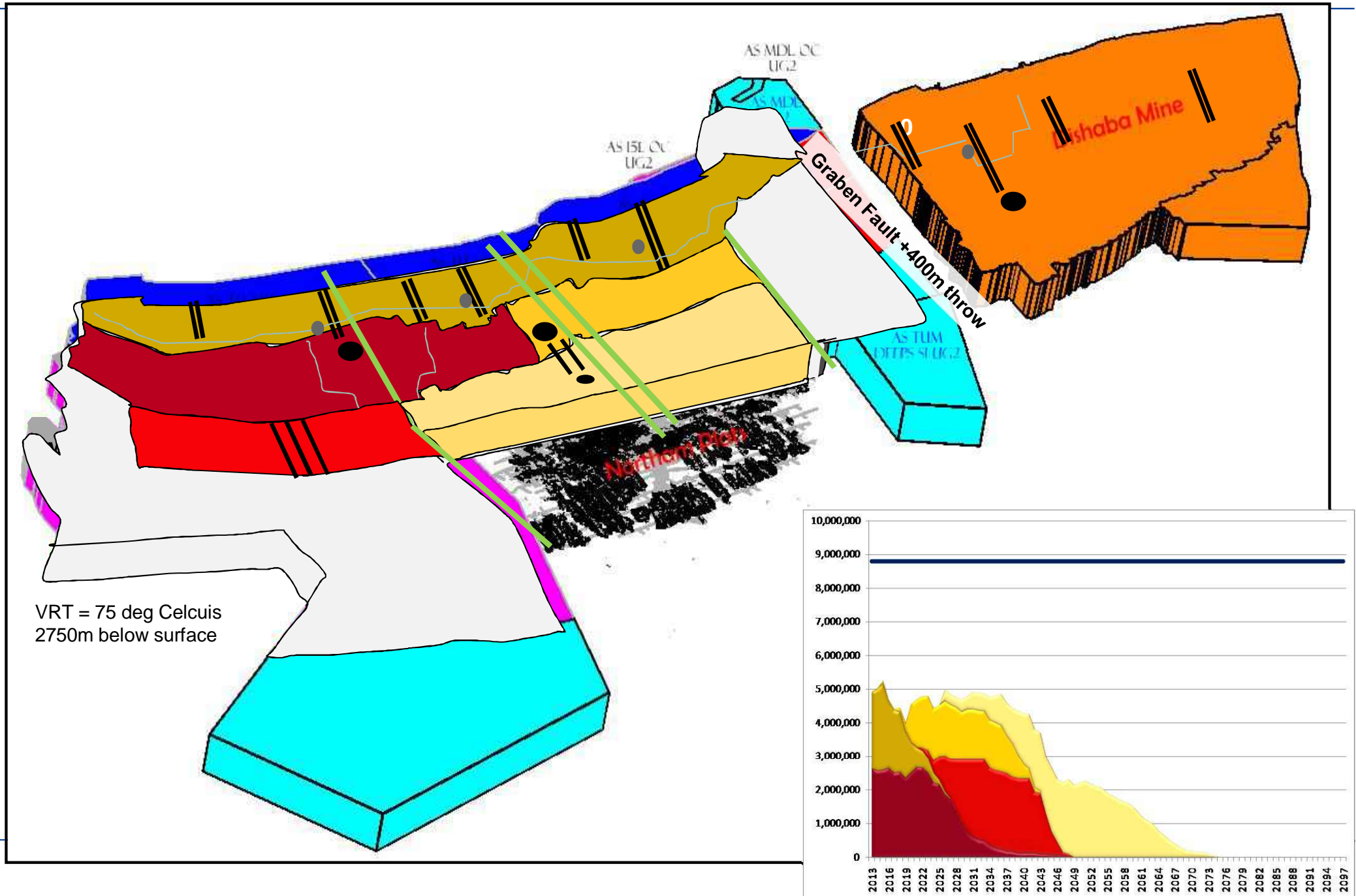
- Proponent
  - Anglo American Platinum Limited: Rustenburg Platinum Mines Limited (RPM)
- Independent Environmental Assessment Practitioner (EAP)
  - WSP Environmental (Pty) Ltd (WSP)
- Public Participation is a legal requirement, and is the process by which the views and concerns of stakeholders are identified and incorporated into the decision-making process. The objective of this process is to:
  - Inform key stakeholders of the proposed project;
  - Provide detail, location and motivation for the project;
  - Provide an opportunity for the public to raise concerns and issues;
  - Incorporate the public's input into the decision-making process.





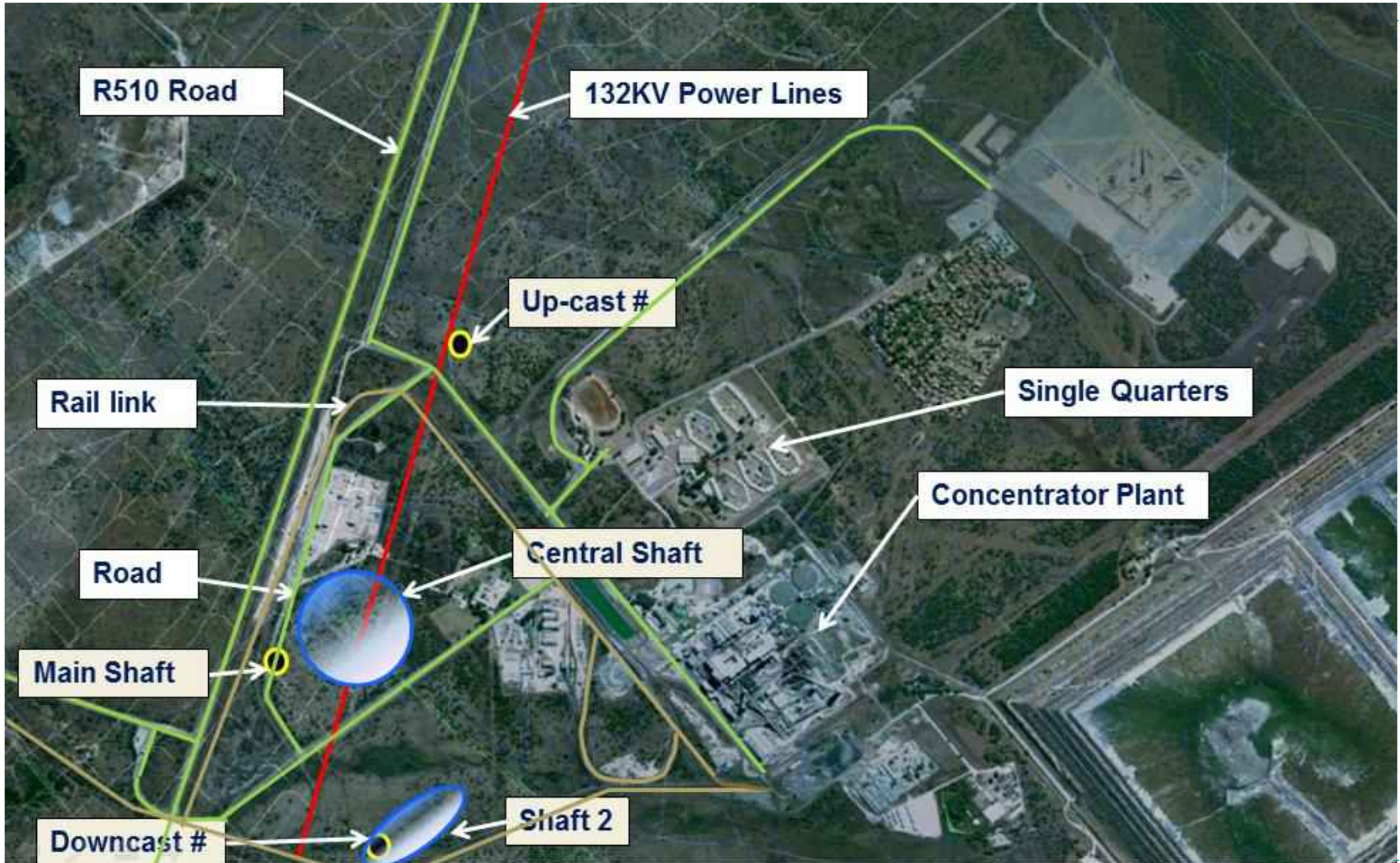
# Project Location

# Motivation for the Proposed Project





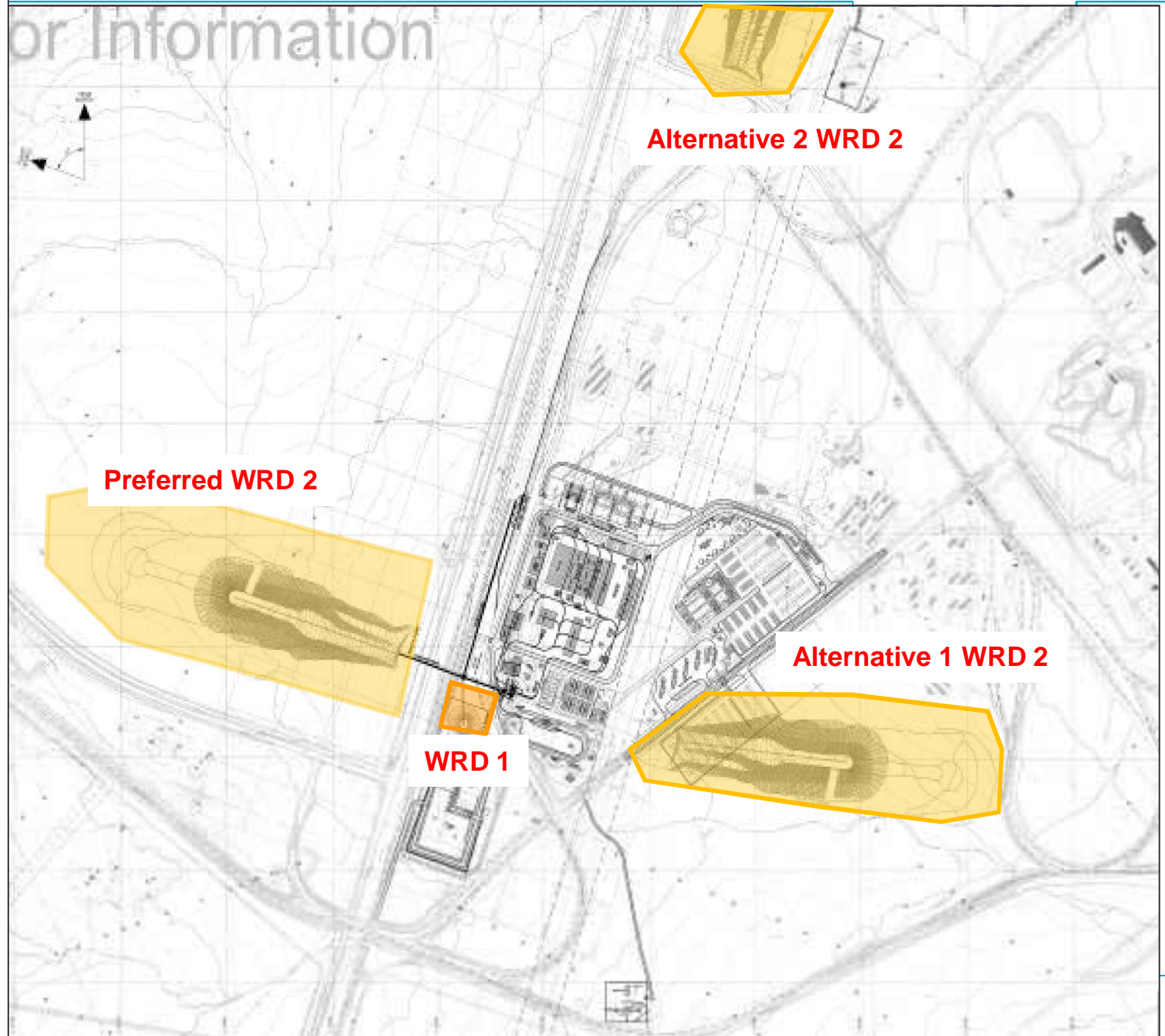
# Project Layout





# Project Description

- Main shaft (incl. headgear),
- Down-cast Vent Shaft,
- Up-cast Vent Shaft,
- Waste Rock Dump,
- Refrigeration Plant,
- Additional electrical reticulation; (incl. main Eskom substation);
- Compressed air infrastructure,
- Emergency power generation infrastructure,
- Mine stores (incl. explosives shed, timber yard, winder house, lamp house, salvage yard, workshops),
- Water management infrastructure,
- Offices (incl. change-houses),
- Waste management systems, and
- Security systems (incl. access control).



# Environmental Legal Framework



According to the Mineral and Petroleum Resource Development Act, the National Environmental Management Act and the National Water Act, an Environmental Management Programme Amendment, an environmental authorisation and a Water Use License is required in order for the activity to commence. The following departments will be responsible for issuing a decision with respect to the above statutes:

- The Department of Minerals & Resources;
- The Limpopo Department of Economic Development, Environment and Tourism; and
- The Department of Water Affairs.





# Public Participation & Authorisation Process



<b>Letter of Notification to DMR</b>	<b>08 February 2013</b>
<b>Application Form submission to LEDET</b>	<b>23 February 2013</b>
<b>Draft Scoping Report on Public Review (40 days)</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Tumela Mine Main Office; <input type="checkbox"/> Office of traditional authorities (Montserre); <input type="checkbox"/> Amandelbult Recreation Club; <input type="checkbox"/> Northam Library; and <input type="checkbox"/> WSP's website ( <a href="http://www.wspenvironmental.com/publicreview">www.wspenvironmental.com/publicreview</a> ).	<b>23 February – 03 April 2013</b>
<b>Community Engagement Forum Notification Meeting</b>	<b>08 March 2013</b>
<b>Public Notification Meeting (Scoping Phase)</b>	<b>11 March 2013</b>
<b>Public Meeting (Scoping Phase)</b>	<b>Today</b>
<b>Final comments from public for inclusion in Scoping Report</b>	<b>16 May 2013</b>
<b>Submission of final Scoping Report to LEDET and DMR</b>	<b>21 May 2013</b>
<b>EIA Phase commences</b>	<b>19 July 2013</b>
<b>Public review of draft EIR / EMPR amendment (40 days)</b>	<b>19 July – 29 August 2013</b>
<b>Public Meeting (EIA Phase)</b>	<b>05 August 2013 (TBC)</b>
<b>Comments &amp; Issues as received by public incorporated into Final EIR / EMPR amendment</b>	<b>28 August 2013</b>
<b>Final EIR/EMPR submitted to LEDET &amp; DMR</b>	<b>04 September 2013</b>
<b>Authority to make a decision on the application</b>	<b>28 January 2014</b>

# Assessment of Impacts



- As with any construction and/ or mining related activity, there is a potential for environmental impacts.
- Impacts typically associated with developmental projects are often unavoidable consequences of construction/ mining, however by taking cognisance lessons learned from the past and the environmental principles, the impact significance can be reduced.
- Environmental receptors/ aspects have been identified during the scoping process (this phase), and various specialists have undertaken investigations of the anticipated impacts.
- Environmental & Social Impact Management measures will be proposed during the EIA phase of the project which aim to reduce or completely eliminate the impact on the various spheres of the environment.
- The mitigation measures will be included in the mine's environmental management programme.
- The environmental management programme, if approved by competent authorities, becomes a legally binding document and compliance will be audited annually (depending on the authorisation conditions).



# Potential Impacts



The possible impact on the environment will be further investigated by the EAP during the EIA phase and in certain cases validated via specialist studies:

- Soils, Land-use and Land Capability;
- Animals and Plants;
- *Water (surface- and groundwater);*
- *Dust, Noise & Vibration;*
- *Traffic and Aesthetic/ Visual status;*
- *Cultural & Heritage Sites; &*
- Safety hazards typical of construction activities.



# Anticipated Project Benefits



## Positive outcomes include, but are not limited to:

- Surety in terms of existing employment;
- Potential employment & procurement opportunities (for individuals as well as small businesses, predominantly during construction phase);
- Approval of this project will provide access to previously unreachable resources and would ultimately increase the life of the Amandelbult operations.



# Discussion & Comments



For further queries please contact:  
**WSP Environmental**

<b>Kerry Buchanan</b>	<b>Jared O'Brien</b>
Project Manager	Consultant
Tel: 011 361 1395	Tel: 011 361 1395
Fax: 011 361 1381	Fax: 086 505 3939
<a href="mailto:Kerry.Buchanan@wspgroup.co.za">Kerry.Buchanan@wspgroup.co.za</a>	<a href="mailto:Jared.obrien@wspgroup.co.za">Jared.obrien@wspgroup.co.za</a>



# Tumela Central Shaft Project – Public Meeting (Directional Board Photo Plate)



Directional Board 1



Directional Board 2



Directional Board 3



Directional Board 4

# Appendices

## Appendix A - Authority Correspondence

---

LEDET Correspondence (Application form and acceptance letter)



Our ref: 36015



09 March 2013

Central Administration Office;  
Environmental Affairs Building;  
Cnr Suid and Dorp Streets;  
POLOKWANE;  
0699.

To Mr E. V. Maluleke,

**Re: Rejection Letter received from the Limpopo Department of Economic Development, Environment and Tourism following the submission of the Environmental Impact Assessment Application form for the proposed Amandelbult Section, Tumela Central Shaft project located in the Limpopo Province**

Rustenburg Platinum Mines Ltd. (RPM), a wholly owned subsidiary of Anglo American Platinum is the holder of an existing new order mining right (LP30/5/1/2/2/48 MR), in respect of Platinum Group Element (PGE) deposits, which is contained in the Merensky- and UG2 reefs within the mining area. The Amandelbult Section, located in the Limpopo Province, is an established and fully developed mine situated on the north-western limb of the Bushveld Complex. The mine comprises of the Tumela Mine, Dishaba Mine and Concentrator Plant. The mine is located within the Thabazimbi Local Municipality (NP 361) and the Waterberg District Municipality (DC 36), approximately 40 km south of Thabazimbi, 15 km north of Northam and 100 km north of Rustenburg.

The Tumela Mine (forming part of the Amandelbult Section) has revised its Business Plan to access the resources of the 15 E Business Centre, located on the farm Schildpadnest 385KQ, via a new shaft (the Tumela Central Shaft). The Tumela Mine would not be able to maintain its production profile unless capital projects are brought online. Tumela Mine has a major platinum resource and the business objectives for Tumela Mine would thus be to exploit this resource and target a sustained production profile above the required threshold. This would curtail production at its required level and hence sustain its workforce.

The objective of the Central Shaft Project will be to install infrastructure to access the 15 East mining area, from 11 to 16 levels, on both the Merensky- and UG2 reef horizons, that will bring production online by no later than 2019.

In order to receive environmental authorisation, RPM are required to undertake an EIA process in accordance with the environmental impact assessment (EIA) regulations of 2010 for the proposed activities. The authorisation to sink the new shaft will need to be obtained from the Limpopo Department of Economic Development, Environment & Tourism (LEDET) for the activities listed in GNR.544 & GNR.545 of 2010: Activity 12 (GNR.544); Activity 23 (GNR.544); and Activity 5 (GNR.545).

In addition, a Water use license will need to be obtained from the Department of Water Affairs (DWA) for the water related activities listed in Section 21 of the National Water Act. Furthermore, as the proposed project is located in a mine lease area, RPM is required to undertake an Environmental Management Programme Report (EMPR) Amendment process in line with the Mineral and Petroleum Resource Development Act (No 28 of 2002) (MPRDA).

**WSP Environmental (Pty) Ltd**  
WSP House  
Bryanston Place  
199 Bryanston Drive  
Bryanston, 2021  
Tel: +27 (0)11 361 1380  
Fax: +27 (0)11 361 1381  
<http://www.wspenvironmental.co.za>  
Reg. No: 1995/08790/07

WSP Group plc  
Offices worldwide

WSP received a response (acknowledgement of receipt) on the 28<sup>th</sup> of February 2013 from the LEDET which indicated that the application form submitted to the LEDET on the 11<sup>th</sup> of February 2013 was rejected for the following reasons:

- Each activity on the application was not explained in terms of its relevance to the proposed project; and
- The locality map provided did not match the expected standards of the Department.

In response to the rejection from the Department, WSP has amended the application form in order to comply with the standards of the LEDET.

Please find herewith **six copies** of the EIA application form (including associated specialist declarations). Should you require any additional information or have any questions, please do not hesitate to contact the undersigned.

Regards,

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read 'Jared O'Brien', written in a cursive style.

**Jared O'Brien**  
**Environmental Consultant**  
Tel: 011 361 1396  
Fax: 086 505 3939  
Email: [jared.obrien@wspgroup.co.za](mailto:jared.obrien@wspgroup.co.za)





# LIMPOPO

PROVINCIAL GOVERNMENT  
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

## DEPARTMENT OF ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT, ENVIRONMENT & TOURISM

### EIA APPLICATION FORM - EIA REGULATIONS, 2010

Application for authorisation in terms of the National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998), as amended and the Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) Regulations, 2010

(For official use only)

File Reference Number:

NEAS Reference Number:

Date Received:


#### PROJECT TITLE

The proposed Anglo American Platinum Limited: Rustenburg Platinum Mines – Amandelbult Section, Tumela Central Shaft

Kindly note that:

1. This application form is current as of 2 August 2010. It is the responsibility of the applicant to ascertain whether subsequent versions of the form have been published or produced by the Department.
2. In this form Regulations refer to Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations, 2010; and the Act refers to the National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act 107 of 1998) as amended.
3. The application must be typed within the spaces provided in the form. The sizes of the spaces provided are not necessarily indicative of the amount of information to be provided. Spaces are provided in tabular format and will extend automatically when each space is filled with typing.
4. Where applicable black out the boxes that are not applicable in the form.
5. Incomplete applications may be returned to the applicant for revision.
6. The use of the phrase "not applicable" in the form must be done with circumspection. Should it be done in respect of material information required by the competent authority for assessing the application, it may result in the rejection of the application as provided for in the Regulations.
7. No faxed or e-mailed applications will be accepted.

Cnr Suid & Dorp Streets, POLOKWANE, 0700, P O Box 55464, POLOKWANE, 0700  
Tel: 015 295 9300, Fax: 015 295 5015, website: <http://www.Limpopo.gov.za>

***The heartland of southern Africa – development is about people!***

8. Unless protected by law, all information filled in on this application will become public information on receipt by the competent authority. Any interested and affected party should be provided with the information contained in this application on request, during any stage of the application process.
9. This application form must be handed in at the offices of the Department of Economic Development, Environment and Tourism:-

<p><u>Postal Address:</u></p> <p>Central Administration Office  Environmental Impact Management  P. O. Box 55464  POLOKWANE  0700</p>	<p><u>Physical Address:</u></p> <p>Central Administration Office  Environmental Affairs Building  Cnr Suid and Dorp Streets  POLOKWANE  0699</p>
<p>Queries should be directed to the Central Administration Office: Environmental Impact Management:-</p> <p>For attention: Mr E. V. Maluleke</p> <p>Tel: (015) 291 1315 / 291 5640</p> <p>Fax: (015) 295 5015</p> <p>Email: <a href="mailto:malulekeev@ledet.gov.za">malulekeev@ledet.gov.za</a></p>	

View the Department's website at <http://www.ledet.gov.za/> for the latest version of the documents.

## A. PROJECT DESCRIPTION

The entire project will entail the following (full detail of the project can also be appended):

### Background information

Rustenburg Platinum Mines Ltd. (RPM), a wholly owned subsidiary of Anglo American Platinum is the holder of an existing new order mining right (LP30/5/1/2/2/48 MR), in respect of Platinum Group Element (PGE) deposits, which is contained in the Merensky- and UG2 reefs within the mining area. The Amandelbult Section, located in the Limpopo Province, is an established and fully developed mine situated on the north-western limb of the Bushveld Complex. The mine comprises of the Tumela Mine, Dishaba Mine and Concentrator Plant. The mine is located within the Thabazimbi Local Municipality (NP 361) and the Waterberg District Municipality (DC 36), approximately 40 km south of Thabazimbi, 15 km north of Northam and 100 km north of Rustenburg. Please refer to Figure 1 which illustrates the location of the Tumela Mine in relation to surrounding rivers, roads and towns.

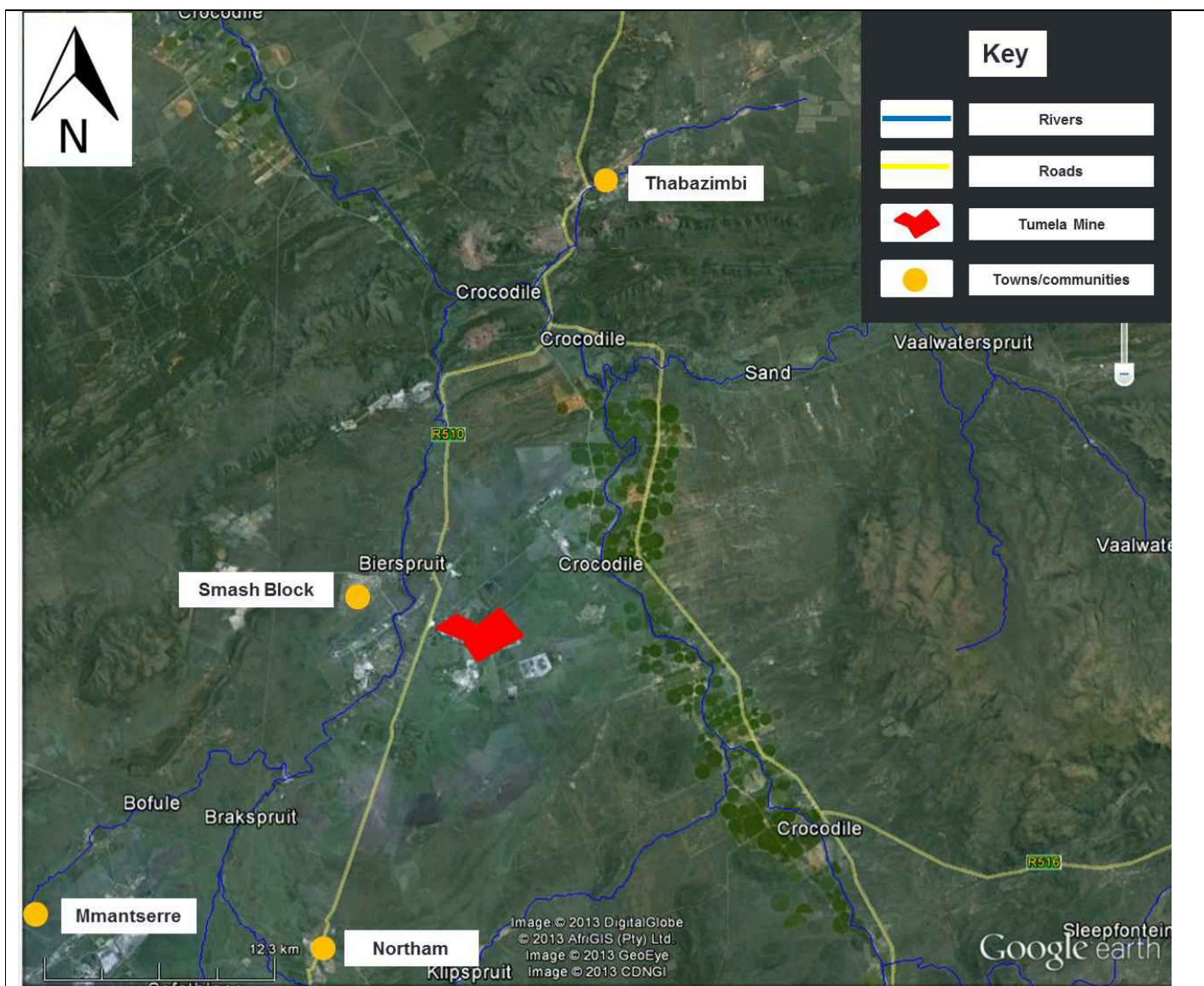


Figure 1 – Locality Map

The main activity at the Amandelbult Section is the mining of the Platinum Group Metals (PGMs) by means of underground mining. Ore mined from the reserves is processed at the Concentrator Plant before being transported to off-site smelters for further refining. Opencast mining was undertaken in the past in certain areas. However, this ceased in 2005 and the land has been rehabilitated in accordance with the approved EMPR, dated 1995 and subsequent approved addendums.

Motivation for the proposed project

The Tumela Mine (forming part of the Amandelbult Section) has revised its Business Plan to access the resources of the 15 E Business Centre, located on the farm Schildpadnest 385KQ (Figure 1), via a new shaft, the Tumela Central Shaft (Refer to Appendix A which illustrates the location of the shaft as well as the alternative location considered).

Tumela Mine would not be able to maintain its production profile unless capital projects are brought online. Tumela Mine has a major platinum resource and the business objectives for Tumela Mine would thus be to exploit this resource and target a sustained production profile above the required threshold. This would ensure sustained production at its required level and hence sustain its current workforce.

#### Objectives of the proposed project

The objective of the Central Shaft Project will be to install infrastructure to access the 15 East mining area, from 11 to 16 levels, on both the Merensky- and UG2 reef horizons, that will bring production online by no later than 2019 in order to ensure the sustained profitability of the mine and maintenance of the current workforce.

#### Project Description

The envisaged activities associated with the proposed project may feature the following (which may be amended in future):

- A single Ø 8.1 m down-cast shaft equipped with a steel headgear, ± 45 m height,
- An additional Ø 6.5 m down-cast shaft equipped with a steel headgear, ± 30m m height, with the fridge plant and BAC as noted below – required 5 years after the main shaft commissioning
- A single Ø 6.55 m up-cast vent shaft, equipped with 2 x 3MW Fans;
- The shafts will have the following associated infrastructure:
  - Ore silo with ore conveyor;
  - Access roads;
  - Railway links;
  - Office blocks;
  - Change house;
  - Salvage yard;
  - Explosives shed;
  - Timber yard;
  - Winder house;
  - Lamp house;
  - Parking area;
  - Fridge plant with cooling water dams;
  - Bulk air coolers; and
  - Service / process water storage dams.
- Waste Rock Dump (WRD);
- Waste Rock Conveyor – (± 200 m from headgear to the WRD);

- Sub-station with feed from existing 132kV Eskom power lines, running adjacent to the proposed sites.
- Mine process water runoff dams and
- Compressor system.

Please refer to the proposed surface infrastructure layout plan in Appendix A which indicates all proposed surface infrastructure.

#### Alternatives considered

Alternatives considered for the project specifically relate to the Central Shaft and Waste Rock Dump locations as per the description below:

#### ■ Central Shaft location

The project team considered 2 different locations for the shaft (please refer to section C for location co-ordinates).

The preferred alternative was identified due to the following benefits:

- *Geological stable area* - Reasonable geological information to west of Little Jhon Fault System to indicate its suitability for the proposed infrastructure;
- *Proximity to supporting infrastructure* – the location is close to existing rail, road and power supply; and
- *Timeframes associated* – Due to the lack of any alterations of existing infrastructure the alternative ensures that the project deadline is met.

Please view Appendix A in order to understand location in relation to surrounding infrastructure.

#### ■ Waste Rock Dump location

The project team considered 3 different locations for the shaft (please refer to section C for location co-ordinates).

The preferred alternative was identified due to the following factors:

- *Capital Expenditure*: low due to the lack of requirement for tunnelling, etc.
- *Operational expenditure*: Low input in relation to the un-preferred alternatives;
- *Environmental Aspects*: The area is currently undeveloped, however previous flora and fauna studies have taken place in the past therefore the area is considered well documented. The impact can be managed/ reduced with the correct mitigation measures applied.

In conclusion the preferred alternative was selected based on numerous investigations and considerations. Please view Appendix A in order to understand location in relation to surrounding infrastructure.

#### Authorisation process to be followed

The proponent has appointed WSP Environmental as the independent consultant to undertake the following in terms of the legislative requirements for the activities associated with the proposed Tumela Mine Central Shaft Project:

- EMPR amendment in terms of the MPRDA;



- Scoping Report and EIA in terms of NEMA, as amended, and
- Water Use Licence Application in terms of the NWA.

**B. SITE IDENTIFICATION AND LINKAGE**

Please indicate all the Surveyor-general 21 digit site (erf/farm/portion) reference numbers for all sites (including portions of sites) that are part of the application.

T	0	K	Q	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	3	8	5	0	0	0	0
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

(These numbers will be used to link various different applications, authorisations, permits etc. that may be connected to a specific site) If there are more than 6, please attach a list with the rest of the numbers.

**C. ACTIVITY POSITION**

Indicate the position of the activity using the latitude and longitude of the centre point of the site for each alternative site. The co-ordinates should be in degrees, minutes and seconds. The projection that must be used in all cases is the WGS84 spheroid in a national or local projection.

List alternative sites, if applicable.

Central Shaft Alternatives:

	Latitude (S):			Longitude (E):		
Alternative S1 <sup>1</sup> (preferred or only site alternative)	24°	48'	24.09"	27°	19'	12.35"
Alternative S2 (if any)	24°	48'	42.91"	27°	19'	21.38"
Alternative S3 (if any)						

Waste Rock Dump Alternative:

	Latitude (S):			Longitude (E):		
Alternative S1 <sup>2</sup> (preferred or only site alternative)	24°	48'	20.40"	27°	18'	52.98"
Alternative S2 (if any)	24°	48'	32.44"	27°	19'	28.94"
Alternative S3 (if any)	24°	47'	44.66"	27°	19'	26.58"

In the case of linear activities:

Alternative: Latitude (S): Longitude (E):

<sup>1</sup> "Alternative S.." refer to site alternatives.

<sup>2</sup> "Alternative S.." refer to site alternatives.

Alternative S1 (preferred or only route alternative)

- Starting point of the activity
- Middle/Additional point of the activity
- End point of the activity

o	1	11	o	1	11
o	1	11	o	1	11
o	1	11	o	1	11

Alternative S2 (if any)

- Starting point of the activity
- Middle/Additional point of the activity
- End point of the activity

o	1	11	o	1	11
o	1	11	o	1	11
o	1	11	o	1	11

Alternative S3 (if any)

- Starting point of the activity
- Middle/Additional point of the activity
- End point of the activity

o	1	11	o	1	11
o	1	11	o	1	11
o	1	11	o	1	11

For route alternatives that are longer than 500m, please provide an addendum with co-ordinates taken every 250 meters along the route for each alternative alignment.

D. PROJECT VALUE

Please indicate the estimated value of your project in Rand Value. This information is only required for reporting purposes by the Department.

Project Value ('R')

R 5.3 billion
---------------

PROJECT TITLE

The proposed Anglo American Platinum Limited: Rustenburg Platinum Mines – Amandelbult Section, Tumela Mine Central Shaft.

1. BACKGROUND INFORMATION

Project Applicant:	Anglo American Platinum		
Trading Name (if any):	Rustenburg Platinum Mines		
Representative:	Tom van den Berg		
Physical Address:	Tumela Mine, Main Offices, Thabazimbi Road, Northam, Limpopo, 0360		
Postal Address:	Amandelbult Mine, P O Box 2, Chromite, 0362, South Africa		
Postal Code:	0362	Cell:	+27 82 8834571
Telephone:	+27 (0) 14 784 7100	Fax:	+27 (0) 14 784 1720
E-mail:	Tom.VanDenBerg@angloamerican.om		

Landowner:	The Baphalane Ba Mantserre Community Development Trust		
Contact Person:	MD Ramothwala		
Postal Address:	3 <sup>rd</sup> Floor West Wing, Centenary Building, Bureau Lane, Pretoria.		
Postal Code:	0001	Cell:	N/A
Telephone:	012 323 4824	Fax:	012 323 8157
E-mail:	lenyaimd@mweb.co.za		

In instances where there is more than one landowner, please attach a list of landowners with their contact details to this application.

District Municipality in whose jurisdiction the proposed activity will fall	Waterberg District Municipality		
Local Municipality (LM) in whose jurisdiction the proposed activity will fall:	Thabazimbi Local Municipality		
Nearest town/city:	15 km north of Northam		
LM Contact Person:	Riaan Lategan		
Postal Address:	Thabazimbi Local Municipality; Private Bag X530; Thabazimbi.		
Postal Code:	0380	Cell:	083 236 8902
Telephone:	014 777 1525	Fax:	014 777 1531
E-mail:	riaanlat@webmail.co.za		

In instances where there is more than one local municipality and city/town involved, please attach a list with their contact details to this application

Property Description/Physical Address:

Farm details: Schildpadnest 385KQ

The mine is located approximately 40 km south of Thabazimbi, 15 km north of Northam and 100 km north of Rustenburg.

(Farm name, Portion, Erf/stand, etc.) Where a large number of properties are involved (e.g. linear activities), please attach a full list to this application.

Current land-use zoning:

Mining and Industry

In instances where there is more than one current land-use zoning, please attach a list of current land use zonings that also indicate which portions each use pertains to, to this application.

Is a change of land-use or a consent use application required?

YES	NO
-----	----

Must a building plan be submitted to the local municipality?

YES	NO
-----	----

Locality map: An A3 locality map must be attached to the back of this document, as Appendix A. The scale of the locality map must be relevant to the size of the development (at least 1:50 000). For linear activities of more than 25 kilometres, a smaller scale e.g. 1:250 000 can be used. The scale must be indicated on the map.)

The map must indicate the following:

- an accurate indication of the project site position as well as the positions of the alternative sites, if any;
- road access from all major roads in the area;
- road names or numbers of all major roads as well as the roads that provide access to the site(s);
- all roads within a 1km radius of the site or alternative sites; and
- a north arrow; and
- a legend;

**Refer Appendix A**

## 2. TYPE OF APPLICATION

### 2.1 Application for Basic Assessment

Is this an application for conducting a Basic Assessment

YES	NO
-----	----

Please indicate when the basic assessment report will be submitted:

### 2.2 Application for Scoping and EIA

Is this an application for Scoping and EIA

YES	NO
-----	----

Please indicate when the Scoping Report (including the Plan of Study for EIA) will be submitted:

---

3. ACTIVITIES APPLIED FOR TO BE AUTHORISED

For an application for authorisation that involves more than one listed or specified activity that, together, make up one development proposal, all the listed activities pertaining to this application must be indicated.

3.1 For Notice 1 (R.544, 18 June 2010) and Notice 2 (R.545, 18 June 2010)

Indicate the number and date of the relevant notice: Activity No (s) (in terms of the relevant notice) : Describe each listed activity as per project description<sup>3</sup>:

R. 544, 18 June 2010	12	The construction of facilities or infrastructure for the off-stream storage of water, including dams and reservoirs, with a combined capacity of 50 000 m <sup>3</sup> or more.  <i>The Combined water storage of the proposed project infrastructure may exceed 50 000 m<sup>3</sup>.</i>
R. 544, 18 June 2010	23	The transformation of undeveloped, vacant or derelict land to commercial or industrial use, outside an urban area and where the total area to be transformed is bigger than 1 hectare but less than 20 hectares.  <i>The proposed Waste Rock Dump will cover an area greater than 1 hectare.</i>
R. 545, 18 June 2010	5	The construction of facilities or infrastructure for any process or activity which requires a permit or license in terms of national or provincial legislation governing the generation or release of emissions, pollution or effluent and which is not identified in GNR.544 of 2010 or included in the list of waste management activities published in terms of Section 19 of the NEM:WA.  A Water Use Licence Application will be required for water use activities associated with the project including but not limited to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The proposed Waste rock dump;</li> <li>■ The proposed Dirty water management facilities, and</li> <li>■ The proposed Dewatering of the shaft.</li> </ul>

Please note that any authorisation that may result from this application will only cover activities specifically applied for.

3.2 For Notice 3 (R.546, 18 June 2010)

Activity No (s) (in the notice) : No. of Geographical Area and Description as per project Describe each listed activity as per project description<sup>4</sup>:

N/A	N/A	N/A
-----	-----	-----

<sup>3</sup> Please note that this description should not be a verbatim repetition of the listed activity as contained in the relevant Government Notice, but should be a brief description of activities to be undertaken as per the project description

<sup>4</sup> Please note that this description should not be a verbatim repetition of the listed activity as contained in the relevant Government Notice, but should be a brief description of activities to be undertaken as per the project description

Please note that any authorisation that may result from this application will only cover activities specifically applied for.

4. OTHER AUTHORISATIONS REQUIRED

4.1 DO YOU NEED ANY AUTHORISATIONS IN TERMS OF ANY OF THE FOLLOWING LAWS?

	Yes or No		Submitted		Date submitted to relevant Authority
	Yes	No	Yes	No	
4.1.1 National Environmental Management: Waste Act	Yes	No	Yes	No	N/A
4.1.2 National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act	Yes	No	Yes	No	N/A
4.1.3 National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act	Yes	No	Yes	No	N/A
4.1.4 National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act	Yes	No	Yes	No	N/A
4.1.5 Mineral Petroleum Development Resources Act	Yes	No	Yes	No	Consultation on 24 January 2013
4.1.6 National Water Act	Yes	No	Yes	No	Consultation held on 25 February 2013
4.1.7 National Heritage Resources Act	Yes	No	Yes	No	N/A
4.1.8 Other (please specify)	Yes	No	Yes	No	N/A



## 5. DECLARATIONS

### PROJECT TITLE

The proposed Anglo American Platinum Limited: Rustenburg Platinum Mines – Amandelbult Section, Tumela Central Shaft.

#### 5.1 The Applicant

I, Thomas van den Berg, declare that I -

- am, or represent<sup>4</sup>, the applicant in this application;
- have appointed / will appoint (delete that which is not applicable) an environmental assessment practitioner to act as the independent environmental assessment practitioner for this application / will obtain exemption from the requirement to obtain an environmental assessment practitioner<sup>5</sup>;
- will provide the environmental assessment practitioner and the competent authority with access to all information at my disposal that is relevant to the application;
- will be responsible for the costs incurred in complying with the Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations, 2010, including but not limited to –
  - costs incurred in connection with the appointment of the environmental assessment practitioner or any person contracted by the environmental assessment practitioner;
  - costs incurred in respect of the undertaking of any process required in terms of the Regulations;
  - costs in respect of any fee prescribed by the MEC in respect of the Regulations;
  - costs in respect of specialist reviews, if the competent authority decides to recover costs; and
  - the provision of security to ensure compliance with conditions attached to an environmental authorisation, should it be required by the competent authority;
- will ensure that the environmental assessment practitioner is competent to comply with the requirements of these Regulations and will take reasonable steps to verify whether the EAP complies with the Regulations;
- will inform all registered interested and affected parties of any suspension of the application as well as of any decisions taken by the competent authority in this regard;
- am responsible for complying with the conditions of any environmental authorisation issued by the competent authority;

<sup>4</sup> If this is signed on behalf of the applicant, proof of such authority from the applicant must be attached.

<sup>5</sup> If exemption is obtained from appointing an EAP, the responsibilities of an EAP will automatically apply to the person conducting the environmental impact assessment in terms of the Regulations.

- hereby indemnify the Government of the Republic, the Department and all its officers, agents and employees, from any liability arising out of the content of any report, any procedure or any action which the applicant or environmental assessment practitioner is responsible for in terms of these Regulations;
- will not hold the Department responsible for any costs that may be incurred by the applicant in proceeding with an activity prior to obtaining an environmental authorisation or prior to an appeal being decided in terms of these Regulations;
- will perform all other obligations as expected from an applicant in terms of the Regulations;
- all the particulars furnished by me in this form are true and correct; and
- I realise that a false declaration is an offence in terms of regulation 71 and is punishable in terms of section 24F of the Act.




Signature of the applicant<sup>6</sup>/ Signature on behalf of the applicant:

Anglo American Platinum - Tumbula Mine

Name of company (if applicable):

05/2/13

Date



8/2/2013

COMMISSIONER OF OATHS  
 Johan Janse van Rensburg CA (SA)  
 Commissioner of Oaths (RSA)  
 8 Orchard Avenue, Bordeaux  
 Randburg 2194, South Africa

<sup>6</sup> If the applicant is a juristic person, a signature on behalf of the applicant is required as well as proof of such authority. An EAP may not sign on behalf of an applicant.



EK SEKURISIEER DAT HIERDE DOKUMENT 'N WARE AFDruk (AFSKRIF) IS VAN  
 DIE OORSPRONKELIKE DOKUMENT WAT VAN MY VIR WAARNEMING VOORGELE  
 IS. EK SEKURISIEER VERDER DAT, VOECENS MY WAARNEMINGS, DAAR NIE 'N  
 WYSGIING OF VERANDERING OP DIE OORSPRONKELIKE DOKUMENT AANGE-  
 BRING IS NIE.  
 I CERTIFY THAT THIS DOCUMENT IS A TRUE REPRODUCTION (COPY) OF THE  
 ORIGINAL DOCUMENT WHICH WAS HANDED TO ME FOR AUTHENTICATION. I  
 FURTHER CERTIFY THAT, FROM MY OBSERVATIONS, AN AMENDMENT OR A  
 CHANGE WAS NOT MADE TO THE ORIGINAL DOCUMENT.

MAGSNOMMER / FORCE NUMBER: 0806944-1  
 NAAM IN DRUKSKRIF / NAME IN PRINT: Anna Susanna Bekwange  
 RANG / RANK: 419C  
 HANDTEKENINGS/SGNATUUR: *Anna Bekwange*

GEREGISTREERDE WOON- EN POSADRES

1. Bewaar die bewys van u GEREGISTREERDE WOON- EN POSADRES in hierdie sakke.
2. Indien u van adres verander het, of indien besonderhede van u huidige adres, by straatnaam en/of -nommer, ens. verander het, moet die vorm KENNISGEWING VAN ADRESVERANDERING, wat in die sakke agter in die identiteitsdokument is, gebruik word om die verandering aan te meld en moet dit ingedien word by of geops word aan die naaste streek/distriktkantoor van die DEPARTEMENT VAN BINNELANDSE SAKE.

REGISTERED RESIDENTIAL AND POSTAL ADDRESS

1. Keep the proof of your REGISTERED RESIDENTIAL AND POSTAL ADDRESS in this pocket.
2. If you have changed your address, or if particulars of your present address, e.g. name of street and/or street number, etc., have been changed, the NOTICE OF CHANGE OF ADDRESS form in the pocket at the back of the identity document must be used to report the change and it must be handed in at or posted to the nearest regional/district office of the DEPARTMENT OF HOME AFFAIRS.

1

I.D.No. 671126 5007 08 4



S. A. BURGERS/S. A. CITIZEN

VANV/SURNAME  
VAN DEN BERG

VOORNAME/FORENAMES  
THOMAS

GEOORTEDISTRIK OF-LAND/  
DISTRICT OR COUNTRY OF BIRTH

SOUTH AFRICA

GEOORTEDATUM/  
DATE OF BIRTH

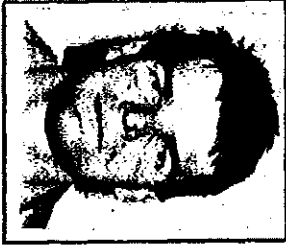
1967-11-26

DATUM UITGEREIK  
DATE ISSUED

2000-02-23

UITGEREIK OP GEZAG VAN DIE  
BINNELANDSE SAKE

ISSUED BY AUTHORITY OF THE  
DIRECTOR-GENERAL:  
HOME AFFAIRS

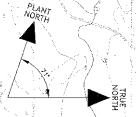


SUID-AFRIKAANSE POLISE DIENS  
 SOUTH-AFRICAN POLICE SERVICE  
 29 SEP 2005  
 SEPODISI SA AFRICA - SEORRWA  
 KANTORO YA DITATOFATISO

Appendix A

**Surface infrastructure layout drawing of the proposed Tumela Central Shaft project**

# For Information



DATE: 15/08/2017	PROJECT: PLATINUM PHASE 1	SCALE: 1:500
DRAWN BY: [Name]	CHECKED BY: [Name]	APPROVED BY: [Name]
DATE: 15/08/2017	PROJECT: PLATINUM PHASE 1	SCALE: 1:500
DRAWN BY: [Name]	CHECKED BY: [Name]	APPROVED BY: [Name]

**AngloAmerican**

**PLATINUM LTD**

630 FORT STENN PHASE 1  
FARMER STREET  
MARLBOROUGH

31/08/2017



PLATINUM

Rustenburg Platinum Mines Limited

AMANDELBULT MINE  
R510 Thabazimbi Road  
Thabazimbi  
0380  
South Africa

The Chairperson  
Baphalane Community Development Trust  
Mantserre

5 February 2013

Dear P. Marakalla

**RE: LANDOWNER NOTIFICATION: ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME AMENDMENT FOR THE PROPOSED ANGLO AMERICAN PLATINUM LIMITED: RUSTENBURG PLATINUM MINES – AMANDELBULT SECTION, TUMELA CENTRAL SHAFT**

Rustenburg Platinum Mines Limited (RPM) proposes a new shaft (the Tumela Central Shaft) at the Amandelbult Section: Tumela Mine in the Limpopo Province. The proposed project falls on land owned by the "Bophalane Ba Montserre Community Development Trust" and a lease agreement between the parties is in place. Notification of an Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) is hereby given, in terms of the National Environmental Management Act (No. 107 of 1998) as amended (NEMA) and section 15 (1) of the EIA Regulations in Government Notice (GN) 543 of 2010, which states:

*"If the applicant is not the owner or person in control of the land on which the activity is to be undertaken, the applicant must give written notice of the proposed activity to the owner or person in control of the land on which the activity is to be undertaken, and inform such person that he may participate in the public participation process".*

The following information forms part of this memorandum:

1. Background information;
2. Motivation for the proposed project;
3. Objectives of the proposed project;
4. Project description; and
5. Authorisation process to be followed.

**1. Background information**

Rustenburg Platinum Mines Ltd. (RPM), a wholly owned subsidiary of Anglo American Platinum is the holder of an existing new order mining right (LP30/5/1/2/2/48 MR), in respect of Platinum Group Element (PGE) deposits, which is contained in the Merensky- and UG2 reefs within the mining area. The Amandelbult Section, located in the Limpopo Province, is an established and

**A member of the Anglo American plc group**

Amandelbult Mine  
Business Address: R510 Thabazimbi Road, Thabazimbi, 0380. P O Box 2, Chromite, 0362, South Africa.  
T +27 (0) 14 784 7100 F +27 (0) 14 784 1720

Rustenburg Platinum Mines Limited  
Registered Address: 55 Marshall Street, Johannesburg, 2001. P O Box 62179, Marshalltown, 2107 South Africa. T +27 (0) 11 3736111 F +27 (0) 11 3735111  
Incorporated in South Africa. Registration Number: 1931/003380/08

Directors: Cl Griffith (Chairman) A Hinkly PJ Louw B Magara J Mokoša MJ Morifi J Ndlovu B Nqwababa DW Pelsler VP Påløy BJ van der Merwe  
Company Secretary: Anglo Platinum Management Service Proprietary Limited



#### 4. Project Description

The envisaged activities associated with the proposed project may feature the following (which may be amended in future):

- A single Ø 6 m down-cast shaft equipped with a steel headgear, ± 45 m height, (could be replaced with 2 x Ø 4.5 m down-cast shafts),
- A single Ø 5 m up-cast vent shaft, equipped with 2 x 3MW Fans, required 5 years after the main shaft commissioning;
  - Ore silo with ore conveyor;
  - Access roads;
  - Railway links;
  - Office blocks;
  - Change house;
  - Salvage yard;
  - Explosives shed;
  - Timber yard;
  - Winder house;
  - Lamp house;
  - Parking area;
  - Fridge plant with cooling water dams;
  - Bulk air coolers; and
  - Service / process water storage dams.
- Waste Rock Dump (WRD);
- Waste Rock Conveyor – (± 130 m from headgear to the WRD);
- Sub-station with feed from existing 33kV power lines, ± 650 m away (sufficient Eskom power is available);
- Mine process water runoff dams; and
- Compressor system.

Please refer to the proposed infrastructure layout plan in **Figure 2** and **Figure 3**.

## 2. Motivation for the proposed project

The Tumela Mine (forming part of the Amandelbult Section) has revised its Business Plan to access the resources of the 15 E Business Centre, located on the farm Schildpadnest 385KQ (Figure 1), via a new shaft, the Tumela Central Shaft (Figure 2).

Tumela Mine would not be able to maintain its production profile unless capital projects are brought online. Tumela Mine, however still has a major platinum resource and the business objectives for Tumela Mine would thus be to exploit this resource and target a sustained production profile above the required threshold.

The project may create additional employment and procurement benefits however more detail will be provided on this during the project feasibility study.

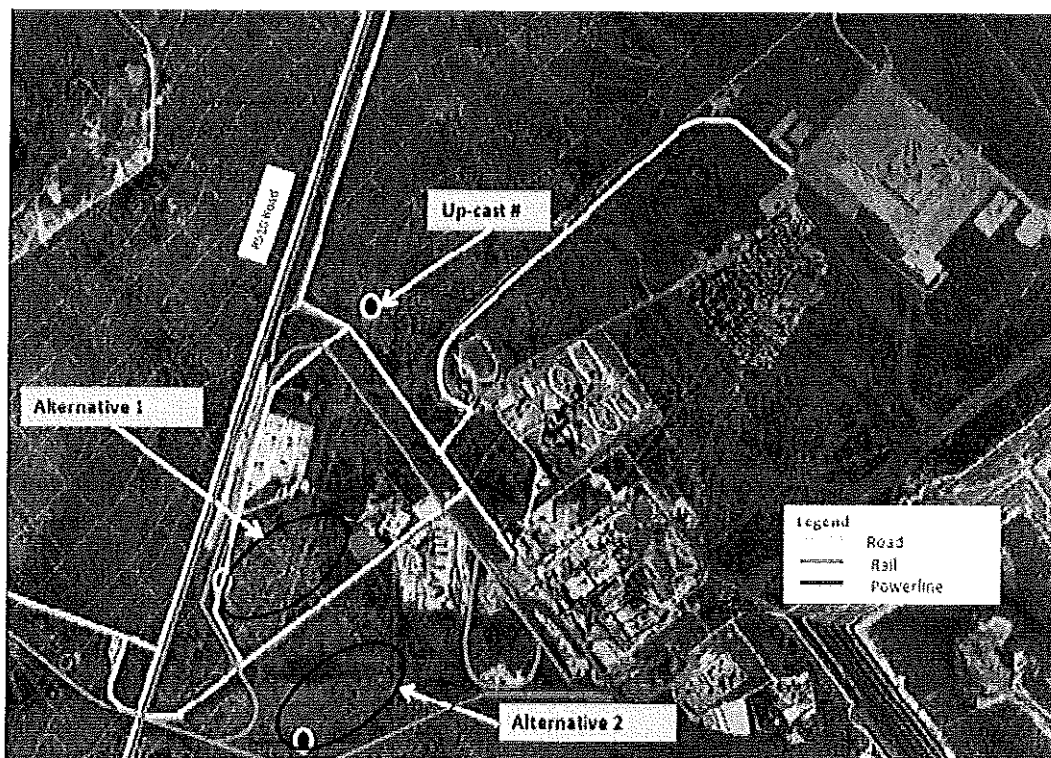


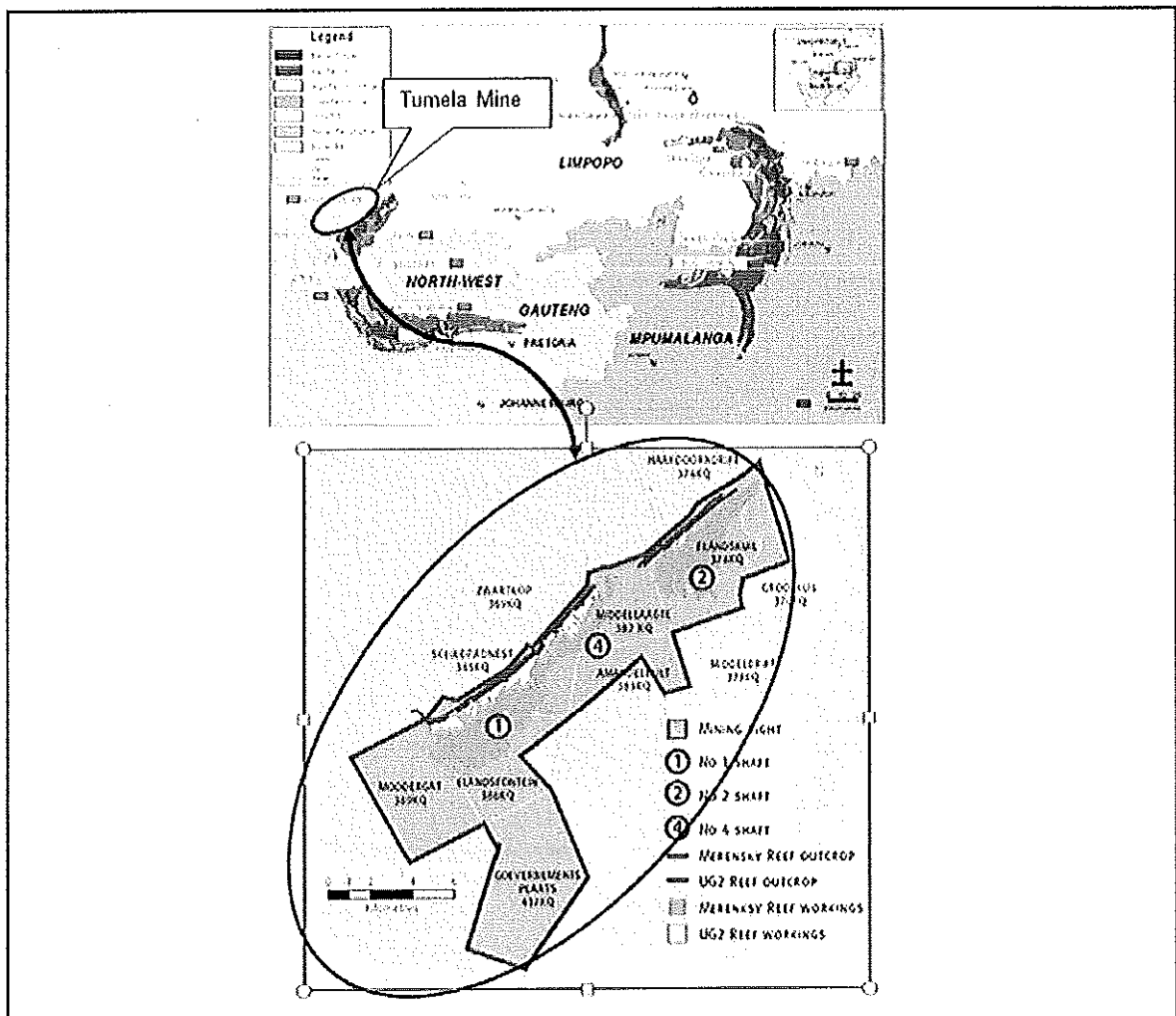
Figure 2: Location of proposed infrastructure for the proposed Tumela Central Shaft project

## 3. Objectives of the proposed project

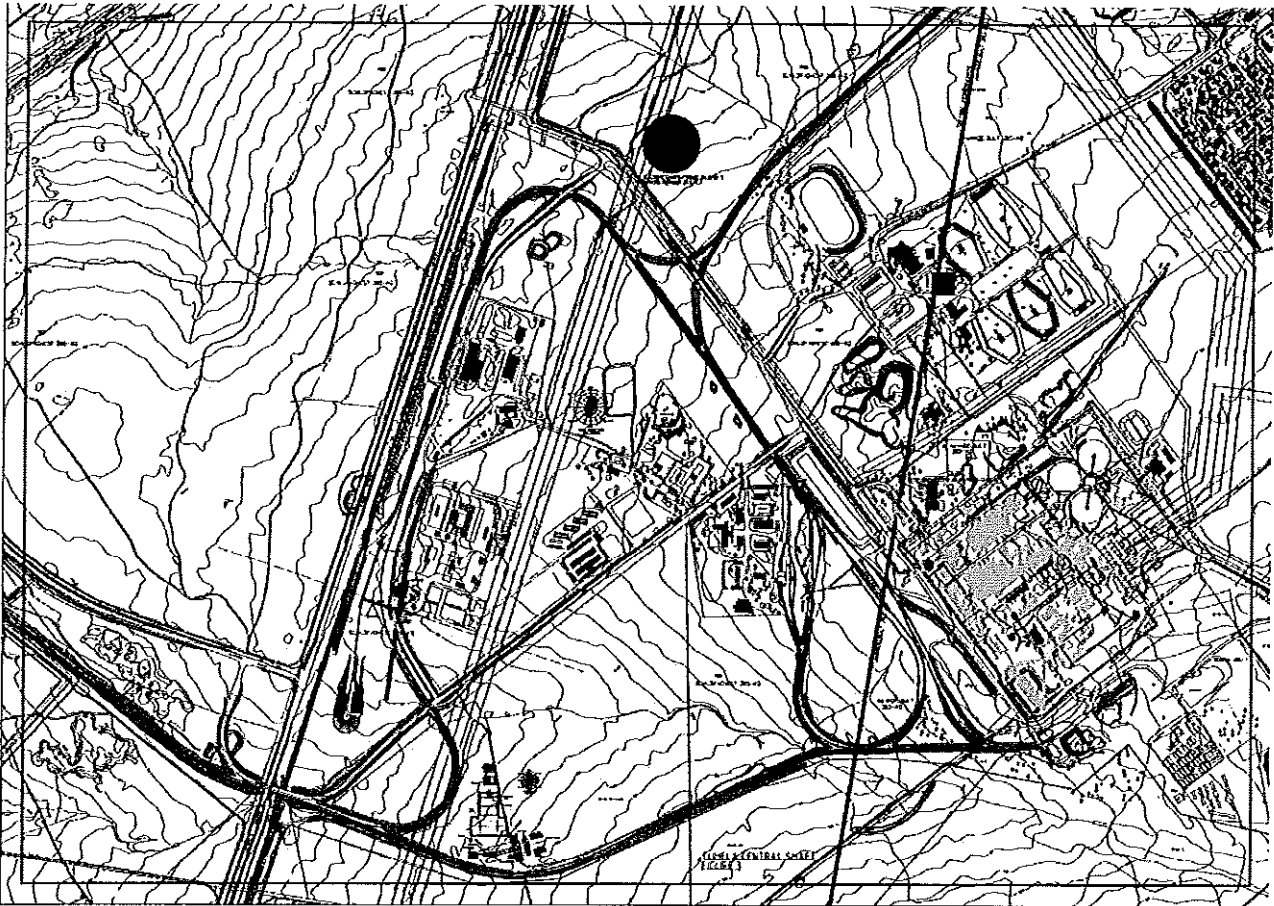
The objective of the Central Shaft Project will be to install infrastructure to access the 15 East mining area, from 11 to 16 levels, on both the Merensky- and UG2 reef horizons, that will bring ounces online by no later than 2019. The 15 East Block will be expedited and will consequently be managed as a stand-alone project.

fully developed mine situated on the north-western limb of the Bushveld Complex (Refer to **Figure 1 – Locality Map**). The mine is comprised of the Tumela Mine, Dishaba Mine and Concentrator Plant. The mine is located within the Thabazimbi Local Municipality (NP 361) and the Waterberg District Municipality (DC 36), approximately 40 km south of Thabazimbi, 15 km north of Northam and 100 km north of Rustenburg.

The main activity at the Amandelbult Section is the mining of the Platinum Group Metals (PGMs) by means of underground mining. Ore mined from the reserves is processed at the Concentrator Plant before being transported to off-site smelters for further refining. Opencast mining was undertaken in the past in certain areas however, this ceased in 2005 and the land has been rehabilitated in accordance with the approved EMPR, dated 1995 and subsequent approved addendums.



**Figure 1: Locality Map**



**Figure 3: Surface infrastructure layout for the proposed Tumela Central Shaft project**

#### **5. Authorisation process to be followed**

The base case EMPR of 1995 has been supplemented with 10 addendums to date. In terms of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act 28 of 2002) a Section 102 amendment is required. The proponent has appointed WSP Environmental as the independent consultant to undertake the following in terms of the legislative requirements for the activities associated with the proposed Tumela Central Shaft Project:

- EMPR amendment in terms of the MPRDA;
- Scoping Report and EIA in terms of NEMA; as amended, and
- Water Use Licence Application in terms of the NWA.

It is thus the intention of the proponent to notify the landowner of the commencement of the EMPR amendment process for the proposed project and to inform you that you will be invited to participate in the public participation process. The public participation process will be on-going throughout the authorisation process.

Should you have any issues or queries, please do not hesitate to contact Danilla Breedt (WSP) at Tel: +27 11 361 1396 / Email: [danilla.breedt@wspgroup.co.za](mailto:danilla.breedt@wspgroup.co.za) or Vinesh Dilsook (Anglo American Platinum) at Tel: +27 (0) 14 598 2295 / M +27 (0) 73 109 6126 / Email: [vinesh.dilsook@angloamerican.com](mailto:vinesh.dilsook@angloamerican.com).



Yours sincerely

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read 'Tom van den Berg', written over a horizontal line.

**Tom van den Berg**

General Manager: Tumela Mine Amandelbult

T: +27 (0)14 784 1001

E: [tom.vandenberg@angloamerican.com](mailto:tom.vandenberg@angloamerican.com)

[www.angloamericanplatinum.com](http://www.angloamericanplatinum.com)

O'Brien, Jared

---

From: Microsoft Outlook  
To: pmarakalla@gmail.com; saltielramokoka@gmail.com  
Sent: 07 March 2013 04:18 PM  
Subject: Relayed: Landowner Notification: Tumela Central Shaft Project Environmental Authorisation Process

**Delivery to these recipients or groups is complete, but no delivery notification was sent by the destination server:**

[pmarakalla@gmail.com](mailto:pmarakalla@gmail.com) (pmarakalla@gmail.com)

[saltielramokoka@gmail.com](mailto:saltielramokoka@gmail.com) (saltielramokoka@gmail.com)

Subject: Landowner Notification: Tumela Central Shaft Project Environmental Authorisation Process





# LIMPOPO

PROVINCIAL GOVERNMENT  
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

DEPARTMENT OF  
ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT, ENVIRONMENT & TOURISM

Enquiries: Ms TA Kubaye Tel: 015 290 7164 Fax: 015 295 5015 E-mail: [KubayeTA@ledet.gov.za](mailto:KubayeTA@ledet.gov.za)  
Project Reference Number: 12/1/9/2-W36 NEAS Reference Number: LIM/EIA/0000560/2013

WSP Environmental (Pty) Ltd  
P O Box 5384  
RIVONIA  
2128

Fax no: 011 361 1301

Attention: Ms Danilla Breedt

DEPARTMENT OF ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT, ENVIRONMENT & TOURISM ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT MANAGEMENT
2013 -03- 19
P.O. BOX 5384, POLOKWANE 0700 TEL: 015 291 4315 LIMPOPO PROVINCE

**RE: PROPOSED AMANDELBULT SECTION TUMELA CENTRAL SHAFT PROJECT LOCATED ON THE FARM SCHILDPADNEST 385 KQ WITHIN THABAZIMBI LOCAL MUNICIPALITY OF WATERBERG DISTRICT**

1. The amended application for Environmental Authorisation received on 08 March 2013 has reference.
2. The Department acknowledges receipt of your amended application for Environmental Authorisation and accept this application in terms of Regulation 13(3) and 13(2)(a) of the Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) Regulations R. 543 of 2010 due to the following:
3. Your application will still be using Project Reference Number: 12/1/9/2-W36 and NEAS Reference Number: LIM/EIA/0000560/2013, kindly quote this numbers in all future correspondences regarding this application.
4. You may proceed with the Environmental Impact Assessment Process as required by the GNR. 543 of EIA Regulations of 2010 promulgated in terms of the National Environmental Management Act (Act 107 of 1998) as amended.
5. Kindly bring to the attention of the applicant the fact that this development must not commence prior to an environmental authorisation issued by this Department.

Please do not hesitate to contact the Department should you have any queries in this respect.

Yours faithfully,

MANAGER  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT MANAGEMENT  
DATE: 19/03/2013

Cc: Anglo American Platinum

Attention: Mr. Tom van den Berg

Fax: 014 784 1720

HEAD OFFICE

20 Hans Van Rensburg Street / 19 Biccard Street, Polokwane, 0700, Private Bag X 9484, Polokwane, 0700  
(Switchboard) Tel: +2715 293 8300/8303/8367 Website: [www.ledet.gov.za](http://www.ledet.gov.za)

*The heartland of southern Africa - development is about people.*



# LIMPOPO

PROVINCIAL GOVERNMENT  
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

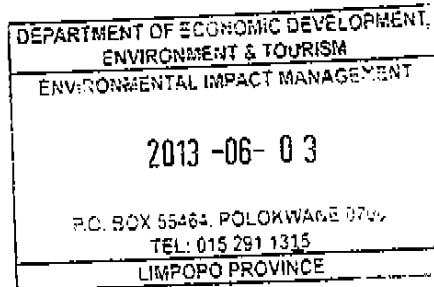
DEPARTMENT OF  
ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT, ENVIRONMENT & TOURISM

Enquiries: Masungi Tshuketana Tel: 015 290 7160 Fax: 015 295 5015 E-mail: [tshuketanim@ledet.gov.za](mailto:tshuketanim@ledet.gov.za)  
Project Reference Number: 12/1/9/2-W36 NEAS Reference Number: LIM/EIA/0000560/2013

WSP Environmental (Pty) Ltd  
P O Box 5384  
RIVONIA  
2128

Fax No: 011 361 1301

Attention: Ms Danilla Breedt



**RE: PROPOSED AMANDELBULT SECTION TUMELA CENTRAL SHAFT PROJECT THE FARM SCHILDPADNEST 385 KQ WITHIN THABAZIMBI LOCAL MUNICIPALITY OF WATERBERG DISTRICT**

The Department acknowledges receipt of the draft Scoping Report (SR) for the above mentioned proposed development compiled by WSP Environmental (Pty) Ltd and submitted to the Department on 24 May 2013.

1. The draft SR has been reviewed and the Department submits the following:
  - 1.1 All specialist studies recommended under item 7.2.3 of the draft SR must be conducted and their reports be included in the Environmental Impact Assessment Report (EIAR); and
  - 1.2 The specialist study reports must be signed by their authors to authenticate the information contained therein;
2. Please draw the applicant's attention to the fact that the activity must not commence prior to an environmental authorization being granted by the Department.

Please do not hesitate to contact this Department should you have further queries in this regard.

Yours faithfully,

MANAGER  
ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT MANAGEMENT

DATE: 03/06/2013

Cc: Anglo American Platinum

Attention: Mr. Tom van der Berg

Fax: 014 784 1720

HEAD OFFICE

20 Hans Van Rensburg Street / 19 Biccard Street, Polokwane, 0700, Private Bag X 9484, Polokwane, 0700  
(Switchboard) Tel: +2715 293 8300/8303/8367 Website: [www.ledet.gov.za](http://www.ledet.gov.za)

**The heartland of southern Africa - development is about people!**

DMR Correspondence (Notification Letter)

Deputy Director- Limpopo Province  
Department of Mineral Resources  
Broll Building  
101 Dorp Street  
POLOKWANE  
0699

25 January 2013

Dear Mr Azwihangwisi Mulaudzi

**RE: LETTER OF NOTIFICATION: ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME  
AMENDMENT FOR THE PROPOSED ANGLO AMERICAN PLATINUM LIMITED:  
RUSTENBURG PLATINUM MINES – AMANDELBULT SECTION, TUMELA CENTRAL  
SHAFT**

This letter serves to notify the Department of Mineral Resources (DMR) of the intention to amend the Anglo American Platinum – Rustenburg Platinum Mines: Amandelbult Section Environmental Management Programme (EMPR) for the proposed Tumela Central Shaft. The Department has requested information regarding the proposed project to be provided by means of a written submission, rather than a formal meeting between the proponent and the Department. However, should a meeting be requested subsequent to the provision of this correspondence, such meeting will be scheduled.

The following information forms part of this memorandum:

1. Background information;
2. Motivation for the proposed project;
3. Objectives of the proposed project;
4. Project description; and
5. Authorisation process to be followed.

**1. Background information**

Rustenburg Platinum Mines Ltd. (RPM), a wholly owned subsidiary of Anglo American Platinum is the holder of an existing new order mining right (LP30/5/1/2/2/48 MR), in respect of Platinum Group Element (PGE) deposits, which is contained in the Merensky- and UG2 reefs within the mining area. The Amandelbult Section, located in the Limpopo Province, is an established and fully developed mine situated on the north-western limb of the Bushveld Complex (Refer to **Figure 1 – Locality Map**). The mine comprises of the Tumela Mine, Dishaba Mine and Concentrator Plant. The mine is located within the Thabazimbi Local Municipality (NP 361) and

**A member of the Anglo American plc group**

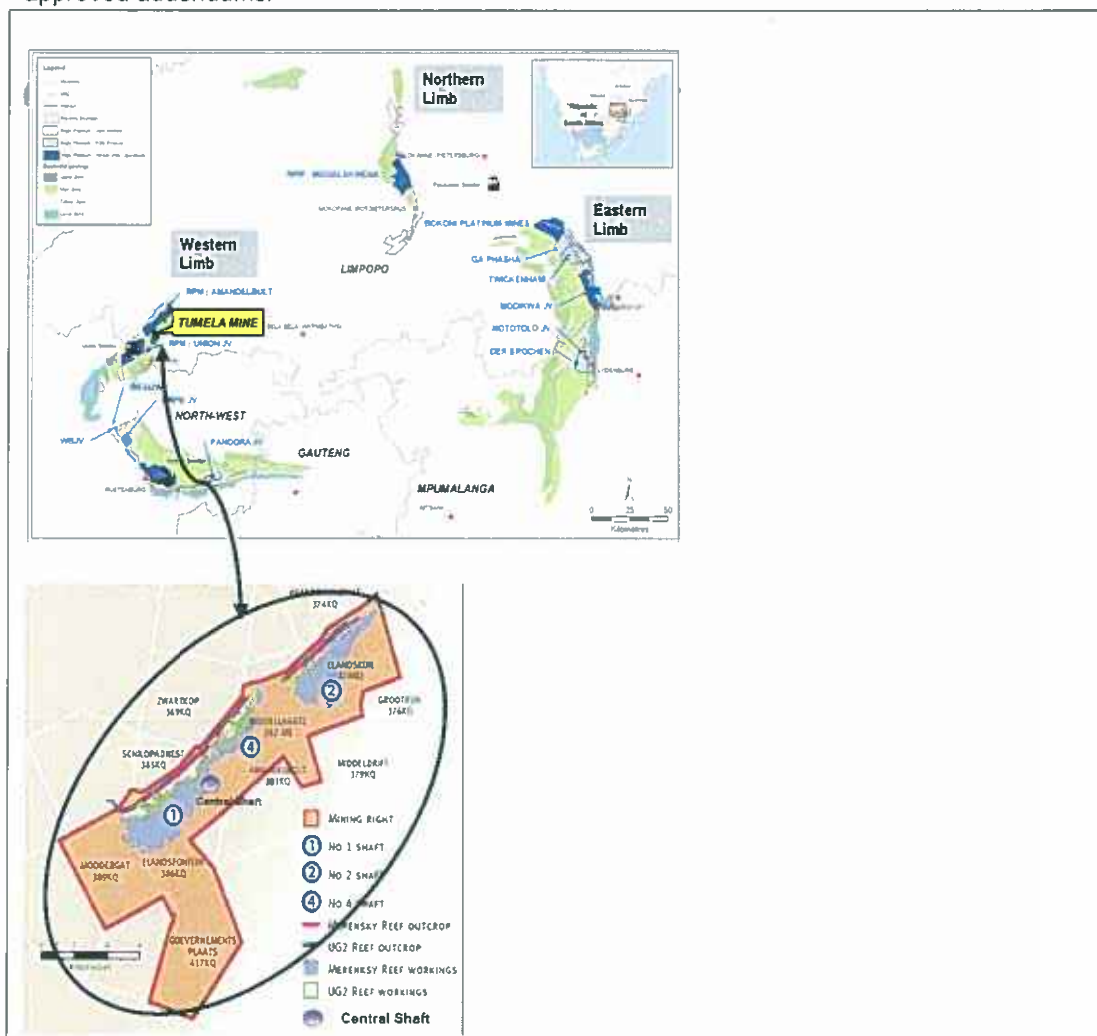
**Amandelbult Mine**  
Business Address: R510 Thabazimbi Road, Thabazimbi, 0380. P O Box 2, Chromite, 0362, South Africa.  
T +27 (0) 14 784 7100 F +27 (0) 14 784 1720

**Rustenburg Platinum Mines Limited**  
Registered Address: 55 Marshall Street, Johannesburg, 2001. P O Box 62179, Marshalltown, 2107 South Africa. T +27 (0) 11 3736111 F +27 (0) 11 3735111  
Incorporated in South Africa Registration Number: 1931/003380/06

**Directors:** Cl Griffith (Chairman) A Hinkly PJ Louw B Magara J Mokoka MJ Morifi J Ndlovu B Nqwababa DW Pelsler VP Pillay BJ van der Merwe  
**Company Secretary:** Anglo Platinum Management Service Proprietary Limited

the Waterberg District Municipality (DC 36), approximately 40 km south of Thabazimbi, 15 km north of Northam and 100 km north of Rustenburg.

The main activity at the Amandelbult Section is the mining of the Platinum Group Metals (PGMs) by means of underground mining. Ore mined from the reserves is processed at the Concentrator Plant before being transported to off-site smelters for further refining. Opencast mining was undertaken in the past in certain areas. However, this ceased in 2005 and the land has been rehabilitated in accordance with the approved EMPR, dated 1995 and subsequent approved addendums.

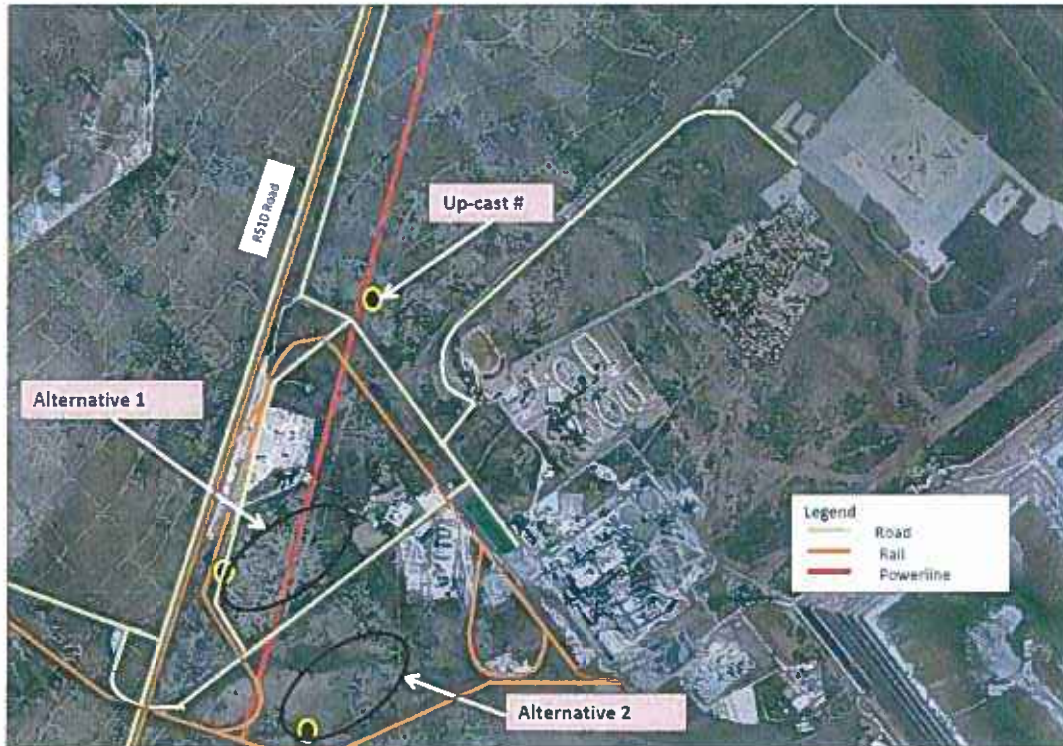


**Figure 1: Locality Map**

## 2. Motivation for the proposed project

The Tumela Mine (forming part of the Amandelbult Section) has revised its Business Plan to access the resources of the 15 E Business Centre, located on the farm Schildpadnest 385KQ (Figure 1), via a new shaft, the Tumela Central Shaft (Figure 2 and Figure 3).

Tumela Mine would not be able to maintain its production profile unless capital projects are brought online. Tumela Mine has a major platinum resource and the business objectives for Tumela Mine would thus be to exploit this resource and target a sustained production profile above the required threshold. This would curtail production at its required level and hence sustain its workforce.



**Figure 2: Location alternatives for the proposed Tumela Central Shaft**

### **3. Objectives of the proposed project**

The objective of the Central Shaft Project will be to install infrastructure to access the 15 East mining area, from 11 to 16 levels, on both the Merensky- and UG2 reef horizons, that will bring production online by no later than 2019. The 15 East Block will be managed as a stand-alone project.



#### 4. Project Description

The envisaged activities associated with the proposed project may feature the following (which may be amended in future):

- A single Ø 8.1 m down-cast shaft equipped with a steel headgear, ± 45 m height,
- An additional Ø 6.5 m down-cast shaft equipped with a steel headgear, ± 30m m height, with the fridge plant and BAC as noted below – required 5 years after the main shaft commissioning
- A single Ø 6.55 m up-cast vent shaft, equipped with 2 x 3MW Fans
- The shafts will have the following associated infrastructure:
  - Ore silo with ore conveyor;
  - Access roads;
  - Railway links;
  - Office blocks;
  - Change house;
  - Salvage yard;
  - Explosives shed;
  - Timber yard;
  - Winder house;
  - Lamp house;
  - Parking area;
  - Fridge plant with cooling water dams;
  - Bulk air coolers; and
  - Service / process water storage dams.
- Waste Rock Dump (WRD);
- Waste Rock Conveyor – (± 130 m from headgear to the WRD);
- Sub-station with feed from existing 132kV Eskom power lines, running adjacent to the proposed sites.
- Mine process water runoff dams and
- Compressor system.

Please refer to the proposed infrastructure layout plan in **Figure 3**.

#### 5. Authorisation process to be followed

The base case EMPR of 1995 has been supplemented with 10 addendums to date. In terms of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act 28 of 2002) a Section 102 amendment is required. The proponent has appointed WSP Environmental as the independent consultant to undertake the following in terms of the legislative requirements for the activities associated with the proposed Tumela Central Shaft Project:

- EMPR amendment in terms of the MPRDA;
- Scoping Report and EIA in terms of NEMA, as amended, and
- Water Use Licence Application in terms of the NWA.

It is thus the intention of the proponent to notify the Limpopo DMR of the commencement of the EMPR amendment process for the proposed project. Furthermore, this letter does not include an application to obtain environmental authorisation in terms of the NEMA, since a NEMA application will be submitted to the relevant Department as a separate application.



Should you have any issues or queries, please do not hesitate to contact Danilla Breedt (WSP) at Tel: +27 11 361 1396 / Email: [danilla.breedt@wspgroup.co.za](mailto:danilla.breedt@wspgroup.co.za) or Vinesh Dilsook (Anglo American Platinum) at Tel: +27 (0) 14 598 2295 / M +27 (0) 73 109 6126 / Email: [vinesh.dilsook@angloamerican.com](mailto:vinesh.dilsook@angloamerican.com).

Yours sincerely

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read "Tom van den Berg".

**Tom van den Berg**  
General Manager: Tumela Mine Amandelbult  
T: +27 (0)14 784 1001  
E: [tom.vandenberg@angloamerican.com](mailto:tom.vandenberg@angloamerican.com)  
[www.angloamericanplatinum.com](http://www.angloamericanplatinum.com)



**PLATINUM**

**Rustenburg Platinum Mines Limited**

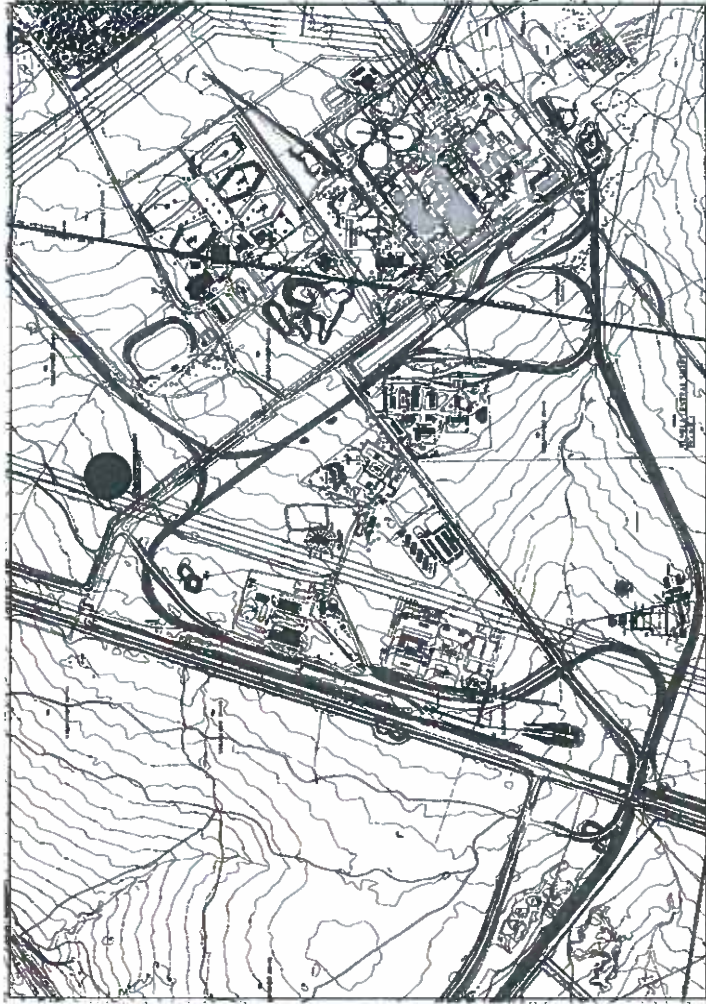
**AMANDELBULT MINE**

**R510 Thabazimbi Road**

**Thabazimbi**

**0380**

**South Africa**



**Figure 3: Tumela Central Shaft Infrastructure Layout Plan**

**A member of the Anglo American plc group**

**Amandelbult Mine**

**Business Address: R510 Thabazimbi Road, Thabazimbi, 0380, P O Box 2, Chromite, 0362, South Africa.**

**T +27 (0) 14 784 7100 F +27 (0) 14 784 1720**

**Rustenburg Platinum Mines Limited**

**Registered Address: 55 Marshall Street, Johannesburg, 2001, P O Box 62179, Marshalltown, 2107 South Africa. T +27 (0) 11 3736111 F +27 (0) 11 3735111**

**Incorporated in South Africa. Registration Number: 1931/003380/06**

**Directors: Cl Griffith (Chairman) A Hinkley PJ Louw B Magara J Mokoka MJ Moriri J Ndlovu B Nqwababa DW Peiser VP Pillay EJ van der Merwe**

**Company Secretary: Anglo Platinum Management Service Proprietary Limited**

---

DWA Correspondence (Notification Meeting)

# MEETING NOTES



Project Title	
Date	25/02/2013
Time	10:00 am – 11:30 am
Venue	DWA Hartebeespoort Offices
Subject	Amandelbult Section - IWULA Progress Meeting & initiation of Tumela Central Shaft Project
Meeting Chair	Lesego Manzini (LM) - AAP
Present	<u>Department of Water Affairs (DWA)</u> Philip Tjale (PT), Charles Nmutandani (CN)  <u>Anglo American Platinum (AAP)</u> Danilla Breedt (DB) – WSP (Independent Consultant);  Vinesh Dilsook (VD) - AAP
Apologies	Saligh Cader – AAP
Appendices	A: Attendance Register

WSP Environment & Energy South Africa  
WSP House  
Bryanston Place  
199 Bryanston Drive  
Bryanston  
2191  
Tel: +27 11 361 1384  
Fax: +27 86 556 9717  
[www.wspenvironmental.co.za](http://www.wspenvironmental.co.za)

Nr	Discussion Topics	Action (if required)
1	<b>Welcome and introduction</b>	
2	<b>Update of existing application (Amandelbult Section)</b>	
2.1	PT updated on previous meeting held on 29 November 2012. PT presented the draft WUL for the existing Amandelbult Section.	
2.2	<p>PT enquired whether the requested information was submitted (volumes and quantities of water use activities, specifically 21(a)(b) &amp; (g) activities. The submitted volumes (as per existing licence application) were checked against the existing water balance and the volumes did not correspond. Anglo noted that the volumes pumped to and from the 21(g) facilities may not correspond on the overall water balance provided. Volume of the 21(g) infrastructure appears to be too much. VD recommended that a verification of the 21(g) volumes will be conducted by Anglo.</p> <p>CT provided a table format on which to expedite all water use activities, this will ensure that input and outputs can be clearly correlated (and balanced) for presentation to WUACC.</p>	AAP to complete and forward to DWA (by end March 2013).
2.3	PT also indicated that the 21(a) water use activity volumes did not correlate to those of the water balance. AAP to confirm the dams in the Game Reserve. Empty dams, not containing water, or not being used as part of the water system, must be taken out of the application altogether.	AAP to update the table (take out water use activities not relevant) and submit to DWA (by end March 2013)
2.4	PT requested a site visit in Dec 2012. It was suggested a site visit be scheduled, early April 2013, and confirmation of these water use activities can be made during the visit.	VD/LM schedule with PT.
2.5	PT requested information on Section 21(b) water use activities – none were listed. VD confirmed that water pumped as part of Section 21(a) water use activities, are pumped directly into Section 21(g) infrastructure and utilised, and not stored as part of a Section 21(b) activity. PT confirmed that these activities (Section 21 (b)) be taken out of the application completely. PT also said that a separate letter should be drafted which indicates the motivation for not storing the water (or such motivation included within the application).	AAP to update the table (take out water use activities not relevant) and submit to DWA (by end March 2013).
2.6	PT requested timeframes for the above actions. Submission of above information from AAP to the Department end of March 2013. Presentation of the draft Licence to the committee will occur in April 2013.	End March 2013
2.7	PT enquired about the Pollution Impacts and Mitigation Report (compiled by SRK). LM confirmed that the report was sent through in 2012, but will e-mail it to the Department again.	LM to send report to PT by 1 February 2013.
2.8	PT suggested a meeting to go through the draft Licence prior to presenting to WUACC. This would eliminate any grammatical errors. PT also recommended either AAP accompany him to present to WUACC or have a pre-meeting with PT before he presents to WUACC. PT will confirm.	LM will schedule mid-late March 2013.
2.9	PT indicated that it would be viable to take AAP personnel with to the presentation of the draft Licence.	To be scheduled, once presentation date has been confirmed. Could be in April 2013
3	<b>Application for proposed project (Tumela Mine Central Shaft)</b>	



Nr	Discussion Topics	Action (if required)
3.1	DB presented background and project information. DB enquired the most optimal way to apply for the proposed licence, as part of existing application or separate application? CT confirmed that a separate application will be necessary and more efficient.	DB to include in Project Plan.
3.2	<p>CT and PT raised the following additional points to take into consideration when applying for the new project:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Keep discharge activities to a minimum,</li> <li>■ Try not to mix clean and dirty water, rather store water as abstracted from the shaft prior to it being contaminated, and use for community projects. This will have a huge positive impact on the Licence to be issued.</li> <li>■ To kick-start the application process, and to possibly reduce the timeframe of issuing of the licence, send the Geohydrological- as well as other specialist studies together with design drawings, forms and a “mini – IWWMP” specifically focussing on the proposed project, to the Department, so that the various water use activities, and supporting documentation can be distributed to the different section in the DWA for review. Submit this latest end of April 2013.</li> </ul>	<p>DB to collect all relevant information and submit to the DWA end April 2013.</p> <p>DB to include in current Project Plan.</p>
4	<b>Timeframes</b>	
4	<p>DB highlighted the strict timeframes with regards to the authorisation of this proposed project. VD enquired about the expected timeframes as per the project licence approval.</p> <p>CT indicated that only AFTER assessment of the above-mentioned documentation, can such timeframes be confirmed.</p> <p>All parties agreed that the better the quality of information provided to the DWA, the easier it will be to issue such licence. Frequent correspondence with the department will also ensure a smoother and faster process.</p>	
5	<b>Close-out</b>	

# Appendices

## Appendix A: Attendance Register



PLATINUM

DATE: 25/02/2013  
 VENUE: DWA OFFICES

No	Surname	Initials	Contact Details	E-mail address	Signature
1	Breedt	D	082 55 11 774	daniela.breedt@wsgroup.co.za	<i>[Signature]</i>
2	Charles Nemoofandou	C	082 896 2222	nemutandou@chw.90024	<i>[Signature]</i>
3	K.P. Tjale	K.P	076 3174 741	tjale@dwg.org.za	<i>[Signature]</i>
4	DILSOOK	V	073109 6126	vinesh.dilsaee@angloamerican.com	<i>[Signature]</i>
5	MANZINI	L	083 9424 570	esego.manzini@angloamerican.com	<i>[Signature]</i>
6					
7					
8					
9					
10					
11					
12					
13					
14					
15					
16					
17					
18					
19					
20					
20					

## Land Owner Correspondence (Notification Letter)

The Trust Secretariat: MD Ramothwala  
Ramothwala Lenyai Incorporated  
3<sup>rd</sup> Floor West Wing,  
Centenary Building,  
Bureau Lane,  
Pretoria  
001

5 February 2013

Dear MD Ramothwala

**RE: LANDOWNER NOTIFICATION: ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME  
AMENDMENT FOR THE PROPOSED ANGLO AMERICAN PLATINUM LIMITED:  
RUSTENBURG PLATINUM MINES – AMANDELBULT SECTION, TUMELA CENTRAL  
SHAFT**

Rustenburg Platinum Mines Limited (RPM) proposes a new shaft (the Tumela Central Shaft) at the Amandelbult Section: Tumela Mine in the Limpopo Province. The proposed project falls on land owned by the "Bophalane Ba Montserre Community Development Trust" and a lease agreement between the parties is in place. Notification of an Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) is hereby given, in terms of the National Environmental Management Act (No. 107 of 1998) as amended (NEMA) and section 15 (1) of the EIA Regulations in Government Notice (GN) 543 of 2010, which states:

*"If the applicant is not the owner or person in control of the land on which the activity is to be undertaken, the applicant must give written notice of the proposed activity to the owner or person in control of the land on which the activity is to be undertaken, and inform such person that he may participate in the public participation process".*

The following information forms part of this memorandum:

1. Background information;
2. Motivation for the proposed project;
3. Objectives of the proposed project;
4. Project description; and
5. Authorisation process to be followed.

**1. Background information**

Rustenburg Platinum Mines Ltd. (RPM), a wholly owned subsidiary of Anglo American Platinum is the holder of an existing new order mining right (LP30/5/1/2/2/48 MR), in respect of Platinum Group Element (PGE) deposits, which is contained in the Merensky- and UG2 reefs within the mining area. The Amandelbult Section, located in the Limpopo Province, is an established and

**A member of the Anglo American plc group**

**Amandelbult Mine**

Business Address: R510 Thabazimbi Road, Thabazimbi, 0380. P O Box 2, Chromite, 0362, South Africa.  
T +27 (0) 14 784 7100 F +27 (0) 14 784 1720

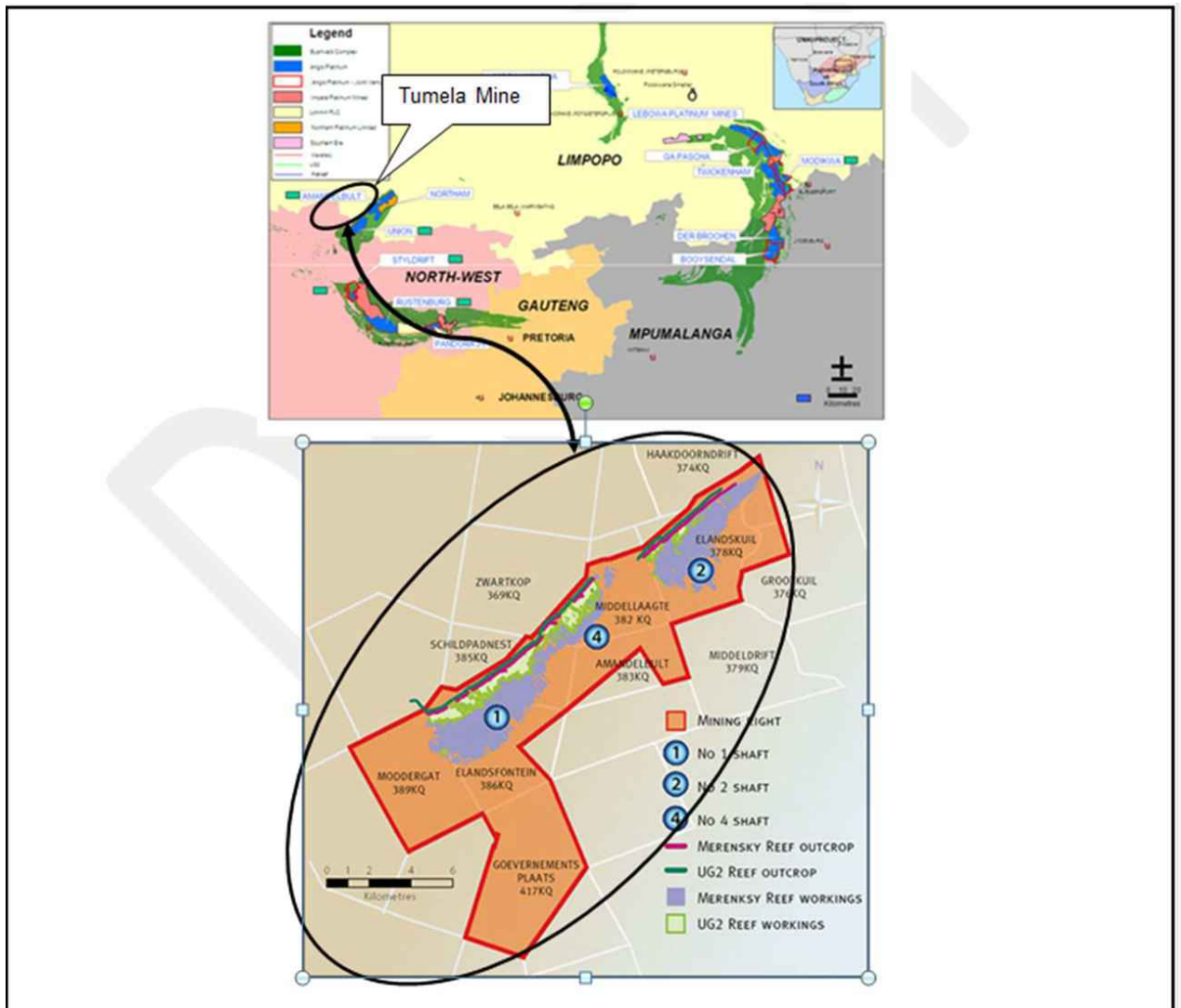
**Rustenburg Platinum Mines Limited**

Registered Address: 55 Marshall Street, Johannesburg, 2001. P O Box 62179, Marshalltown, 2107 South Africa. T +27 (0) 11 3736111 F +27 (0) 11 3735111  
Incorporated in South Africa. Registration Number: 1931/003380/06

**Directors:** Cl Griffith (Chairman) A Hinkly PJ Louw B Magara J Mokoka MJ Morifi J Ndlovu B Nqwababa DW Pelsler VP Pillay BJ van der Merwe  
**Company Secretary:** Anglo Platinum Management Service Proprietary Limited

fully developed mine situated on the north-western limb of the Bushveld Complex (Refer to **Figure 1 – Locality Map**). The mine is comprised of the Tumela Mine, Dishaba Mine and Concentrator Plant. The mine is located within the Thabazimbi Local Municipality (NP 361) and the Waterberg District Municipality (DC 36), approximately 40 km south of Thabazimbi, 15 km north of Northam and 100 km north of Rustenburg.

The main activity at the Amandelbult Section is the mining of the Platinum Group Metals (PGMs) by means of underground mining. Ore mined from the reserves is processed at the Concentrator Plant before being transported to off-site smelters for further refining. Opencast mining was undertaken in the past in certain areas however, this ceased in 2005 and the land has been rehabilitated in accordance with the approved EMPR, dated 1995 and subsequent approved addendums.



**Figure 1: Locality Map**

## 2. Motivation for the proposed project

The Tumela Mine (forming part of the Amandelbult Section) has revised its Business Plan to access the resources of the 15 E Business Centre, located on the farm Schildpadnest 385KQ (Figure 1), via a new shaft, the Tumela Central Shaft (Figure 2).

Tumela Mine would not be able to maintain its production profile unless capital projects are brought online. Tumela Mine, however still has a major platinum resource and the business objectives for Tumela Mine would thus be to exploit this resource and target a sustained production profile above the required threshold.

The project may create additional employment and procurement benefits however more detail will be provided on this during the project feasibility study.



**Figure 2: Location of proposed infrastructure for the proposed Tumela Central Shaft project**

## 3. Objectives of the proposed project

The objective of the Central Shaft Project will be to install infrastructure to access the 15 East mining area, from 11 to 16 levels, on both the Merensky- and UG2 reef horizons, that will bring ounces online by no later than 2019. The 15 East Block will be expedited and will consequently be managed as a stand-alone project.

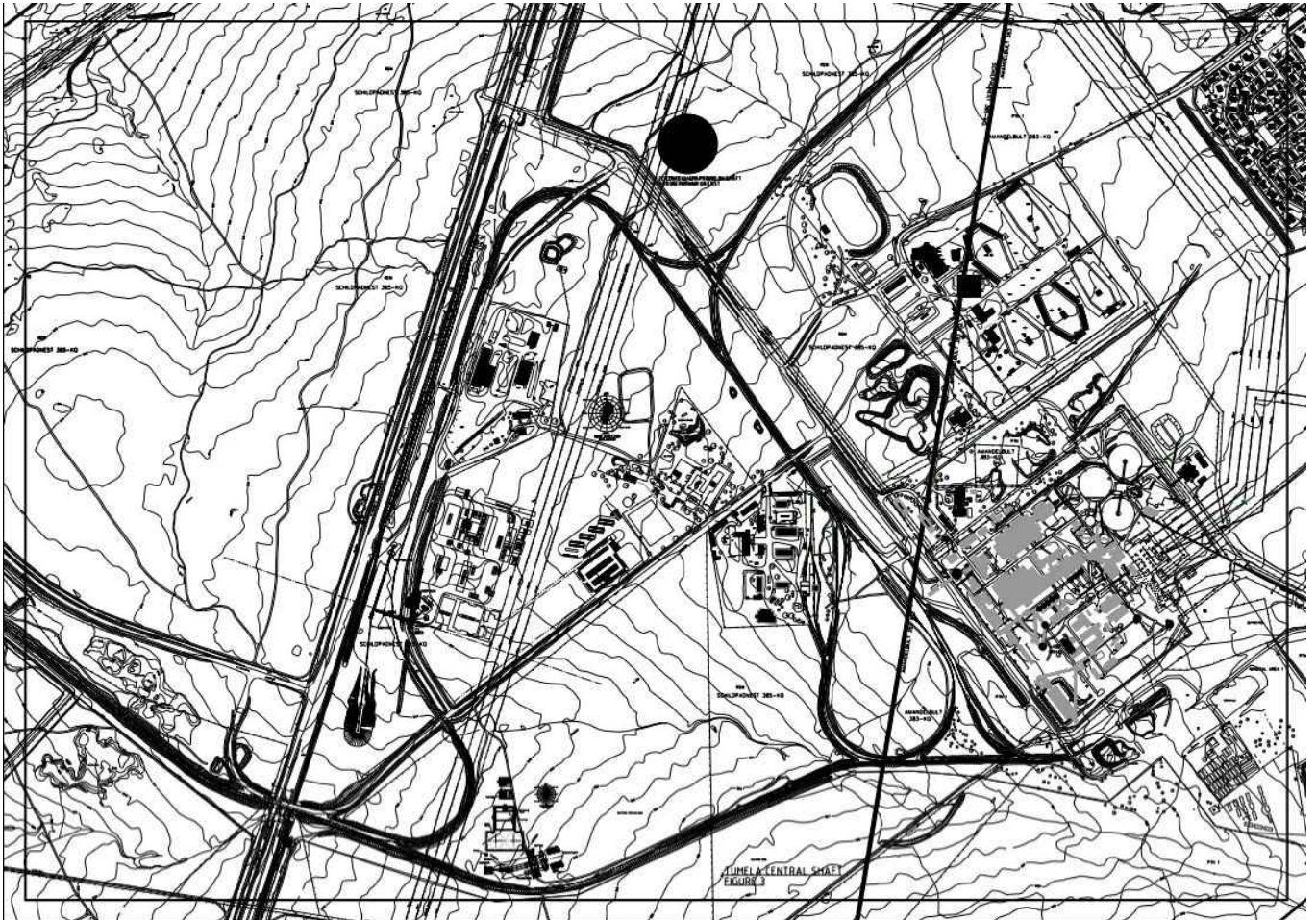


#### 4. Project Description

The envisaged activities associated with the proposed project may feature the following (which may be amended in future):

- A single Ø 6 m down-cast shaft equipped with a steel headgear, ± 45 m height, (could be replaced with 2 x Ø 4.5 m down-cast shafts),
- A single Ø 5 m up-cast vent shaft, equipped with 2 x 3MW Fans, required 5 years after the main shaft commissioning;
  - Ore silo with ore conveyor;
  - Access roads;
  - Railway links;
  - Office blocks;
  - Change house;
  - Salvage yard;
  - Explosives shed;
  - Timber yard;
  - Winder house;
  - Lamp house;
  - Parking area;
  - Fridge plant with cooling water dams;
  - Bulk air coolers; and
  - Service / process water storage dams.
- Waste Rock Dump (WRD);
- Waste Rock Conveyor – (± 130 m from headgear to the WRD);
- Sub-station with feed from existing 33kV power lines, ± 650 m away (sufficient Eskom power is available);
- Mine process water runoff dams; and
- Compressor system.

Please refer to the proposed infrastructure layout plan in **Figure 2** and **Figure 3**.



**Figure 3: Surface infrastructure layout for the proposed Tumela Central Shaft project**

#### **5. Authorisation process to be followed**

The base case EMPR of 1995 has been supplemented with 10 addendums to date. In terms of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act 28 of 2002) a Section 102 amendment is required. The proponent has appointed WSP Environmental as the independent consultant to undertake the following in terms of the legislative requirements for the activities associated with the proposed Tumela Central Shaft Project:

- EMPR amendment in terms of the MPRDA;
- Scoping Report and EIA in terms of NEMA; as amended, and
- Water Use Licence Application in terms of the NWA.

It is thus the intention of the proponent to notify the landowner of the commencement of the EMPR amendment process for the proposed project and to inform you that you will be invited to participate in the public participation process. The public participation process will be on-going throughout the authorisation process.

Should you have any issues or queries, please do not hesitate to contact Danilla Breedt (WSP) at Tel: +27 11 361 1396 / Email: [danilla.breedt@wspgroup.co.za](mailto:danilla.breedt@wspgroup.co.za) or Vinesh Dilsook (Anglo American Platinum) at Tel: +27 (0) 14 598 2295 / M +27 (0) 73 109 6126 / Email: [vinesh.dilsook@angloamerican.com](mailto:vinesh.dilsook@angloamerican.com).



Yours sincerely

**Tom van den Berg**

General Manager: Tumela Mine Amandelbult

T: +27 (0)14 784 1001

E: [tom.vandenberg@angloamerican.com](mailto:tom.vandenberg@angloamerican.com)

[www.angloamericanplatinum.com](http://www.angloamericanplatinum.com)

**WSP Environmental (Pty) Ltd**

WSP House  
Bryanston Place, 199 Bryanston Drive  
Bryanston  
2191  
South Africa  
Tel: +27 11 361 1396  
Fax: +27 86 505 3939  
[www.wspenvironmental.co.za](http://www.wspenvironmental.co.za)

UNITED  
BY OUR  
DIFFERENCE

